

☛ The Chronicle of the Abbey of Bury St. Edmunds

by *Jocelin of Brakelond*; to which are appended several medieval

accounts of the life of St. Edmund by *Abbo of*

*Fleury*, *Ælfric of Eynsham*, and the anonymous

author of the *South English Legendary*;

here reprinted in their original

Latin, Anglo-Saxon, and Middle

English with adjacent trans-

lations, notes, & glosses;

prepared by R. Creswell,

*O X F O R D :*

an.do. MMXXI.

\* \*

\*



CRONICA

JOCELINI

DE BRAKELONDA,

DE REBUS GESTIS SAMSONIS

ABBATIS MONASTERII



SANCTI ÆDMUNDI.

Cronica de rebus gestis Samsonis abbatis

(Harl. MS. 1005 ff. 127r–170v)

Jocelin of Brakelond

*Frontispiece—*

G. F. Sargent and J. C. Varrall in *The Book of Shakespeare Gems: In a Series of Landscape Illustrations of the Most Interesting Localities of Shakespeare's Dramas*, Bohn, London, 1846.

*Latin text—*

Ed. T. Arnold: *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey*, Vol. 1, *Rerum Britannicarum Medii Ævi Scriptores*, The Lords Commissioners of Her Majesty's Treasury, Under the Direction of the Master of the Rolls, London, 1890.

*English translation, introduction and footnotes—*

Trans. ed. L. C. Jane, intr. Abbot Gasquet: *The Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond, Monk of St. Edmundsbury: A Picture of Monastic and Social Life in the XII<sup>TH</sup> Century*, Chatto & Windus, London, 1907.

*Rokewode's introduction—*

Ed. J. G. Rokewode: *Chronica Jocelini de Brakelonda, de rebus gestis Samsonis abbatis monasterii Sancti Edmundi*, Societatis Camdenensis, London, 1840.

*“Fly, noble English, you are bought and sold;  
Unthread the rude eye of rebellion  
And welcome home again discarded faith.  
Seek out King John and fall before his feet;  
For if the French be lords of this loud day,  
He means to recompense the pains you take  
By cutting off your heads: thus hath he sworn  
And I with him, and many moe with me,  
Upon the altar at Saint Edmundsbury;  
Even on that altar, where we swore to you  
Dear amity and everlasting love.”*



## EDITORIAL REMARKS.

The paragraphs, headings, and numbered footnotes are those of L. C. Jane's translation, as it appeared in the 1907 edition of Chatto & Windus. Where not completely redundant, T. Arnold's (Rolls ed., 1890) marginalia and notes have been reproduced as obelus footnotes in the Latin text. Minor printing errors have been corrected throughout. The Fell Types (title page) were digitally reproduced by Igino Marini ([www.iginomarini.com](http://www.iginomarini.com)).

## NOTE CONCERNING CURRENCY.

The *mark* is an archaic northern European weight unit, typically divided into eight *ounces* (of some specification), and used particularly for the measurement of gold and silver. In Norman England it was a unit of account worth 160 pennies (13s. 4d. or two-thirds of a pound), *i.e.*, one mark weight of silver, provided that the pennies were not debased. The English pennies of the late twelfth and thirteenth centuries contained approximately 1.4 grams of fine silver, and were worth about a half day's wage.





## INTRODUCTION.

*From the translation of the chronicle by L. C. JANE.*

A veritable monk of Bury St. Edmunds is worth attending to, if by chance made visible and audible. Here he is; and in his hand a magical speculum, much gone to rust, indeed, yet in fragments still clear; wherein the marvellous image of his existence does still shadow itself, though fitfully, and as with an intermittent light.

Carlyle — *Past and Present.*

**F**EW mediæval documents have exercised a greater fascination over men's minds in these latter days than "The Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond." More than sixty years ago the publication of the Latin text of this history, by the Camden Society, attracted the attention of the great Thomas Carlyle, and furnished him with material for sketching his picture of "The Ancient Monk," which occupied the entire second book of his *Past and Present*. Although the modern sage in his own rugged way affected no little contempt for what he called this "extremely foreign book," and for "the monk-Latin" in which it was written, it is evident that Jocelin's simple story of the wise, firm, yet withal gentle rule of a mediæval abbot over a great English monastery cast a spell over him, the influence of which can be detected in every page of his delightful and almost surprisingly sympathetic account of Abbot Samson and of Edmundsbury.

In this case the *Past*, as Carlyle read it in the "Chronicle," was so entirely different from the *Present*, as he knew it in his day, that the wonder is not that he was fascinated by it, but that he was able with its help to paint so true and living a picture and to fashion so fitting a frame in which to set it. For to him, without doubt, the story dealt with what he regarded as "vanished existences"—"ideas, life-furniture, whole workings and ways," which were not only *Past*, but gone beyond recall, and "covered deeper than Pompeii with the lava-ashes and inarticulate wreck of seven hundred years!"

And indeed it cannot be denied that the ideals and aspirations, as revealed to us in the history of Abbot Samson and, so far as we know, in the life story of his

biographer Jocelin, are of a higher and almost a different order to those of our modern world. To men of their calling in those far-off times, the natural and the supernatural were united and intermingled in the simplest and most ordinary way. Their very notions of the unseen world are almost sufficient to take away the breath of those whose lots have been cast in this more material and prosaic age of doubts and disbeliefs. To Samson, and Jocelin, and their fellow-monks at Edmundsbury in the twelfth century, heaven, as a great writer has said of earlier English monasticism, was hardly even “next door.” The future life was merely the present continued, and each man went forth to his task as it came and laboured at it day by day, not with any idea of finishing it, but only of carrying on for the span of his allotted existence. They built, and planted, and wrote till the end came, and then they went to heaven and others stepped into their places and took up the common work. It was indeed a “simple life:” it was almost Arcadian in its picturesque simplicity, and, as Cardinal Newman says of the same life in the days of our Venerable Bede, it reminds us of those times in the dayspring of the world, when Adam delved and Abel watched the flocks, and Noah tended his vines, and angels visited them.

This living belief in the nearness and all-importance of the supernatural is the key-note of Jocelin’s charming story of a few brief years in the long history of an old English abbey, a new translation of which is here given to the public. As a story, however, Brakelond’s “Chronicle” is not wholly, nor indeed mostly, either mysterious or incredible: there are troubles, and trials, and difficulties enough recounted by the writer; and at every turn we may see evidences of human nature and even of human struggles and passions, which are sufficient, and as some may perhaps think, more than sufficient, to show us that it is a history of men, and not of angels, which the old monk is setting forth so naturally and so truthfully. At any rate, there is quite sufficient of the human element in the narrative to give most of us a human interest in the story.

And this itself is proof that Jocelin is a true chronicler of what really took place, and no mere romancer tempted to edit or suppress entirely what might not be unto “edification.” He manifests no desire to make himself or his brethren appear other than what they were in reality—that is, thorough Englishmen, with strong wills and human passions, which, though these same passions

might occasionally appear to gain the mastery, they were at all times endeavouring to subdue unto God's service by the help of His grace and through the broad-minded provisions of St. Benedict's Rule. The actors who appear in this living drama, though they are for the most part monks, are obviously men, natural and human enough in all their works and words; but these men are at the same time also monks, endeavouring to raise their minds and hearts to supernatural ideals, and striving to attain to that personal communion with God which is the aim and object of all true religion and of all religious observance and practice. This is "another world truly," writes Carlyle, "and this present poor distressed world might get some profit by looking wisely into it, instead of foolishly. But at lowest, O dilettante friend, let us know always that it *was* a world, and not a void infinite of grey haze with phantasms swimming in it. These old St. Edmundsbury walls, I say, were not peopled with phantasms, but with men of flesh and blood, made altogether as we are. Had thou and I then been, who knows but we ourselves had taken refuge from an evil Time and fled to dwell here, and meditate on an Eternity, in such fashion as we could? Alas, how like an old osseous fragment, a broken blackened shinbone of the old dead Ages, this black ruin looks out, not yet covered by the soil; still indicating what a once gigantic Life lies buried there! It is dead now, and dumb; but was alive once and spake. For twenty generations, here was the earthly arena where painful living men worked out their life-wrestle,—looked at by Earth, by Heaven and Hell. Bells tolled to prayers; and men of many humours, various thoughts, chanted Vespers and Matins;—and round the little islet of their life rolled for ever (as round ours still rolls, though we are blind and deaf) the illimitable Ocean, tinting all things with *its* eternal hues and reflexes, making strange prophetic music! How silent now!"

**The Author.**—Jocelin de Brakelond, the writer of the Chronicle called by his name, was a monk of Edmundsbury. The date of his birth is uncertain, but as he became a novice in that abbey in 1173, we may suppose that he was born not later than 1156. It has been conjectured that he was a native of Bury St. Edmunds, and that his name Brakelond was derived from that of an ancient street of the city, in accordance with the common practice of calling monks by the name of the place from which they came to religion. Little more is known

about him than he tells us incidentally in the course of his narrative, but one of his contemporaries in the monastery speaks of him as “a man of excellent religious observance, as well as a power both in word and work”—*eximia religionis, potens sermone et opere*. Carlyle sees him in his writing as a man of a “patient, peaceable, loving, clear-smiling nature.” A “wise simplicity,” he adds, “is in him; much natural sense; a veracity that goes deeper than words.” What more can we desire in a writer, especially when we may add that he shows himself to have been a cultured man, acquainted with the ancient authors, quoting Virgil and Horace and Ovid? His knowledge of the Bible is naturally extensive, and, as was common in those days, his very phraseology is obviously founded upon the sacred text. He once likewise cites, with acknowledgment, a short passage from the more modern Ralph de Diceto’s *Imagines Historiarum*. Our latter-day philosopher praises him also because he shows himself to have “a pleasant wit; and to love a timely joke, though in a mild subdued manner; very amiable to see.”

In A.D. 1173, as just noted, Jocelin entered the community and passed under the care of Samson of Tottington, who subsequently became abbot, but who was then Master of novices. The then abbot, Hugh, was old, and although a high standard of the religious exercises and of the monastic life inside the cloister was maintained, the temporalities were in a sad state, and year by year tended to get from bad to worse, so that Jocelin’s early experiences of monastic life were connected with anxieties about the load of debt to money-lenders under which Edmundsbury groaned.

He tells us that he had himself seen bonds for repayment made out to the Jews, under which, for failure to meet the sums falling due, the original loan had grown in eight years from £100 to £800. No wonder that the youthful religious questioned his Master of novices as to why some remedy was not found by those in authority for a state of things which meant temporal ruin and disgrace for the community of Edmundsbury.

In 1180 Abbot Hugh met with an accident and died. After a period of a year and three months the former Master of novices, Samson, then the provident Sacrist, was chosen in his place. It was during this period of vacancy that, in recording something which happened in the monastery, Jocelin incidentally

makes mention of another literary work of his own, namely, the *Book of the Miracles of St. Robert*, a boy supposed to have been martyred by the Jews in 1181, who was entombed in the church at Edmundsbury.

On the election of Samson, Jocelin was appointed his chaplain, and this brought him into the closest connection with the abbot for six years. In 1198 and 1200 he was Guest-master, and in 1212 he held the office of Almoner. In all these offices the future chronicler had exceptional means of acquiring information, and these he utilised in writing the story of Abbot Samson's administration, which is introduced by a vivid sketch of the temporal disorder of the house in the closing years of Abbot Hugh. His Chronicle covers the period of the history of Edmundsbury from 1173 to 1190, and, as he says in the beginning, "he took care to write only what he himself saw and heard." The date of his death is uncertain.

**The "Chronicle."**—The Latin text of *Cronica Joceline* is found complete only in one manuscript—Harl. MS. 1005—in the British Museum. It was printed for the first time by the Camden Society in 1840 under the editorship of I. G. Gage Rokewood, who supplied a valuable Introduction and notes, of which subsequent editors have availed themselves. The text was likewise printed in Mr. Thomas Arnold's *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey* (Rolls Series) I., pp. 209–336.

In 1844, under the title *Monastic and Social Life in the Twelfth Century, as exemplified in the Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond, A.D. 1173–1202*, the work was translated by Thomas Edlyne Tomlins. Carlyle's work, *Past and Present*, published in 1843 had already drawn attention to the "Chronicle of Jocelin," and another edition of Mr. Tomlins' work was called for in 1849. This translation has since appeared at least once, but for the present edition a new English version has been carefully prepared from the original Latin text of the Chronicle.

**Abbot Samson.**—The central figure and, as we may say, "the hero" of Jocelin's story is, of course, Abbot Samson. He was born in 1135 at Tottington, near Thetford, in Norfolk. His father appears to have died when Samson was young, and a pretty legend of a boyish dream in which St. Edmund extended his protection to the child against the assaults of the devil, and the recognition of the place seen in the dream as the gate of the monastery of St. Edmundsbury, when

his mother had taken him with her on a pilgrimage to the shrine of the saint, led to his taking refuge in the cloister. He had received his early instruction from a schoolmaster named William of Diss, and he attained the degree of Master of Arts in the University of Paris. In this place we are not concerned with the events of his life: these may be read for the most part in the Chronicle of Jocelin of Brakelond. What alone seems to be called for in this brief Introduction is some account of his person and character as it is manifested in the scattered evidences of his acts.

If we want a picture of the man let us take Carlyle's, who sketches "the substantial figure of a man with eminent nose, bushy brows, and clear-flashing eyes, his russet beard growing daily greyer," and his hair which, before his elevation to the abbot's chair, had been black, becoming daily more and more silvered with his many cares. We know something of the task that was before him when he gathered up the reins of office, and we may be sure he knew more. But as we see him in the pages of Jocelin, he was not the man to flinch from his duty, or to seek to let difficulties mend themselves by pretending that he did not see them. From the time that he walked barefooted into his church to be installed in the abbatial chair, he let all see that he was abbot and had come to rule. He had set his whole strength to accomplish a great task and his shoulders to sustain an almost overwhelming burden, when in the hour of his election he walked to the altar singing the *Miserere mei* with his brethren. "His head was held erect," says the faithful Jocelin, "and his face showed no change," a portent which called from the king the remark: "This abbot-elect seems to think himself capable of governing an abbey."

"It is beautiful"—writes Carlyle in a philosophical appreciation of the principles of monastic government—"it is beautiful how the chrysalis governing-soul, shaking off its dusty slough and prison, starts forth winged, a true royal soul! Our new abbot has a right honest, unconscious feeling, without insolence as without fear or flutter, of what he is and what others are. A courage to quell the proudest, an honest pity to encourage the humblest. Withal there is a noble reticence in this Lord Abbot: much vain unreason he hears; lays up without response. He is not there to expect reason and nobleness of others, he is there to give them of his own reason and nobleness. Is he not their servant, who can

suffer from them and for them; bear the burden their poor spindle-limbs totter and stagger under; and in virtue of *being* their servant, govern them, lead them out of weakness to strength, out of defeat into victory?"

Abbot Samson ruled over his house for thirty years, and when in 1212, ten years after the end of Jocelin's Chronicle, he died, he was followed to the grave by a sorrowing community whose unstinted reverence and affection he had won. An unknown monk of Edmundsbury, the author of another Chronicle of the house, thus wrote of him: "On the 30th December, at St. Edmund's, died Samson, of pious memory, the venerable abbot of that place; after he had prosperously ruled the abbey committed to him for thirty years and had freed it from a load of debt, had enriched it with privileges, liberties, possessions and spacious buildings and had restored the worship of the church both internally and externally, in the most ample manner. Then bidding his last farewell to his sons, by whom the blessed man deserved to be blest for evermore, whilst they were all standing by and gazing with awe at a death which was a cause for admiration, not for regret, in the fourth year of the interdict he rested in peace.

The first business to which Abbot Samson applied himself after his election was the task of understanding and grappling with the deplorable financial state of his house. He insisted upon the immediate production of every claim against the monastery, and by personally visiting each of its many manors he gained a correct knowledge of its resources. Within twelve months he had formed his plans and had quieted every creditor: within twelve years the entire debt had been paid off, and he could turn his attention to building and adorning the house of St. Edmund. It is impossible to read the pages of Jocelin without seeing that the ruling idea of the abbot's life was his devotion to his great patron, St. Edmund. He was the servant, after God, of the saint, his representative and the upholder of his honour and privileges, the champion of his rights, the guardian of his property. Inspired by this thought he worked to make Edmundsbury worthy of its patron, and in his success he saw the result of the saint's intercession and protection.

"Apart from this special devotion to St. Edmund, it is easy to see," writes Mr. Thomas Arnold, "that Samson was an earnestly religious man, and not a Christian by halves. After the news had come of the capture of Jerusalem by

the Saracens, Samson took the loss of the Holy Places so much to heart, that from that time he wore undergarments of hair-cloth and abstained from the use of meat.”

He was, too, a thorough Englishman, and read admirably—*elegantissime*—the Bible in English—*scripturam anglice scriptam*—and “he was wont to preach to the people in English—but in the dialect of Norfolk where he had been born and bred.” On one occasion he gives as a reason, and as some may think, a somewhat strange reason, for appointing a monk to an office, that “he did not know French.” He was no doubt anxious to secure that St. Edmundsbury should be truly national, with its roots deep in the soil of his country, to teach it to build up its own traditions, and to let people see that it was a great *English* house.

But Samson’s work was not accomplished without grave anxiety, none the less because it was unseen by others. Though he walked upright with a smiling face, and had ever the courage to battle for the rights of his house when there was need, in a way that might make people regard him as a man of iron nerve possessed of a soul that never felt any trouble, nevertheless in the first fourteen years of his administration his black hair was blanched as white as snow, and Jocelin speaks of hearing his beloved master walking about when all were in bed and relieving his pent-up feelings with sighs and groans. Once the chronicler took courage to tell his master that he had thus heard him in his night vigil, and to this the abbot replied: “’Tis no wonder: you (as my chaplain) share in the streets of my office, in the meat and drink, in the journeys and the like, but you little think what I have to do to provide for my house and family, or of the many and difficult matters of my pastoral office, which are always pressing upon me: these are the things which make my soul anxious and cause me to sigh.”

And so when Abbot Samson came to die, the thin veil which to him and his monks of Edmundsbury alone hid the world to come from their vision was parted, and the supernatural life eternal was revealed to him in the most natural of ways. He passed from labour for God and St. Edmundsbury, to rest in God and with his loved patron, carrying with him the full sheaves of his good works. Carlyle has only partially caught the idea when he writes: “Genuine work alone, what thou workest faithfully, that is eternal.” “Yes,” he concludes,



“a noble Abbot Samson resigns himself to oblivion; feels it no hardship, but a comfort; counts it as a still resting-place, for much sick fret, and fever, and stupidity, which in the night-watches often made his strong heart sigh.”

FRANCIS AIDAN GASQUET,  
*Abbot-President of the English Benedictines.*



## PREFACE.

*From the edition of the chronicle prepared by J. G. ROKEWODE.*

THE present Chronicle comprehends the annals of the Monastery of St. Edmund from the year 1173 to 1202. The early pages give a rapid sketch of the state of the Monastery under Abbot Hugh, intended as an Introduction to the History of the Government of Samson de Totington, his successor, whose acts are the chief object of the Chronicle. Abbot Hugh died in 1180, and was succeeded by Samson in 1182, after a vacancy of a year and three months.

Jocelin de Brakelond, the writer, a native of St. Edmundsbury,<sup>1</sup> dates his Chronicle from the year when the Flemings were taken prisoners without the town (alluding to the battle of Fornham in 1173), in which year, he tells us,<sup>2</sup> that he took the habit at St. Edmund's, having made his noviciate under Samson, then Master of the Novices, afterward Abbot, to whose charge he had been specially committed.<sup>3</sup> According to Bale,<sup>4</sup> he studied at Cambridge; but for this we have not seen any authority. At the time of the election of Abbot Samson, Jocelin was the Prior's chaplain; and within four months was promoted to be chaplain to the Abbot,<sup>5</sup> with whom he lived, to use his own language, day and night for six years.<sup>6</sup> In 1198 and 1200, he did the honours of the abbey as guest-master,<sup>7</sup> perhaps still continuing one of the Abbot's chaplains; and was afterward almoner, an office which he filled at the death of Samson in 1211.<sup>8</sup>

A contemporary monk of St. Edmund's has recorded<sup>9</sup> the character of our

---

<sup>1</sup>The Long Braklond, leading from the North Gate to the Market Place, and the Little Braklond, are ancient streets of St. Edmundsbury mentioned in deeds 33 Edw. I. Regist. Croftis, MS. Harl. XXVII. fol. 5. 10v. 14. 15.

<sup>2</sup>Vide Chron. p. 1.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid. p. 3.

<sup>4</sup>Script. Illust. Bas. 1559, p. 259.

<sup>5</sup>Chron. p. 19.

<sup>6</sup>Ibid. p. 27. Bishop Tanner, in error, represents that our author was cellarist of the monastery in the 9th Richard I. confounding him with Jocellus or Jocellinus, twice cellarist, and afterward appointed to the Altar. Vide Chron. pp. 84, 86, 91; Chronica de Electione Hugonis Abbatis MS. Harl. 1005. fol. 164.

<sup>7</sup>Chron. pp. 71, 95.

<sup>8</sup>Ibid. p. 50. Chron. de Electione Hugonis Abbatis, fol. 165.

<sup>9</sup>Chron. p. 50.

Chronicler in these simple words: "Dominus Jocelinus elemosinarius noster, vir religionis eximie, potens in sermone et opere."

Jocelin de Brakelond wrote<sup>10</sup> on the miracles of St. Robert, the boy martyred by the Jews at St. Edmundsbury in 1181. Bale, and later bibliographers, also ascribe to him the *Chronica de Electione Hugonis Abbatis, postea episcopi Eliensis*; but the part which our author took, on the occasion of that election, is spoken of in the same Chronicle in such a manner as to leave no doubt that it was the work of another.

The public events recorded in this volume are chiefly those in which the Abbot of St. Edmund's had a share during the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I. They are not without historical interest; but the merit of the Chronicle lies more in the variety of ordinary incidents detailed, from which often something is to be learnt touching our language, manners, and customs, or our system, civil and religious, particularly the monastic polity.

The style of the work is easy, mixed, but not offensively, with the language of writers sacred and profane, according to the custom of the monastic historians of the age. The story is told throughout with a pleasing naïveté, and sometimes humour; the characters are drawn with spirit, and the whole seems written with truth.

That part of this Chronicle is subsequent to the Chronicle of Diceto, is apparent from the fact, that our author, commenting on an occurrence in the Monastery of St. Edmund during the year 1200,<sup>11</sup> cites words which he finds apt to his purpose, used by the Dean of London in his Chronicle.

Incorporated in our Chronicle is an episode,<sup>12</sup> headed, "De Henrico de Essexia," being an account of the duel between Henry de Essex and Robert de Montford. The heading is our author's; but the narrative is expressed to be added by a monk who accompanied the Abbot of St. Edmund's to Reading, and received the relation from Henry de Essex himself, then in the cloister of the Abbey of Reading. This episode has certain pretensions to classical Latin, and forms a contrast to the easy colloquial style of Jocelin.

At the end of the Chronicle, which breaks off abruptly some years before the death of Abbot Samson, will also be found an evidence of the lands held of St.

---

<sup>10</sup>Ibid. 12.

<sup>11</sup>Chron. p. 97.

<sup>12</sup>Chron. p. 50.

Edmund's granted to the family of Cokefeld. This brief document purports to be written<sup>13</sup> by William de Dice (Diss), then one of Abbot Samson's chaplains, who had access to the Cokefeld charters, and is in the nature of an appendix to our Chronicle, being obviously added in proof of the right of the monastery to certain lands claimed by Thomas de Burgh as belonging to Nesta de Cokefeld, afterward his wife, the subject of a suit determined against the convent which is spoken of in our Chronicle.

Spelman, Reynier, Battely and others, referring to our author, cite from a MS. in the Cotton Collection, Vitellius D. xv., which is described in Smith's Catalogue, in these words: "Chronica Jocelini de Brakelonde de rebus domesticis Cœnobii S. Edmundi de Burgo: h. e. de Abbatibus, prioribus et cœteris officialibus, de electionibus, de litibus et rebus qualitercumque ad istud Cœnobium spectantibus." The MS. cited is wanting; and it is conjectured to have suffered in the fire that destroyed part of the Cotton collection.

The present Chronicle is edited from the Liber Albus Monasterii S. Edmundi, MS. 1005, in the Harleian Collection, which MS. belonged to the family of Bacon of Redgrave, and afterward to Dr. Stillingfleet, Bishop of Worcester; whence Bishop Tanner<sup>14</sup> refers to it under the title "Registrum de Bury, MS. Stillingfleet."

The description which the learned Wanley gives of this Chronicle, in his Catalogue of the Harleian MSS. is hardly exact; and his opinion that William de Dice, before-mentioned, was the continuator of the Chronicle from the commencement of the Episode on Henry de Essex, is contradicted by the text. Our author, relating<sup>15</sup> the translation of the body of St. Edmund in 1198, names William de Dice as one of the twelve monks, including the two Chaplains of the Abbot, selected to be present; the writer at the same time telling us the part he himself took on the occasion. Beside, a comparison of the text will shew, that the hand which sketched the character of Samson the Abbot and other officers of the Monastery, in the early part of the narrative, is the same that portrayed Herebert, the prior, in the last pages.

The MS. of which we annex a fac-simile, is of the end of the 13th, or the beginning of the 14th century, and at first sight would seem to be executed

---

<sup>13</sup> Ibid. p. 102.

<sup>14</sup> Bib. Brit.

<sup>15</sup> Chron. p. 83.

by more than one scribe; but perhaps it is the same handwriting throughout, which grows gradually larger in the progress of the copy.

In publishing this Chronicle for the first time, we have thought it best to adhere to the orthography of the MS., at the same time freeing the text from the contractions. Occasionally, at the foot of our pages, we have noted errors of the scribe, or attempted to supply defects; adding often the references to the scriptural or classical allusions of the text. All the dates in the margin are our own; and, where necessary, we have given the proof in our Notes to the volume. We have also added a Glossary.

The seal of Abbot Samson, which forms the subject of our *Frontispiece*, is from an instrument in the Archives of Christ Church, Canterbury, dated 6 November, 1200, being an award in a matter of dispute between the Archbishop of Canterbury and Canons of Lambeth, referred by Pope Innocent III. to Hugh Bishop of Lincoln, (for whom Roger, Dean of Lincoln, was substituted) Eustace Bishop of Ely, and the Abbot of St. Edmund's.<sup>16</sup>

The *Tail-piece*, representing the Standard of St. Edmund, is from Lydgate, the monk of Bury's, *Life and Miracles of the Saint* in the Harleian Collection.

---

<sup>16</sup>Hoveden, 458. Diceto, col. 708.

# ANNALS AND MEMORIALS OF ST. EDMUND'S ABBEY.

*Introduction to the compilation edited by T. ARNOLD.*

THE articles on the ancient monasteries of England in the latest edition of Dugdale's *Monasticon*, valuable and laborious as they are, were put together with a certain crudity. The mass of original material, in the shape of charters, terriers, and other documents is often very great; but it is seldom so handled as to make the past live again, and exhibit with anything like vividness the features of the life of a monastery, as these were known to contemporaries. The nature and the vastness of their task furnish, however, a sufficient excuse to Dugdale and his successors for any such shortcomings. The first need was, authentic materials; these they have supplied; and they have also often indicated the sources from which yet more can be obtained. To make these materials instructive to the living generation, and subservient to historical science,—to invest the dry bones of Dugdale's monastic notices with the substantial human features of a great progressive existence, buried indeed in the past, but on the relics and dust of which we ourselves stand and are supported,—this, as it is a task of great labour and discrimination, so it is sure to reward the labourers and their age with the gifts of deepened insight and larger sympathy. It is well known that the same abbey, of which records and memorials are here collected, fell, nearly fifty years ago, under the luminous gaze of Thomas Carlyle—who in his “*Past and Present*,” availing himself of the narrative of Jocelyn de Brakelonde, then recently published for the first time, drew that vivid portraiture of Abbot Samson with which we are all familiar, and used his story as evidence in favour of that theory of “Hero-worship” on which he loved to insist. However far below such a forerunner,—“*infra Lucili censum ingeniumque*,”—I propose to use the more varied materials here offered to the reader in the same general spirit, and while describing—or rather allowing to speak for themselves,—the founders and continuators, the ruling ideas and cardinal institutions of St. Edmund's abbey, to trace the deeply interesting historic sequence connecting by an unbroken chain the age of our great Alfred with the times of Luther and Sir Thomas More.

Objects proposed.

## II.

The monastery of St. Edmund, in Suffolk, flourished for five hundred years,—to omit the period before clerks made way for monks—at the ancient town of Beodricsworth. Its position was probably the same as that of the modern Bury; a hill, rising rather steeply out of the rich meadows through which the river Lark flows towards the Ouse and the North Sea, is covered by the houses of the townsmen, and cut off sharply to the south by the meadows bordering the little river Linnet, which, coming from the west, here joins the Lark. On the low ground below the hill, between it and the Lark, may be seen what remains of the monastic buildings. Farthest to the south is the beautiful church of St. Mary, built by Rodulph and Hervé the sacrists in the second quarter of the twelfth century, but showing many an enlargement and alteration in the styles of later times. A tower eighty-six feet high, which was formerly the gate-tower of the cemetery or churchyard, and stood exactly opposite the great western door of the abbey church, is still in good preservation. Of the church itself—huge fragments of compacted—one might almost say coagulated—flints, from which the cut stone that originally encased them has been removed, and which in some cases are used to form the walls of modern houses,—are all that remains. On the left of the gate-tower, a few steps further north, its west end flush with the street, is the fine church of St. James, built in the twelfth century, under the circumstances described below in §X. Still proceeding north, we come to the entrance tower of the monastery; it is of perpendicular architecture and in good preservation. Within it, the open space fronting the monastic buildings has been converted into a botanic garden. The remains of the abbot's house or “camera” are considerable; of the other buildings little is left. Beyond the Lark to the east, the rising ground which was once the terraced vineyard of the abbey may be clearly made out. It is remarkable that the monastery was to the north of the great church, not, as is usually the case, to the south, the reason probably being that the natural drainage of the ground is towards the north. The western front of the church consisted of a lofty central tower, with two lower octagon towers flanking it; the effect must have much resembled that which the west front of Ely cathedral, were it perfect, would now produce.

The abbey precinct, a roughly oblong site, containing the whole of the town as well as the monastery, was marked by crosses at the four corners;—of these



crosses no trace appears now to exist, The enclosed space was the *banna-leuca* or ban-lieue, and “was taken to be a distinct jurisdiction” within the hundred of Thinghoe. Thinghoe, “hill of the council,” is identified by Mr. Gage with the hill now called Shirehouse Heath, which rises outside the town to the north-west. The name tells us that the first stirrings of government and judicial process in the district were connected with the site of this hill.

### III.

A general survey of the documents which have come down to us shows that, in a certain sense, there is no lack of materials for the history of the abbey. Beginning from the tenth century a series of chronicles, charters, registers, and illustrative pieces of many kinds is producible, to which no other English monastery, except perhaps St. Alban's, affords a parallel, and which, if the object were merely to describe the course of change affecting the property, would leave little to be desired.

General view  
of the materials  
for the history  
of Bury St. Ed-  
mund's abbey.

The history of the community, and of any remarkable men who may have arisen in it from age to age, is less easily ascertained. In one or two noted instances, a monk writing at the time, like Jocelin, in the case of Abbot Samson, has thrown a strong light both on the interior and exterior life of the monastic flock gathered round the body of St. Edmund. But in general, while we have ample information as to the organisation of the convent, the names and functions of the various officers or “obediencers,” and the arrangements for daily duty and prayer, we rarely obtain any insight into the characters of the individual men who carried on the work from generation to generation. Bury was less fortunate in this respect than Durham, which, in the annals compiled by its “Tres Scriptores” (Surtees Society, 1839), possesses a most valuable continuous record of the chief events that befel the convent and see of St. Cuthbert, from the middle of the twelfth century to the times of Bishop Tonstall.

The materials for the history of Bury may be arranged under five heads; they consist of, 1. charters; 2. chronicles; 3. historical pieces of various kinds; 4. registers; and 5. notices relating to St. Edmund's, scattered through the works of chroniclers, hagiographers, and poets, down to the dissolution of the monasteries.

1. The charters are either royal, papal, or private. Of those of the first class the earliest is that granted by King Edmund, Athelstan's brother, in 945 (see below, p. 340). In several registers, especially in the fine volume (formerly belonging to R. Bacon, but now in the British Museum), called the *Registrum Album*, copies are given of charters granted by Cnut, Edward the Confessor, William the Conqueror, Stephen, and others. The *Codex Diplomaticus* contains twenty-four royal charters in favour of St. Edmund. Of the papal charters, none, so far as I am aware, have hitherto been printed. One of the most important of them, that of Pope Alexander II., has been given below (p. 345), and one or two others will hereafter appear. Of the private charters, which also are numerous, fifteen are printed in the *Codex*.

2. The chronicles either relate to the history of the abbey itself, or describe the course of public events, while inserting in their proper chronological place notices of things especially interesting to the monks of Bury. Of the former class, the Chronicle of Jocelin de Brakelonde,—an unfinished narrative of the official life of Abbot Samson,—is the most important example. It was first printed from a Harleian MS. for the Camden Society by Mr. Gage Rokewode, in 1840. The remarkable use made of the book by Carlyle in his *Past and Present*, to illustrate his theory of hero-worship, is known to us all. The work having long been out of print, it has been thought desirable to include it in the present publication. With chronicles of the second class it is impossible to deal on any general principle. When the insertions are made by Bury monks in chronicles, otherwise known, which did not originate with them (as in the case of a fine copy of Florence of Worcester, in the Bodleian Library, Bod. 297), the obvious course is to print the insertions, if they are of any historical value, and leave the work in which they inhere untouched. This has been done in the case of the MS. in question.

The Chronicle in *Harl.* 447, which I will designate as *Anonymus Buriensis I.*, gives a sketch of general history, with special notices of Bury events, down to the death of Abbot Samson, in 1212. It has been partly printed, and made the subject of a masterly criticism, by Dr. F. Liebermann, in his "Ungedruckte Anglo-Nor. Geschichtsquellen." It is described, not very accurately, in Hardy's *Catalogue* (iii. 30).

The Chronicle written by John de Taxter, a monk of Bury, and brought down by him to 1265, was, as to the later and only valuable portion of it, printed by

Mr. Thorpe as a continuation to the work of Florence of Worcester, edited by him for the English Historical Society in 1848. In the same work Mr. Thorpe printed another continuation (*Anonymus Buriensis II.*), carrying on the narrative from 1265 to 1295.

The Chronicle of John of Everisden appears to be extant (Hardy, iii. 176) only in a MS. belonging to the College of Arms. Excerpts from it may be read in the Chronicles of John of Oxnead and Bartholomew de Cotton (see the Rolls editions of those writers); but Everisden's work, which apparently extends to about the end of the thirteenth century, has never been printed as a whole. He was cellarer in the monastery at Bury.

A curious tract contained in a MS. belonging to the Public Library at Cambridge (*Add. 850*), gives a brief history of the abbey from its foundation under Cnut to the writer's own time, about the middle of the fourteenth century. This tract I hope to give hereafter in its proper place. It may be designated *Anonymus Buriensis III.*

This list of chronicles must be wound up with the work of Boston of Bury, extant in a MS. of the fifteenth century, at Queen's College, Oxford. This MS. I have not yet had time to examine. If Bale's notice of the author can be depended upon, he flourished about 1410, and his chronicle relates to the affairs of his own monastery.

3. *Historical Pieces.* Among these may be enumerated, first, such interpolations in MSS. as those in Bod. 297, mentioned on the last page. Secondly, records of miracles; see pp. 26, 107 of the present volume; these records are generally arranged chronologically, and contain much that illustrates English social life in the Middle Ages, with, occasionally, notices that are of historical value. Thirdly, hagiographies; under this head are included the great legendary life of St. Edmund in the MS. Bodl. 240, "Vita et Passio cum Miraculis Sancti Edmundi Regis et Martyris excerpta de cronicis et diversis historiis seu legendis," the last miracles being dated in 1375; the "Passio" of St. Edmund, by Abbo; and the story of his infancy by Galfridus de Fontibus; the last two works being printed in the present volume. To these must be added the metrical lives by Denis Piramus and Robert of Gloucester, the elaborate poem of Lydgate, and the narrative found in the Curteys Register, and used by Battely in his work "De Antiquitatibus Sancti Edmundi Burgi" (1745). Fourthly, narratives of elections; of these, the "electio Hugonis," in 1214, and the "electio Symonis,"

in 1257, will, I hope, appear in the next volume. Fifthly, narratives of various kinds; such as the account of the great building works of Hervé the saciist, in the time of Abbot Anselm, recorded in the *Registrum Alphabeticum*, and the details of the terrible riots of 1327, found in the *Lakenheath* and other registers.

**Q**UOD vidi et audiui scribere curavi, quædam mala interserens ad cautelam, quædam bona ad usum, quæ contigerunt in ecclesia sancti Ædmundi in diebus nostris, ab anno quo Flandrenses capti sunt extra villam, quo habitum religionis suscepì, quo anno Hugo prior depositus est, et R. prior substitutus.

*How Abbot Hugh ruled the  
Church of St. Edmund.  
A.D. 1173.*

Tunc temporis senuit Hugo abbas, et aliquantulum caligaverunt oculi ejus; homo pius et benignus, monachus religiosus et bonus, sed nec bonus nec providus in sæcularibus exercitiis: qui nimis confidebat suis et nimis eis credebat, de alieno potius quam de proprio pendens consilio. Ordo quidem et religio

**I**HAVE undertaken to write of those things which I have seen and heard, and which have occurred in the church of Saint Edmund, from the year in which the Flemings were taken<sup>17</sup> without the town, in which year also I assumed the religious habit, and in which Prior Hugh was deposed and Robert made Prior in his room. And I have related the evil as a warning, and the good for an example.

In those days Abbot Hugh<sup>18</sup> grew old, and his eyes were dim.<sup>19</sup> He was a good and kindly man, a godfearing and pious monk, but in temporal matters he was unskilful and improvident. He relied too much on his own intimates and believed too readily in them, rather trusting to a stranger's advice than using his own judgment. It is true that discipline and the service of God, and all that pertained to the

<sup>17</sup>The allusion is to the battle of Fornham, November, 1173. In this year the quarrel between Henry II. and his sons, culminated in a general rising both in Normandy and in England. Of the leaders of the rebellion in England, Robert de Bellemont, earl of Leicester, was the chief. Having gathered a force of mercenaries in the Low Countries, he landed at Walton, which he failed to take. After joining hands with Hugh Bigod, earl of Norfolk, at Framingham, and capturing Haughley, he attempted to force his way to his own estates. Meanwhile, the justiciar Richard de Lucy and Humphrey Bohun hastened south from their campaign against the Scots, and having been reinforced by the local levies, they succeeded in intercepting Leicester at Fornham St. Geneveve, on the river Lark, four miles south from Bury St. Edmund's. The rebels were easily defeated, and Leicester taken prisoner; of his mercenaries only a few escaped. An account of the battle, not very accurate, from the point of view of the St. Edmund's monks, is to be found in Appendix E of the first volume of the *Memorials of St. Edmund's Abbey*, (Rolls Series). The escape of those mercenaries who did escape is attributed to the intervention of St. Edmund and St. Thomas.

fervebant in claustro, et ea quæ ad ordinem spectant; sed exteriora male tractabantur, dum quisque, serviens sub domino simplice et jam senescente, fecit quod voluit, non quod decuit. Dabantur villæ abbatis et omnes hundredi ad firmam; nemora destruebantur; domus maneriorum minabantur ruinam; omnia de die in diem in deteriorem statum vertebantur. Unicum erat refugium et consolationis remedium abbati, denarios appruntare; ut saltem sic honorem domus suæ posset sustentare. Non erat terminus Paschæ nec sancti Michaelis octo annis ante obitum ejus, quin centum libræ vel ducentæ ad minus crescerent in debitum; semper renovabantur cartæ, et usura quæ excrevit vertebatur in katallum.

were ever renewed, and the growing interest was converted into principal.

Descendebat hæc infirmitas a capite in membra, a prælato in subjectos. Unde contigit quod quilibet obedientiarius haberet sigillum proprium, et debito se obligaret tam Judeis quam Christianis pro voluntate sua. Sæpe cappæ se-

rule, flourished greatly within the cloister, but without the walls all-things were mismanaged. For every man, seeing that he served a simple and ageing lord, did not that which was right, but that which was pleasing in his own eyes. The townships and all the hundreds of the abbot were given to firm; the woods were destroyed, and the houses on the manors were on the verge of ruin; from day to day all things grew worse. The abbot's sole resource and means of relief was in borrowing money, that so it might at least be possible to maintain the dignity of his house. For eight years before his death, there was never an Easter or Michaelmas which did not see at least one or two hundred pounds added to the debt. The bonds

This disease spread from the head to the members, from the ruler to his subjects. So it came to pass that if any official had a seal of his own, he also bound himself in debt as he listed, both to Jews and Christians. Silken caps,

<sup>18</sup>Hugh, prior of Westminster, was elected abbot in 1157, in succession to abbot Ording. According to Gervase (I., 163), he received his benediction from Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, to whom he made profession of canonical obedience. According to the *Chronica Buriensis* (*Mem.* III., 6) he was confirmed by the bishop of Winchester. In any case, abbot Hugh, as it related in the text of the *Chronicle of Jocelin* (p. 6), was freed from all obedience by pope Alexander III.

<sup>19</sup>Gen. xxvii., 1.

ricæ, et ampullæ aureæ, et alia ornamenta ecclesiæ impignorabantur, inconsulto conventu. Vidi cartam fieri Willelmo filio Isabel mille librarum et xl.; sed nec causam nec originem sciui. Vidi et aliam cartam fieri Isaac, filio Raby Joce, cccc. librarum, sed nescio quare. Vidi et tertiam cartam fieri Benedicto Judeo de Norwico, octies c. librarum et quater viginti; et hæc fuit origo et causa hujus debiti.

and golden vessels, and the other ornaments of the church, were often placed in pledge<sup>20</sup> without the assent of the monastery. I have seen a bond made to William Fitzlsabel for a thousand and two score pounds, but know not the why nor wherefore. And I have seen another bond to Isaac, son of Rabbi Joce, for four hundred pounds, but know not wherefore it was made. I have seen also a third bond to Benedict, the Jew of Norwich, for eight hundred and fourscore pounds, and this was the origin and cause of that debt.

Destructa fuit camera nostra, et recepit eam Willelmus sacrista volens vel nolens, ut eam instauraret; et occulte appruntavit a Benedicto Judeo xl. marcas ad usuram, et ei fecit cartam signatam quodam sigillo quod solebat pendere ad feretrum sancti Ædmundi, unde gildæ et fraternationes solebant sigillari, quod postea sed tarde fractum est, jubente conventu. Cum autem crevisset debitum illud usque ad c. libras, venit Judeus portans literas domini regis de debito sacristæ; et tunc demum patuit quod latuit abbatem et

Our buttery was destroyed, and the sacristan William<sup>5</sup> received it to restore whether he would or no. He secretly borrowed forty marks at interest from Benedict the Jew, and made him a bond, scaled with a certain seal which was wont to hang at the shrine of St. Edmund. With this the gilds and brotherhoods used to be sealed; afterwards, but in no great haste, it was destroyed by order of the monastery. Now when that debt increased to one hundred pounds, the Jew came, bearing letters of the lord king<sup>6</sup> concer-

<sup>20</sup>This was illegal. Rokewode (*Chron. Joc.*, pp. 106–7) gives instances of fines inflicted on Jews for taking church property in pawn, from the Pipe Rolls of Norfolk and Suffolk.

<sup>21</sup>William Wardell (*Mem. II.*, 291). His incompetence is mentioned in the *Gesta Sacristurum* (*ibid.*), and is described in the text.

<sup>22</sup>The Jews were legally the king's chattels, and debts due to them were due to the king. Accordingly, when debtors failed to pay, the Jews were able to invoke the royal authority to enforce payment.

conventum. Iratus autem abbas voluit deponere sacristam, prætendens privilegium domini papæ, ut posset deponere Willelmum sacristam suum, quando vellet. Venit autem aliquis ad abbatem, et, loquens pro sacrista, ita circumvenit abbatem, quod passus est cartam fieri Benedicto Judeo cccc. librarum, reddendarum in fine iiiij<sup>or</sup> annorum, scilicet pro c. libris quæ jam excreverant in usuram, et aliis c. libris quas idem Judeus commodavit sacristæ ad opus abbatis. Et sacrista suscepit omne debitum illud reddendum in pleno capitulo, et facta est carta sigillo conventus signata, abbate dissimulante et sigillum suum non apponente, tanquam illud debitum non pertineret ad illum. In fine vero quatuor annorum non erat unde illud debitum posset reddi; et facta est nova carta octies c. librarum et quater viginti librarum, reddendarum ad terminos statutos, annis singulis quater xx. librarum.

Habuit et idem Judeus plures alias cartas de minoribus debitis, et aliquam cartam quæ erat xiiij. annorum, ita quod summa debiti illius Judei erat

ning the sacristan's debt, and then at last that which had been hidden from the abbot and the monks appeared. So the abbot in anger would have deposed the sacristan, alleging a privilege of the lord pope that enabled him to remove William his sacristan when he would. However, there came one to the abbot, who pleaded for the sacristan, and so won over the abbot that he suffered a bond to be made to Benedict the Jew for four hundred pounds, payable at the end of four years, that is, a bond for the hundred pounds to which the interest had increased, and for another hundred pounds which the same Jew had lent to the sacristan for the use of the abbot. And in full chapter the sacristan obtained that all this debt should be paid, and a bond was made and sealed with the seal of the monastery. For the abbot pretended that the debt was no concern of his, and did not affix his seal. However, at the end of the four years there was nothing wherewith the debt might be discharged, and a new bond was made for eight hundred and fourscore pounds, which was to be repaid at stated times, every year fourscore pounds.

And the same Jew had many other bonds for smaller debts, and one bond which was for fourteen years, so that the sum of the debt owing to that



mille et cc. librarum, præter usuram quæ excreverat.

Veniensque R. elemosinarius domini regis significavit domino abbati rumorem talem venisse ad regem de tantis debitis. Et inito consilio cum priore et paucis aliis, ductus est elemosinarius in capitulum; nobisque assidentibus et tacentibus, dixit abbas: "Ecce elemosinarius regis, dominus et amicus noster et vester, qui, ductus amore Dei et sancti Ædmundi, nobis ostendit dominum regem quoddam sinistrum audisse de nobis et vobis, et res ecclesiæ male tractari et interius et exterius. Et ideo volo et præcipio in vi obedientiæ, ut dicatis et cognoscatis palam qualiter res se habeant." Surgens ergo prior et loquens, quasi unus pro omnibus, dixit ecclesiam in bono statu esse, et ordinem bene et religiose observari interius, et exteriora bene et discrete tractari, debito tamen aliquantulo obligatos nos esse sicut cæteros vicinos nostros, nec esse aliquod debitum quod nos graveret. Audiens hoc, elemosinarius dixit se valde lætum esse ex hoc quod audierat testimonium conventus, id est, prioris sic loquentis. Hæc eadem verba respondit prior alia vice, et magister Galfridus de Constantino, loquentes et excusantes abbatem, quando Ricardus archiepiscopus jure legatæ ve-

Jew was a thousand and two hundred pounds, over and above the amount by which usury had increased it.

Then came the almoner of the lord king and told the lord abbot that many rumours concerning these great debts had come to the king. And when counsel had been taken with the prior and a few others, the almoner was brought into the chapter. Then, when we were seated and were silent, the abbot said: "Behold the almoner of the king, our lord and friend and yours, who, moved by love of God and Saint Edmund, has shown to us that the lord king has heard some evil report of us and you, and that the affairs of the church are ill-managed within and without the walls. And therefore I will, and command you upon your vow of obedience, that you say and make known openly how our affairs stand." So the prior arose, and speaking as it were one for all, said that the church was in good order, and that the rule was well and strictly kept within, and matters outside the walls carefully and discreetly managed; and that though we, like others round us, were slightly involved in debt, there was no debt which might give us cause for anxiety. When he heard this, the almoner said that he rejoiced greatly to hear this witness of the monastery, by which he meant these words of

nit in capitulum nostrum, antequam talem exemptionem haberemus sicut nunc habemus.

the prior. And the prior, and Master Geoffrey of Coutances, answered in these same words on another occasion, when they spoke in defence of the abbot at the time when Archbishop Richard, by virtue of his legatine power, came into our chapter, in the days before we possessed that exemption which we now enjoy.

Ego vero tunc temporis novicius, data opportunitate, magistrum meum super his conveni, qui me docebat ordinem et cuius custodiæ deputatus fui, scilicet, magistrum Sampsonem, postea abbatem. “Quid est,” inquam, “quod audio? Utquid taces qui talia vides et audis, tu qui claustralis es, nec obedientias cupis, et Deum times magis quam hominem?” At ille respondens, ait: “Fili mi, puer noviter combustus timet ignem; ita est de me et pluribus aliis. Hugo prior noviter depositus est de prioratu suo, et in exilium missus; Dionisius et H. et R. de Hingham de exilio nuper domum redierunt. Ego similiter incarceratus fui, et postea apud Acram missus, quia locuti sumus pro communi bono ecclesiæ nostræ contra voluntatem abbatis. Hæc est hora tenebrarum; hæc

Now I was then in my novitiate, and on a convenient occasion talked of these things to my master, who was teaching me the Rule, and in whose care I was placed; he was Master Samson, who was afterwards abbot. “What is this,” I said, “that I hear? And why do you keep silence when you see and hear such things you, who are a cloistered monk, and desire not offices, and fear God rather than man?” But he answered and said, “My son, the newly burnt child feareth the fire, and so is it with me and with many another. Prior Hugh has been lately deposed and sent into exile; Dennis, and Hugo, and Roger de Hingham have but lately returned to the house from exile. I was in like manner imprisoned,<sup>7</sup> and afterwards was sent to Acre,<sup>8</sup> for that we spoke to the common good of our church

<sup>23</sup> Arnold (*Mem.*, I., xlv., note 3; 212), gives reasons for supposing that this alludes to a second imprisonment of Samson, distinct from that which he suffered on his return from Rome (see text, p. 77). The passage would appear to refer to a recent event, which the imprisonment after his Roman journey was not.

est hora qua adulatorum dominantur et eis creditur: confortata est potentia eorum, nec possumus ad eam. Dissimulanda sunt ista pro tempore: videat Dominus et iudicet.”

*How the monastery was  
freed from legatine  
visitation.  
A.D. 1176.*

Cantuariensis vellet venire ad scrutinium faciendum in ecclesia nostra, auctoritate legatiae suae; et, accepto consilio, misit abbas Romam et impetravit exemptionem a potestate praedicti legati. Redeunte nuntio ad nos de Roma, non erat unde solvi poterat quod ipse promiserat domino papae et cardinalibus, nisi, ex circumstantiis, crux quae erat super magnum altare, et Mariola, et Johannes, quas imagines Stigandus archiepiscopus magno pondere auri et argenti ornaverant, et

Venit rumor ad abbatem H. quod R. archiepiscopus

ch against the will of the abbot. This is the hour of darkness; this is the hour in the which flatterers triumph and are believed; their might is increased,<sup>9</sup> nor can we prevail against them. These things must be endured for a while; the Lord see and judge!”<sup>10</sup>

There came a rumour to Abbot Hugh that Richard, Archbishop of Canterbury,<sup>11</sup> purposed to come and to hold a visitation of our church by virtue of his legatine authority. And having taken advice, the abbot sent to Rome and obtained exemption from the power of the said legate. But when the messenger returned to us from Rome, there was not found means of paying that which he had promised to the lord pope and to the cardinals, unless in the circumstances use might be made of the cross which was above the high altar, and of a Mary, and a John, which images Archbishop Stigand had adorned with much weight

<sup>24</sup>In all probability this means Castle Acre, where was a famous Cluniac priory, founded by William de Warenne, as a cell to St. Pancras, Lewes. Acre, however, might mean either Castle Acre or West Acre, at both of which places were priories.

<sup>25</sup>Ps. cxxxviii., 6 (Vulgate).

<sup>26</sup>Ex. v., 21.

<sup>27</sup>Richard of Dover, a Norman, prior of Dover, was archbishop from 1173 to 1184. He was elected at the end of the three years vacancy which followed on the murder of Becket (Gervase, I., 244). As to the question of the legatine authority over the abbey, Rokewode (p. 107–8) collects details. He points out that abbot Hugh appears to have obtained first a special exemption from Alexander III. from all authority other than that of the pope or a legate *a latere*; and afterwards a further exemption from the authority of archbishop Richard.

sancto Ædmondo dederat. Dixerunt etiam quidam ex nostris qui abbatem familiarius diligebant, quod ipsum feretrum sancti Ædmondi deberet excrustari propter talem libertatem, non advertentes magnum periculum posse nasci de tali libertate; quod, si forte fuerit aliquis abbas noster qui res ecclesiæ voluerit dilapidare et conventum suum male tractare, non erit persona cui conventus possit conqueri de injuriis abbatis, qui nec episcopum, nec archiepiscopum, nec legatum timebit, et impunitas ausum præbebit delinquendi.

*Concerning Master Dennis  
the cellarer.*

In diebus illis celerarius, sicut ceteri officiales, appruntavit denarios a Jurneto Judeo, inconsulto conventu, super cartam supradicto sigillo signatam. Cum autem excrevit<sup>†</sup> debitum usque ad sexaginta libras, summonitus est conventus ad solvendum debitum celerarii. Depositus est celerarius; licet allegaret gravamen suum, dicens quod susceperat tribus annis hospites omnes in domo hospitum ad præceptum abbatis sive abbas fuerit præsens sive

of gold and silver, and had given to the blessed Edmund. Then some among our number, who were very intimate with the abbot, said that the very shrine of Saint Edmund itself ought to be stripped in order to win so notable a privilege. But they considered not the great danger that might ensue from so great liberty. For if by chance we should have an abbot who wished to waste the goods of the church and evilly entreat his monastery, then there would be no one to whom the monastery might make complaint of the evil deeds of the abbot, who would fear neither bishop, nor archbishop, nor legate, and whose impunity would give him boldness in wrongdoing.

Now in those days the cellarer, like the rest of the officers of the monastery, borrowed money from Jurnet the Jew, without the knowledge of the monastery, on a bond sealed with the seal mentioned above. But when the debt had grown to three score pounds, the monastery was called upon to discharge the debt of the cellarer. He was deposed, though he defended himself by saying that for three years he, by command of the abbot, had received all guests in the guesthouse, whether the abbot were at home or no, whom the

---

<sup>†</sup> Excrevisset.

absens, quos debeat suscipere abbas secundum consuetudinem abbatiae.

Substitutus est magister Dionisius, qui per providentiam suam et cautelam minoravit debitum lx. librarum usque ad xxx. libras; de quo debito reddidimus xxx<sup>ia</sup> marcas, quas Benedictus de Blakeham dedit conventui pro maneriis Neutone et Wepstede tenendis: sed carta Judei usque hodie remansit apud Judeum, in qua continentur xxvi. libræ de katallo et de debito celerarii.

Tertio die postquam magister Dionisius fuit celerarius, ducti sunt tres milites cum armigeris suis usque in domum hospitum, ut ibi reficerentur, abbate domi existente et in thalamo suo residente. Quod cum audisset magnanimus ille Æacides, nolens pendere in bailiva sua,<sup>†</sup> sicut ceteri, surrexit et accepit claves cellarii, et ducens secum milites illos usque in aulam abbatis, veniensque ad abbatem, dixit: "Domine, bene novistis quod consuetudo abbatiae est, ut milites et laici recipiantur in curia vestra, si abbas domi fuerit; nec volo nec possum recipere hospites qui ad vos pertinent. Alioquin, accipite claves cellarii vestri, et alium constituite celerarium pro beneplacito

abbot ought to have received according to the constitution of the house.

In his stead Master Dennis was appointed, and by his economy and care reduced that debt of sixty pounds to thirty. Towards the extinction of that debt we paid the thirty marks which Benedict de Blakeham gave to the monastery for the manors of Newton and Wepstead. But the Jew's bond remains with the Jew to this day, and in it twenty-six pounds are written down as principal and for the debt of the cellarer.

On the third day after Master Dennis was made cellarer, three knights with their squires were brought into the guesthouse to be entertained there, the abbot being at home and sitting in his chamber. Now when that greathearted Achilles heard this, not wishing to fail in his office as did the others, he arose and took the keys of the cellar, and bearing the knights with him to the hall of the abbot, came himself into the abbot's presence. And he said to him, "Lord, you know well that the custom of the abbey is that knights and laymen be received in your hall, if the abbot be at home. I neither wish, nor am I able, to receive guests whose entertainment is your care. But if it be

<sup>†</sup>The owner of a bailiwick makes other people pay toll who enter it, but does not pay himself.

vestro.” Audiens hoc abbas, volens vel nolens recepit illos milites, et semper postea milites et laicos recepit secundum antiquam consuetudinem; et adhuc recipiuntur, abbate domi existente.

*How Abbot Hugh strove to win the favour of Master Samson.*

Volens aliquando abbas Hugo magistrum Sampsonem conciliare sibi in gratiam, subsacristam eum constituit; qui sæpius accusatus, sæpius de officio in officium est translatus; quandoque factus est magister hospitum, quandoque pitentarius, quandoque tertius prior, et iterum subsacrista; et multi ei adversabantur qui postea ei adulabantur. Ille vero aliter agens quam ceteri officiales, nunquam ad adulandum flecti potuit; unde dicebat abbas suis familiaribus, se nunquam vidisse talem hominem, quem non posset converti ad suam voluntatem, præter Sampsonem subsacristam.

otherwise, take the keys of your cellar, and appoint another cellarer at your pleasure.” When the abbot heard this, he received those knights perforce and ever after he received knights and laymen in accordance with ancient custom. And they are still so received when the abbot is at home.

At one time Abbot Hugh desired to win the favour of Master Samson, and made him his subsacristan. He was often accused, often transferred from one office to another. For he was made guest-master, and then pittance-master,<sup>12</sup> then third prior and finally again subsacristan. Then many strove against him who afterwards were his flatterers. But Samson did not bear himself as did the other officials, nor could he ever be brought to flatter. Wherefore the abbot said to his intimates that never had he seen a man whom he could not bend to his will, save Samson the subsacristan.

---

<sup>28</sup> The official of the monastery who had charge of the distribution of the pittances to the monks, that is, additional allowances of food or drink, the result of some benefaction.

*How Abbot Hugh came by  
his death.*

A.D. 1180 Sep. 9.

Venit abbat  
ti Hugoni in  
mentem, an-  
no vicesimo  
tertio abbatiae suae, adire sanctum  
Thomam orandi gratia; arreptoque in  
itinere, in crastino nativitatis sanctae  
Mariæ prope Roucestriam miserabi-  
liter cecidit, ita quod patella tibiae de  
proprio loco exivit et resedit in poplite.  
Occurrerunt medici, et eum multis  
modis cruciabant, sed non sanabant.  
Reportatus est ad nos in feretro equi-  
tario, et devote susceptus, sicut decuit.  
Quid multa? conputruit crux<sup>†</sup> ejus,  
et ascendit dolor usque ad cor, et ex  
dolore arripuit eum febris tertiana, et  
in quarta accessione expiravit; et ani-  
mam reddidit Deo in crastino sancti  
Bricii.

Antequam mortuus esset, distracta  
fuerunt omnia a servientibus suis,  
ita quod nichil omnino in domibus  
abbatis remanserat, nisi tripodes et  
mensae quæ asportari non poterant.  
Vix abbat remanserant coopertorium  
suum et duæ stragulæ quæ veteres  
erant et fractæ, quas aliquis apposue-  
rat qui integras abstulerat. Non erat  
aliquid ad pretium unius denarii quod  
possit distribui pauperibus pro anima

In the twenty-third year of his being  
abbot,<sup>13</sup> it came into the mind of Ab-  
bot Hugh to journey to the shrine  
of the blessed Thomas to pray there.  
And when he was almost at his  
journey's end, and was near unto Ro-  
chester on the morrow of the Nativity  
of the Blessed Mary, he most unhap-  
pily fell, so that his knee-pan was put  
out and lodged in the ham of his leg.  
Physicians hastened to him, and put  
him to pain in many ways, but they  
healed him not. So he was borne back  
to us in a horse-litter, and received  
with great concern, as was fitting. To  
put it shortly, his leg mortified and  
the sickness spread to his heart. Pain  
brought on a tertian fever, and in the  
fourth fit he died, rendering his soul  
to God on the morrow of Saint Brice's  
day.

Ere he was dead, all things were th-  
rown into disorder by his servants,  
so that in the abbot's houses there  
was nothing at all left, except stools  
and tables which could not be car-  
ried away. There hardly remained to  
the abbot a coverlet and quilts which  
were old and torn, and which someo-  
ne who had taken away those which  
were sound, had left in their place.  
There was not even some thing of a

<sup>29</sup>There is an account of this event in the *Chronica Buriensis* (Mem. III., 6).

<sup>†</sup>lege *crus*, Roke.

ejus. Sacrista dicit non pertinere ad eum ut hoc faceret, dicens se expensas abbati et familiæ suæ invenisse per mensem integrum; quia nec firmarii, qui villas tenebant, volebant aliquid dare ante tempus constitutum, nec creditores volebant aliquid commodare, videntes eum infirmum usque ad mortem. Quinquaginta tamen solidos invenit firmarius de Palegrava ad distribuendum pauperibus; hac ratione, quia firmam de Palegrava intravit illa die. Sed illi quinquaginta solidi erant postea redditus iterum bailivis regis, firmam integram exigentibus ad opus regis.

penny's value which might be given to the poor for the good of his soul. The sacristan said that it was not his affair to do this, declaring that he had found the money for the expenses of the abbot and his household for a full month, since neither would those who farmed the townships pay anything before the appointed time, nor would the creditors give any grace, as they saw the abbot to be sick unto death. However the tenant of Palegrave found fifty shillings for distribution to the poor, because he entered upon his tenancy of Palegrave on that day. But those fifty shillings were afterwards again paid to the king's officers, who exacted the full rent for the use of the king.

*How the death of Abbot Hugh was told to the king, and of those things which the servants of the king did.*

Sepulto abbate Hugone, decretum est in capitulo, ut aliquis nunciaret Ranulfo de Glanvill,<sup>†</sup> justiciario Angliæ, mortem abbatis. Magister Sampson et Magister R. Rufus, monachi nostri, cito transfretaverunt<sup>‡</sup> nunciantes hoc idem domino re-

Sepulto abbate Hugone, decretum est in capitulo, ut ali-

When Abbot Hugh had been laid to rest, it was decreed in the chapter that one should tell the death of the abbot to Ranulf de Glanvill,<sup>14</sup> Justiciar of England. Master Samson and Master Robert Ruffus hastened across the sea, bearing this same news to the lord King, and obtained from him letters directing that the possessions

<sup>†</sup> Ranulf de Glanville, author of the famous treatise *De legibus et consuetudinibus regni Angliæ*, which explains the forms of procedure observed in the *curia regis*, took the cross in the last year of Henry II.'s reign, and died at the siege of Acre in 1190.

<sup>‡</sup> "King Henry II. kept Christmas at Le Mans." (Roke.)

<sup>30</sup> Justiciar from 1180 to 1189. He was deprived at the accession of Richard, and died on the crusade at the siege of Acre (1190), whither he had preceded Richard I. The news of the vacancy was sent to the justiciar, owing to the absence of Henry II. in Maine.



gi, et impetraverunt literas, ut res et redditus conventus, qui separati sunt a rebus et redditibus abbatis, essent integræ in manu prioris et conventus, et reliqua pars abbatiae esset in manu regis. Data est custodia abbatiae Roberto de Cokefeld, et R. de Flamville senescallo, qui statim omnes famulos abbatis et parentes ejus, quibus abbas aliquid donaverat, postquam infirmus fuerat, vel qui aliquid de rebus abbatis abstulerant, posuerunt per vadium et plegios, et etiam capellanum abbatis, monachum nostrum, quem prior plegiavit; et intrantes vestiarium nostrum omnia ornamenta ecclesiae in chirographo subscribi fecerunt.<sup>†</sup>

*How the prior ruled the monastery, while there was no abott.*

Vacante abbacia, prior super omnia studuit ad pacem conservandam in conventu, et ad honorem ecclesiae conservandum in hospitibus suscipiendis, neminem volens

and revenues of the monastery, which were distinct from those of the abbot, should remain entirely in the hands of the prior and of the monastery, and that the rest of the abbey's property should be in the hands of the King. The wardship of the abbey<sup>15</sup> was given to Robert de Cokefield and to Robert de Flamvill the seneschal, who at once placed under surety and pledges those of the servants and relatives of the abbot to whom the abbot had given anything after he fell ill, or who had taken anything from the property of the abbot. And they also treated the chaplain of the abbot in the same way, for whom the prior became surety. And entering our vestry, they made a double inventory of all the ornaments of the church.

There being no abbot, the prior<sup>16</sup> took care, above all things, to preserve peace in the monastery and to maintain the repute of the house in the matter of receiving guests. He wished to disturb no one, to provoke no one to anger, that he might keep all men and all

<sup>31</sup> Rokewode (pp. 109–11) gives the accounts of the wardship from the Pipe Roll of Norfolk and Suffolk.

<sup>†</sup> The accounts of the wardens during the vacancy of the abbotship are still extant among the Pipe Rolls, and Mr. Rokewode has deduced from them that “the rental of the abbot of St. Edmund’s for year 1181, that is to say, from Mich. 1180 to Mich. 1181, according to the ancient assise, and exclusive of the sustenance of the monks, who had their own portion of lands, was 326l. 12s. 4d.”

<sup>32</sup> The prior was Robert, who was appointed on the deposition of prior Hugh (1173). He held office until his death, which took place about 1200 (see text, p. 194).

turbare, neminem ad iracundiam provocare, ut omnes et omnia in pace posset conservare; dissimulans tamen quædam corrigenda de obedientiariis nostris, et maxime de sacrista, tanquam non curaret quid ipse ageret de sacristia, qui, tempore quo abbatia vacavit, nec debitum aliquod adquietavit, nec aliquid ædificavit; sed oblationes et obventiones stulte distrahebantur. Unde prior, qui caput conventus erat, pluribus videbatur vituperandus, et remissus dicebatur. Et hoc memorabant fratres nostri inter se, quando perventum fuit ad faciendam electionem abbatis.

*How the cellarer and the sacristan behaved during the vacancy.*

ditionis essent, suscepit ad expensas conventus. Willelmus sacrista ex sua parte dabat et expendebat; homo benignus, dans danda et non danda, oculos omnium excæcans muneribus.

*Concerning the conduct of Samson the subsacristan during the vacancy.*

Samson subsacrista, magister super operarios, nichil fractum, nichil rimatum, nichil fissum, nichil inemendatum reliquit pro posse suo; unde conventum et

things in quiet. But he overlooked some acts of our officials which should have been corrected; and especially in the case of the sacristan, as if he cared not how that office was performed. Now the sacristan, while the abbey was vacant, neither paid any debt nor erected any building, but the offerings and accidental receipts were foolishly wasted. Wherefore the prior, who was head of the monastery, seemed to many to be blameworthy, and was called slack. And our brothers reminded each other of this when the time came for electing an abbot.

Our cellarer entertained all guests of whatever condition, at the expense of the monastery. William the sacristan, for his part gave and spent. Kind man! he spent indiscriminately, and blinded the eyes of all with gifts.<sup>17</sup>

Samson the subsacristan, who was master over the workmen, did his utmost that nothing which was broken, and no chink or crack, should remain unrepaired. In this way he won the favour of the monastery, and more especially of the cloistered monks. At that time,

<sup>33</sup> Deut. xvi., 19.

maxime claustrales sibi conciliavit in gratiam. In diebus illis chorus noster fuit erectus, Samsone procurante, historias picturæ ordinante, et versus elegiacos dictante. Attractum fecit magnum de lapidibus et sabulo ad magnam turrin ecclesiæ construendam. Et interrogatus unde denarios haberet ad hoc faciendum, respondit quosdam burgenses dedisse ei occulte pecuniam ad turrin ædificandam et perficiendam. Dicebant tamen quidam fratres nostri, quod Warinus monachus noster, custos feretri, et Samson subsacrista communi consilio surripuerunt, quasi furtive, portionem aliquam de oblationibus feretri, ut eam in usus necessarios ecclesiæ, et nominatim ad ædificationem turris, expenderent; hac ratione ducti, quia videbant quod oblationes in usus extraordinarios expendebantur ab aliis, qui, ut verius dicam, eas furabantur. Et ut tam felicitis furti sui suspicionem tollerent prænominati duo viri, truncum quandam fecerunt, concavum, et perforatum in medio vel in summo, et obseratum sera ferrea; et erigi fecerunt in magna ecclesia, juxta ostium extra chorum in communi transitu vulgi, ut ibi ponerent homines elemosinam suam ad ædificationem turris.

and under Samson's direction, was our choir built. He determined the subjects, the paintings, and composed elegiac verses for them. He made a great store of stone and sand for building the great tower of the church.<sup>18</sup> And when he was asked where he found the money for this work, he answered that some of the townsfolk had given him money secretly for the building and completing of the tower. But some of our brothers said that Warin our monk and custodian of the shrine, had agreed to take, or as it were to steal, some part of the offerings of the shrine, and to spend it for the necessary purposes of the church, especially for the building of the tower. They were led to this opinion by the fact that they saw the strange uses to which these offerings were put by others, who, to speak the truth, did steal them. And in order to remove from themselves the suspicion of so happy a theft, Samson and Warin made a hollow chest, in the middle of the cover of which there was a hole, and which was secured with an iron bar. This chest they caused to be placed in the great church near the door outside the choir, where all the people passed by, that men might

<sup>34</sup>The tower in the centre of the west front. It was begun probably either by abbot Baldwin (1065–97), or by abbot Robert I. (1100–02). It was blown down in 1210, before the death of Samson (*Ann. St. Edmund, Mem. II.*, 18).

*How the enemies of  
Samson prevailed against  
him, but only for a time.*

Willelmus vero sacrista socium suum Samsonem suspectum habuit, et multi alii qui partem ejusdem Willelmi fovebant, tam Christiani quam Judæi. Judei, inquam, quibus sacrista pater et patronus dicebatur; de cujus protectione gaudebant, et liberum ingressum et egressum habebant, et passim ibant per monasterium, vagantes per altaria et circa feretrum, dum missarum celebrarentur sollemnia: et denarii eorum in thesauro nostro sub custodia sacristæ reponebantur, et, quod absurdius est, uxores eorum cum parvis suis in pitancia nostra tempore werræ hospitabantur.

Accepto itaque consilio qualiter irruerent in Samsonem inimici vel adversarii ejus, convenerunt Robertum de Cokefeld et socium ejus, qui custodes erant abbatiæ, et induxerunt eos ad hoc, quod illi prohibuerant ex parte regis, ne aliquis aliquod opus vel aliquod ædificium faceret, quamdiu abbatia vacaret; sed potius denarii ex oblationibus colligerentur et conservarentur ad faciendam solutionem alicujus debiti.

place therein gifts for the building of the tower.

But William the sacristan mistrusted his colleague Samson, as did many others, both Christians and Jews, who favoured the opinion of the same William. The Jews, I say, to whom the sacristan was said to be a father and a patron. And they did rejoice in his protection, having freedom to enter and to leave the monastery, and wandering all over it. For they walked by the altars and round the shrine while high mass was being celebrated; their money was lodged in our treasury under the care of the sacristan; and, a thing still more foolish, their wives and little ones were entertained in our pittancy during time of war.

Therefore, having taken counsel together how they might attack Samson, his enemies and adversaries went to Robert de Cokefield and to his colleague, who had the wardship of the abbey, and persuaded them to forbid in the name of the king that any one should do any work or build anything while the abbacy was vacant, but rather should the money from he offerings be collected and saved for the payment of some part of the

Et sic illusus est Samson, et recessit ab eo fortitudo ejus; nec de cætero aliquid operari potuit, sicut voluit. Potuerunt quidem adversarii ejus rem differre, sed non auferre; quia resumptis viribus suis, et subversis duobus columnis, id est, remotis duobus custodibus abbatiæ quibus aliorum malitia innitebatur, dedit ei Dominus, processu temporis, potestatem perficiendi votum suum ut prædictam turrem ædificaret, et pro desiderio suo consummaret. Et factum est ac si ei divinitus diceretur: “Euge, serve bone et fidelis, quia super pauca fuisti fidelis, super multa, &c.”

*How the monks disputed among themselves which of them should be abbot.*

Vacante abbatiâ, sæpe, sicut decuit, rogavimus Dominum et sanctum martyrem Ædmondum, ut nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ congruum darent pastorem, singulis ebdomadibus ter cantantes vii. psalmos pœnitentiales prostrati in choro, post exitum in capitulo: et erant aliqui, quibus si constaret quis futurus

debt. Thus was Samson mocked, and his strength went from him,<sup>19</sup> and he could not from that time do any work as he desired. But though his enemies could delay his work, they could not finally interrupt it. For he regained his strength and overthrew the two middle pillars,<sup>20</sup> that is, he removed the two wardens in whom the malice of the others trusted. And afterwards in course of time, the Lord gave him power to perform his vow that he would build the said tower, and to finish it according to his wish. And so it came to pass as though a voice from Heaven had said to him, “Well done, thou good and faithful servant;<sup>21</sup> thou hast been faithful over a few things; I will make thee ruler over many things.”

The abbacy being vacant, we often, as was right, made supplication unto the Lord and to the blessed martyr Edmund that they would give us and our church a fit pastor. Three times in each week, after leaving the chapter, did we prostrate ourselves in the choir and sing seven penitential psalms. And there were some who would not have been so earnest in their prayers if they had known who was to become

<sup>35</sup>Jud. xvi., 17; xvi., 19.

<sup>36</sup>Jud. xvi., 29.

<sup>37</sup>Matt. xxv., 21.

esset abbas, non ita devote orassent. De eligendo abbate, si rex nobis liberam concederet electionem, diversi diversis modis loquebantur, quidam publice, quidam occulte; et “quot homines tot sententiæ.”<sup>†</sup>

Dixit quidam de quodam: “Ille, ille frater, bonus monachus est, probabilis persona; multum scit de ordine et consuetudinibus ecclesiæ: licet non sit tam perfectus philosophus sicut quidam alii, bene potest esse abbas. Abbas Ordingus<sup>‡</sup> homo illiteratus fuit, et tamen fuit bonus abbas et sapienter domum istam rexit: legitur etiam in fabulis, melius fuit ranis eligere truncum in regem, super quem confidere possent, quam serpentem, qui venenose sibilaret, et post sibilum subjectas devoraret.” Respondit alter: “Quomodo potest hoc fieri? quomodo potest facere sermonem in capitulo, vel ad populum diebus festivis, homo qui literas non novit? quomodo habebit scientiam ligandi et solvendi, qui scripturas non intelligit? cum sit

abbot. As to the choice of an abbot, if the king should grant us free election, there was much difference of opinion, some of it openly expressed, some of it privately; and every man had his own ideas.

One said of a certain brother, “He, that brother, is a good monk, a likely person. He knows much of the rule and of the customs of the church. It is true that he is not so profoundly wise as are some others, but he is quite capable of being abbot. Abbot Ording<sup>22</sup> was illiterate, and yet he was a good abbot and ruled this house wisely; and one reads in the fable that the frogs did better to elect a log to be their king than a serpent, who hissed venomously, and when he had hissed, devoured his subjects.” Another answered, “How could this thing be? How could one who does not know letters preach in the chapter, or to the people on feast days? How could one who does not know the scriptures have the knowledge of binding and loosing?”<sup>23</sup> For the ru-

<sup>†</sup> Ter. Phorm. 2, 3, 14.

<sup>‡</sup> This was the abbot to whom Geoffrey de Fontibus addressed his work “De Infantia S. Eadm.”; see above, p. 93.

<sup>38</sup> Ording de Stowe was elected in 1138, when abbot Anselm was elected to the bishopric of London. Anselm was driven from his see soon afterwards on the ground that the election had taken place without the assent of the dean of London, and resumed his abbacy. On his death in 1148, Ording was again elected, and held the abbacy to his death in 1156. (*Chron. Bur., Mem. III.*, 5-6.)

<sup>39</sup> Cp. Matt. xvi., 19.

ars artium, scientia scientiarum, regimen animarum. Absit ut statua muta erigatur in ecclesia sancti Ædmundi, ubi multi literati viri et industrii esse dinoscuntur.”

Item dixit alius de alio: “Ille frater vir literatus est, eloquens et providus; rigidus in ordine; multum dilexit conventum, et multa mala pertulit pro bonis ecclesiæ: dignus est ut fiat abbas.” Respondit alter: “A bonis clericis libera nos, Domine: ut a baratoribus de Norfolchia nos conservare digneris, te rogamus audi nos.”<sup>†</sup>

Item dixit quidam de quodam: “Ille frater bonus husebondus est: quod probatur ex warda sua, et ex obedientiis quas bene servavit, et ædificiis et emendationibus quas fecit. Multum potest laborare et domum defendere, et est aliquantulum clericus, quamvis nimix literæ non faciant eum insanire: ille dignus est abbacia.” Respondit alter: “Nolit Deus ut homo, qui non potest legere, nec cantare, nec divina officia celebrare, homo improbus et injustus, et excoriator pauperum

le of souls is the art of arts, the highest form of knowledge. God forbid that a dumb idol be set up in the church of Saint Edmund, where many men are to be found who are learned and industrious.”

Again, one said of another, “That brother is a literate man, eloquent and prudent, and strict in his observance of the rule. He loves the monastery greatly, and has suffered many ills for the good of the church. He is worthy to be made abbot.” Another answered, “From good clerks deliver us, oh Lord! That it may please Thee to preserve us from the cheats of Norfolk;<sup>24</sup> we beseech Thee to hear us!”

And again, one said of one, “That brother is a good husbandman; this is proved by the state of his office, and from the posts in which he has served well, and from the buildings and repairs which he has effected. He is well able to work and to defend the house, and he is something of a scholar, though too much learning has not made him mad.<sup>25</sup> He is worthy of the abbacy.” Another answered, “God forbid that a man who can neither read nor sing, nor celebrate the holy

<sup>40</sup> The allusion is to Samson, who was a native of Norfolk.

<sup>†</sup> The words of supplication are taken from the Litany of the Saints.

<sup>41</sup> Cp. Acts xxvi., 24.

hominum, fiat abbas.”

Item dixit aliquis de aliquo: “Ille frater homo benignus est, affabilis et amabilis, pacificus et compositus, largus et liberalis, vir literatus et eloquens, et satis idonea persona in vultu et in gestu, et a multis dilectus intus et extra; et talis homo ad magnum honorem ecclesiæ posset fieri abbas, si Deus vellet.” Respondit alter: “Non honor esset sed onus de homine qui nimis delicatus est in cibo et potu; qui virtutem reputat multum dormire; qui multum scit expendere et parum adquirere; qui stertit quando ceteri vigilant; qui semper vult esse in abundantia, nec curat de debitis quæ crescunt de die in diem, nec de expensis unde adquietari possint; solitudinem et laborem odio habens, nihil curans, dummodo unus dies vadat et alter veniat; homo adulatores et mendaces diligens et fovens; homo alius in verbo in alius in opere. A tali prælato defendat nos Dominus.”

Item dixit quidam de socio suo: “Ille vir fere sapientior est omnibus nobis, et in sæcularibus et in ecclesiasticis; vir magni consilii, rigidus in ordine, li-

office, a man who is dishonest and unjust, and who evil intreats the poor men, should be made abbot.”

Again, one said of another, “That brother is a kindly man, friendly and amiable, peaceful and calm, generous and liberal, a learned and eloquent man, and proper enough in face and gait. He is beloved of many within and without the walls, and such an one might become abbot to the great honour of the church, if God wills.” Another answered, “It is no credit, but rather a disgrace, in a man to be too particular as to what he eats and drinks, to think it a virtue to sleep much, to know well how to spend and to know little how to gain, to snore while others keep vigil, to wish ever to have abundance, and not to trouble when debts daily increase, or when money spent brings no return; to be one who hates anxiety and toil, caring nothing while one day passes and another dawns; to be one who loves and cherishes flatterers and liars; to be one man in word and another in deed. From such a prelate the Lord defend us.”

And again, one said of his friend, “That man is almost wiser than all of us, and that both in secular and in ecclesiastical matters. He is a man skilled in



teratus et eloquens et personalis statuerat: talis prælatus decet ecclesiam nostram.” Respondit alter: “Verum est, si esset rata et probata opinio. Fama ejus laborat, quæ forte mentitur, forte non mentitur; et licet ille homo sapiens sit, humilis in capitulo, devotus in psalmis, rigidus in claustris, dum claustrale<sup>†</sup> est, ex consuetudine tamen habet: quod si preest in obedientia aliqua, nimis indignans est, monachos parvipendens, sæculares homines familiarius diligens, et, si iratus fuerit, vix aliquid verbum ultro alicui fratri respondere, nec etiam interroganti.”

Audivi scilicet alium fratrem reprobatum a quibusdam, quia impeditioris linguæ fuerat; de quo dicebatur quod habebat pastum vel draschium in ore suo, cum loqui deberet. Et ego quidem, tunc teraporis juvenis, sapiebam ut juvenis, loquebar ut juvenis, et dixi quod non consentirem alicui ut fieret abbas, nisi sciret aliquid de dialectica, et sciret discernere verum a falso. Item dixit quidam, qui sibi videbatur sapiens: “Stultum et idiotam pastorem tribuat nobis omnipotens Domi-

counsel, strict in the rule, learned and eloquent, and noble in stature; such a prelate would become our church.” Another answered, “That would be true if he were a man of good and approved repute. But his character has been questioned, perhaps falsely, perhaps rightly. And though the man is wise, humble in the chapter, devoted to the singing of psalms, strict in his conduct in the cloister while he is a cloistered monk, this is only from force of habit. For if he have authority in any office, he is too scornful, holding monks of no account, and being on familiar terms with secular men, and if he be angry, he will scarce say a word willingly to any brother, even in answer to a question.”

I heard in truth another brother abused by some because he had an impediment in his speech, and it was said of him that he had pastry or draff in his mouth when he should have spoken. And I myself, as I was then young, understood as a child,<sup>26</sup> spake as a child; and I said that I would not consent that any one should be made abbot unless he knew something of dialectic, and knew how to distinguish the true from the false. One, moreover, who was wise in his own eyes, said, “May

<sup>†</sup> Claustralis? (Roke.)

<sup>42</sup> I. Cor. xiii., 11.

nus, ut necesse sit ei se adjuvare de nobis." Audivi scilicet quendam virum, industrium, et literatum, et nobilitate generis splendidum, reprobatum esse a quibusdam prioribus nostris hac causa, quia novicius erat. Novicii dicebant de prioribus suis, quod senes valitudinarii erant et ad abbatiam regendam minus idonei. Et ita multi multa loquebantur, et unusquisque abundabat in suo sensu.

*How Samson the subsacristan bore himself while others discussed the vacancy.*

his conventiculis tempore minutio-  
nis (quo tempore claustrales solent  
alternatim secreta cordis revelare, et  
adinvicem conferre); vidi eum assi-  
dentem et subridentem et tacentem,  
et singulorum verba notantem, et ali-  
quam ex præscriptis sentiis in fine  
xx. annorum memorantem.

*How the author spoke his mind too hastily.*

Vidi Samso-  
nem subsacri-  
stam assiden-  
tem quidem

Quo audiente,  
solebam re-  
spondere ita

Almighty God give us a foolish and stupid pastor, that he may be driven to use our help." And I heard, forsooth, that one man who was industrious, learned, and pre-eminent for his high birth, was abused by some of the older men because he was a novice. The novices said of their elders that they were invalid old men, and little capable of ruling an abbey. And so many men said many things, and every man was fully persuaded in his own mind.<sup>27</sup>

Then I saw Samson the subsacristan sitting by, for the time of this little council was a season of blood-letting,<sup>28</sup> when the cloistered monks were wont to reveal the secrets of their hearts in turn, and to discuss matters one with another. I saw him sitting by and laughing to himself, while he kept silence and marked that which each one said, so that at the end of twenty years lie was able to remember some part of the various opinions which I have set forth above.

And when I heard these things, I was wont to answer to those who so judged, and to say that if we had to wait

<sup>43</sup> Rom. xiv., 5.

<sup>44</sup> The monks practised blood-letting five times a year,—in September, before Advent and Lent, and after Easter and Pentecost, under the rule of St. Victor. An account of the manner in which it was practised at St. Edmund's is to be found in the *Liber Albus*. (Rokewode, p. 113, *Mem.*, I., 221, note.)

judicantibus, dicens, quod, si debemus expectare ad eligendum abbatem donec inveniamus aliquem qui sine omni reprehensione et macula fuerit, nunquam talem inveniemus, quia nemo sine crimine vivit, et nichil omni parte beatum.<sup>†</sup> Quodam tempore non potui cohibere spiritum meum quin præcipitarem sententiam meam, putans me loqui fidis auribus, et dixi quendam indignum abbatia, qui me multum dilexerat prius, et multa bona contulerat; et alium dignum duxi, et nominavi aliquem, quem minus diligebam. Loquebar secundum conscientiam meam, considerans potius communem utilitatem ecclesiæ quam meam promotionem; et verum dixi; quod sequentia probaverunt. Et ecce unus ex filiis Belial dictum meum revelavit benefactori meo et amico; ob quam causam, usque ad hodiernum diem nunquam postea nec prece nec pretio potui recuperare gratiam ejus ad plenum. Quod dixi, dixi;

Et semel emissum volat irrevocabile verbum.<sup>‡</sup>

Unum restat; quod caveam mihi de cætero, et, si tamdiu vixero ut videam abbatiam vacare, videbo quid, cui, et quando loquar de tali materia, ne vel

to choose an abbot until we found one without spot or flaw, we should never find such an one, since there is none living without fault, and nothing altogether good. At one time I could not refrain my spirit, but put forward my own opinion only too readily, thinking that I was speaking to faithful ears. And I said that one was not worthy of the abbacy who had before loved me dearly and done much good to me. And I put forward another as worthy and named him, a man whom I loved but little. I spoke according to my conscience, thinking rather of the general wellbeing of the church than of my own promotion; and I spoke the truth, as subsequent events proved. And behold, one of the sons of Belial revealed my saying to my benefactor and friend, wherefore to this very day I have never been able, by prayer or present, to regain his full favour. What I have said, I have said. And the word once uttered flies beyond recall.

One thing remains for me,—that I take care henceforth; and if I should live long enough to see the abbey once more vacant, I will see what, and to

<sup>†</sup> Hor. Od. ii. 16.

<sup>‡</sup> Hor. Ep. i. 18, 71.

Deum offendam mentiendo, vel hominem importune loquendo. Ad consilium meum tum erit, si duravero, ut aliquem eligamus non multum bonum monachum, non multum sapientem clericum, nec nimis idiotam, nec nimis dissolutum; ne, si nimis sapiat, de se et de proprio sensu nimis confidat, et alios vilipendat; vel si nimis brutescat, in opprobrium aliis fiat. Scio quis dixerit: “medio tutissimus ibis;”<sup>†</sup> et illud, “medium tenuere beati.” Vel forte, sanius consilium erit omnino tacere, ut dicam in corde meo: “Qui potest capere, capiat.”

*How the archbishop of  
Norway dwelt in the  
abbot's lodgings while the  
abbacy was vacant.*

A.D. 1181.

rweie<sup>‡</sup> apud nos in domibus abbatis, habens per præceptum regis singulis

whom, and when I speak of so weighty a matter, that I offend not God by lying or man by hasty talk. Then it will be my care, if I live, that we elect one who is neither a very good monk, nor a very wise clerk, nor too foolish, nor too dissolute; lest, if he know too much, he have also too much confidence in himself and in his own opinion, and hold others of small account; or if he be too foolish, he be abused by others. I know that one has said, “You will walk most safely in the middle,” and that “Blessed are those who steer a middle course.” And perchance it is wiser counsel to be silent altogether, so that I say in my heart, “He that is able to receive it, let him receive it.”<sup>29</sup>

Vacante abbacia perhendi-  
navit Augustinus archie-  
piscopus No-

While the abbacy was vacant, Augustine, Archbishop of Norway,<sup>30</sup> dwelt with us in the abbot's lodgings, and by command of the king received ten shillings every day from the revenues of the abbot. He assisted us greatly to gain freedom of election, bearing wit-

<sup>†</sup> Ov. Met. ii. 137.

<sup>45</sup> Matt. xix., 12.

<sup>‡</sup> In 1180, Eystein (Augustinus), archbishop of Trondheim, refusing to crown Sverrir, a successful rebel, who had defeated Magnus, king of Norway, was driven into exile, and came to England (William de Newburgh, iii. 6). “It appears from the accounts of the wardens of the abbey . . . that the archbishop remained in the monastery from the vigil of St. Lawrence, 9 Aug. 1181, until about the time of the election of abbot Samson, in February following, and that the corrodies allowed him amounted altogether to 94l. 10s.” (Roke.) This Eystein wrote a remarkable biography of St. Olaf, recently edited from the unique MS. by my friend, the late Rev. F. Metcalfe, who was so long and so favourably known as a successful student of Scandinavian antiquity.

diebus x. solidos de denariis abbatiae; qui multum valuit nobis ad habendam liberam electionem nostram, testimonium perhibens de bono,<sup>†</sup> et publice protestans coram rege quod viderat et audierat.

*Of the martyrdom of Saint Robert.*

A.D. 1181, June 10.

et in ecclesia nostra sepultus, et fiebant prodigia et signa multa in plebe, sicut alibi scripsimus.

*How thirteen men were chosen, by command of the king, to elect an abbot in the presence of the king.*

A.D. 1182, February.

præcepit dominus rex per literas suas, ut prior noster et duodecim de conventu, in quorum ore universitatis concordaret sententia, apparerent die statuto coram eo ad eligendum abbatem.

Eodem tempore fuit sanctus puer Robertas martirizatus,

Post mortem Hugonis abbatibus, peracto anno cum tribus mensibus,

ness of the good, and publicly declaring in the presence of the king that which he had seen and heard.

In those days was the holy child Robert martyred,<sup>31</sup> and was buried in our church. And many signs and wonders<sup>32</sup> were wrought among the people, as we have related in another place.

Now when a year and three months had passed since the death of Abbot Hugh, the lord king commanded by his letters that our prior and twelve members of the monastery, by whose lips the opinion of the whole community might be expressed unanimously, should appear before him on a stated day to elect an abbot.

<sup>†</sup> Joh. xviii. 23.

<sup>46</sup> Eystein, archbishop of Trondheim, was banished from Norway for political reasons and came to England in 1180. Rokewode (p. 113) collects from the accounts of the wardship of the abbey that he received £94 10s.

<sup>47</sup> Bale states that there was an account of the martyrdom of this child by the Jews, written by Jocelin. The work, however, is not known to exist at the present day. Gervase (I., 296) relates the event in somewhat similar terms to those in the text: "In this year, at Eastertide, a certain boy, Robert by name, was martyred by the Jews at St. Edmund's, and he was afterwards honourably buried in the church of St. Edmund, and became famous, as common report goes, for many miracles." There is an account also in *Chron. Bur.* (*Mem.* III., 6) where the date (June 10th) is given.

<sup>48</sup> Acts v., 12.

In crastino post susceptionem litterarum, convenimus in capitulo de tanto tractaturi negotio. In primis lectæ sunt literæ domini regis in conventu; postea rogavimus et oneravimus priorem in periculo animæ suæ, ut xii. secundum conscientiam suam nominaret secum ducendos, de quorum vita et moribus constaret eos a recto nolle deviare.

Qui petitis annuens, dictante Spiritu Sancto, sex ex una parte chori et sex ex altera nominavit, et sine contradictione nobis satisfecit. A dextro choro fuerunt Galfridus de Fordham, Benedictus, magister Dionisius, magister Samson subsacrista, Hugo tertius prior, et magister Hermerus, tunc temporis novicius: a sinistro, Willelmus sacrista, Andreas, Petrus de Broc, Rogerus cellerarius, magister Ambrosius, magister Walterus medicus.

Unus autem dixit: “Quid fiet si isti tredecim non possunt coram rege concordare in abbate eligendo?” Respondit quidam: “Quia hoc erit nobis et ecclesiæ nostræ in opprobrium sempiter-

On the morrow after receiving the letters, we gathered in the chapter for the purpose of performing so important a task. And first the letters of the lord king were read in the assembly of the monastery; then we offered prayers, and bound the prior on the peril of his soul that he should conscientiously nominate to go with him twelve men, from whose life and manners he knew well that they would not stray from the right path.

Then he, by inspiration of the Holy Spirit, gave ear to these prayers, and named six from one side of the choir and six from the other, and he gave us satisfaction without any dispute arising. From the righthand side of the choir he named Geoffrey de Fordham, Benedict, Master Dennis, Master Samson the subsacristan, Hugh the third prior, and Master Hermer, who was then a novice. From the left side he named William the sacristan, Andrew, Peter de Broc, Roger the cellarer, Master Ambrose, and Master Walter the physician.

But one said, “What shall be done if these thirteen cannot agree on the choice of an abbot in the presence of the king?” One answered, “That would be a perpetual shame<sup>33</sup> to us

---

<sup>49</sup> Jer. xxiii., 40.

num." Voluerunt ideo plures ut electio fieret domi antequam cæteri recederent, ut per hanc providentiam non fieret dissensio coram rege; sed illud nobis videbatur stultum et dissonum facere sine regis assensu, quia nondum constabat nobis posse impetrare a domino rege ut liberam electionem haberemus.

*How Samson suggested  
that the monastery should  
appoint men to make a  
secret choice of an abbot,  
and how this was done.*

hinc et inde periculum evitetur. Eligantur quatuor confessores de conventu, et duo ex senioribus prioribus de conventu, bonæ opinionis, qui, visis sacrosanctis, tactis evangeliis, inter se eligant tres viros de conventu, ad hoc magis idoneos juxta regulam sancti Benedicti, et eorum nomina in scriptum redigant, et scriptum sub sigillo includant, et sic inclusum committatur nobis ituris ad curiam; et cum venerimus coram rege, et constiterit nobis de libera electione habenda, tunc demum frangatur sigillum, et sic certi erimus qui tres nominandi erunt coram rege. Et constiterit nobis, si

and our church." For that cause many wished that the election might be made at home before the departure of the rest, so that by this means there might be no dissension in the presence of the king. But it seemed to us foolish and unbecoming to do this without the royal assent, since as yet we had no certain knowledge that we should obtain freedom of election from the lord king.

Then Samson the subsacristan, speaking by the Spirit of God,<sup>34</sup> said, "Let a middle course be taken, that so danger may be avoided on either side. Let four confessors be chosen from the monastery, and two of the older priors, men of repute, and let them look upon and take in their hands the most holy gospels, and choose among themselves three members of the monastery, men especially fitted according to the rule of the holy Benedict for this purpose. Then let them write down the names and seal that which is written, and let them give the writing thus secured to us on the eve of our departure for the court. And when we are come to the court, if it shall be determined that we have free election, then and not till then let the seal be broken, and so shall we know certainly the three

---

<sup>50</sup>I. Cor. xii., 3.

dominus rex noluerit concedere nobis unum de nostris, reportetur sigillum integrum et sex juratoribus tradatur, ita quod secretum illorum imperpetuum celetur in periculum animarum suarum.”

who must be named in the presence of the king. Let it also be resolved that if the lord king will not grant us one of our own number, then the writing shall be brought back, with the seal unbroken, and delivered to the six sworn men, that so their secret may remain a secret for ever on the peril of their souls.”

Huic consilio omnes adquevimus, et nominati sunt quatuor confessores; scilicet Eustachius, Gilbertus de Alueth, Hugo tertius prior, Antonius, et alii duo senes, Turstanus et Rualdus. Quo facto, exivimus cantantes, “Verba mea,” et remanserunt prædicti sex habentes regulam sancti Benedicti præ manibus, et negotium sicut præfinitum fuerat impleverunt.

In this council we all agreed, and the four confessors were nominated, to wit, Eustace, Gilbert de Alueth, Hugh the third prior, and Anthony, with two other old men, Thurstan and Rualdus. And when this had been done, we went out chanting the “Verba mea,”<sup>55</sup> while the said six remained behind with the rule of St. Benedict in their hands, and completed the matter as had been ordained.

Dum illi sex hoc tractabant, nos de diversis eligendis diversa putabamus, habentes tamen omnes quasi pro certo Samsonem esse unum ex tribus, attendentes labores ejus et pericula mortis versus Romam pro bonis ecclesiæ nostræ, et qualiter tractus et compeditus et incarceratus erat ab H. abbate, loquens pro communi utilitate; qui nec sic flecti potuit ad adulandum, licet cogi potuit ad tacendum

While these six men performed their work, we had various opinions as to the choice of different men, but all considered it to be certain that Samson would be one of them. For they called to mind his labours and the danger of death, which he had endured in his journey to Rome<sup>36</sup> for the good of our church, and how he had been ill treated, and bound, and put in prison by Abbot Hugh, because he spoke to the

---

<sup>51</sup> Ps. v., Vulgate.

<sup>52</sup> For Samson’s own account of this, see text, p. 77 ff.



common advantage. And they considered he was a man who could not be brought to flatter, though he might be driven to keep silence.

Facta autem mora, vocatus conventus rediit in capitulum. Et dixerunt senes se fecisse secundum quod præceptum eis fuerat.

So, after some delay, the whole monastery was summoned to return to the chapter. And the old men said that they had done as had been commanded them.

*How, on the advice of Samson, it was decided what should be done if the king would not grant freedom of election.*

Tunc prior quæsit, quid fuerit si dominus rex nollet aliquem ex il-

Then the prior asked what and if the lord king would not accept any one of the three whose names were written down. And it was answered that, since whomsoever the king wished to be received, must be received, there was but one course open to our church. It was added also that if those thirteen brothers should see in any writing aught that should be altered, they should make the alteration, according to God, unanimously and after consultation.

lis tribus in scriptis recipere; et responsum est, quod quemcunque vellet dominus rex suscipere, susciperetur, dum modo esset processus ecclesiæ nostræ. Adjectum est etiam quod, si illi tredecim fratres viderent aliquid in alio scripto quod emendari deberet, secundum Deum de communi assensu vel consilio emendarent.

Samson subsacrista sedens ad pedes prioris dixit: "Ecclesiæ expedire si omnes juraremus in verbo veritatis, ut super quemcunque sors electionis caderet conventum rationabiliter tractaret, nec capitales obedientiales mutaret sine assensu conventus, nec sacristam gravaret, nec aliquem monacaret sine voluntate conventus;" et hoc ipsum

Samson the subsacristan, sitting at the feet of the prior, said, "It would be for the good of the church were all to swear on the word of truth that on whomsoever the lot of election shall fall, that man shall treat the monastery reasonably, and not change the chief officials without the assent of the house, nor burden the sacristan,

concessimus, omnes dexteras erigentes in signum concessionis. Provisum est quod, si dominus rex vellet aliquem extraneum abbatem facere, non reciperetur a tredecim nisi per consilium fratrum domi remanentium.

*How the chosen thirteen  
journeyed to the king.*

In crastino igitur iter arripuerunt illi tredecim versus curiam. Postremus omnium fuit Samson provisor expensarum, quia subsacrista erat, circa collum scrinium portans, quo literæ conventus continebantur, quasi omnium minister solus, et, sine armigero, froggum suum in ulnis bajulans, curiam exivit, socios sequens a longe.

In itinere versus curiam convenientibus fratribus in unum, dixit Samson bonum esse ut jurarent omnes, ut quicumque fieret abbas, redderet ecclesias de dominiis conventus in usum hospitalitatis; quod omnes concesserunt præter priorem, qui dixit: “Satis iuravimus; tantum potestis gravare abbatem, quod ego non curabo abbatiam.” Et hac occasione non iuraverunt; et hoc bene actum est, quia si hoc esset

nor make any one a monk without the consent of the monastery.” And we agreed on this matter, all raising their right hands in token of their approval. And it was provided that if the lord king willed that some stranger should be made abbot, the thirteen should not accept this man save with the advice of the brothers who remained at home.

On the morrow, therefore, these thirteen set out for the court. Last of all was Samson, who had charge of the expenses of the journey as being subsacristan. And he bore a letter-case round his neck, in which were contained the letters of the monastery, as if he were only servant of them all. So, with no attendant, and with his frock borne in his arms, he went out of the court, and followed far behind his comrades.

On their journey to the court, the brothers gathered together, and Samson said that it would be well if all were to swear that whoever might be made abbot, should restore the churches on the demesne lands of the monastery to the exercise of hospitality. To this all agreed save the prior, and he said, “We have sworn enough; you will so limit the power of the abbot, that I would not care to be abbot at all.” And for

juratum, non esset observatum.

*Of the dreams which the  
brothers dreamed  
concerning the election of a  
new abbot.*

Eodem die quo tredecim recesserunt, sedentibus nobis in clauistro, dixit Willelmus de Hastings unus ex fratribus nostris: "Scio quod habebimus abbatem unum de nostris;" et interrogatus quomodo hoc sciret, respondit, se vidisse in somnis prophetam albis indutum stantem præ foribus monasterii, et se quæsisse in nomine Domini utrum haberemus abbatem aliquem de nostris. Et respondit propheta: "Habebitis unum de vestris, sed sæviet inter vos ut lupus." Cujus somnii significatio secuta in parte, quia futurus abbas studuit magis timeri quam amari, sicut plures dicebant.

Assedit et alius frater, Ædmundus nomine, asserens quod Samson futurus esset abbas, et narrans visionem quam proxima nocte viderat. Dixit se vidisse in somnis R. celerarium et H. tertium priorem stantes ante altare, et Samsonem in medio, eminentem ab humeris supra, pallio circumdatum longo et talari, ligato in humeris ejus, et stantem quasi pugilem ad duellum

this reason, they did not swear; and it was well that they did not do, for had this oath been taken it would not have been observed.

Then on the day on which the thirteen departed, while we were sitting in the cloister, William de Hastings, one of our brothers, said, "I know that we shall have one of our own number as abbot." And when he was asked how he knew this, he answered that he had beheld in dreams a prophet, clothed in white, standing before the gates of the monastery. Him he had asked in the name of the Lord whether we should have one of ourselves as abbot. And the prophet answered, "Ye shall have one of your own number, but he shall raven as a wolf among you." And this dream was partly fulfilled, since he that became abbot strove rather to be feared than loved, as many were wont to say.

Another brother also, Edmund by name, was sitting by, and declared that Samson would be abbot, relating a dream which he had seen on the previous night. For he said that he had seen in dreams Roger the cellarer and Hugh the third prior standing before the altar, and Samson in their midst, head and shoulders taller than they, and wearing a long and flowing cloak,

faciendum. Et surrexit sanctus Eadmundus de feretro, sicut ei somnianti visum fuerat, et quasi languidus pedes et tibias nudas exposuit, et accedente quodam et volente operire pedes sancti, dixit sanctus: "Noli accedere: Ecce! ille velabit mihi pedes," prætendens digitum versus Samsonem. Hæc est interpretatio somnii:—Per hoc quod pugil videbatur, significatur quod futurus abbas semper in labore existens, quandoque movens controversiam contra archiepiscopum Cantuariensem de placitis coronæ, quandoque contra milites sancti Eadmundi pro scutagiis integre reddendis, quandoque cum burgensibus pro purpresturis in foro, quandoque cum sochemannis pro sectis hundredorum; quasi pugil volens pugnando superare adversarios, ut jura et libertates ecclesiæ suæ posset revocare. Velavit autem pedes sancti martyris, quando turres ecclesiæ a centum annis inceptas perfecte consummavit.

Hujusmodi somnia somniabant fratres nostri, quæ statim divulgabantur, primo per claustrum, postea per cu-

fastened at his shoulders, and he was standing as it were like a champion about to engage in a duel. Then the holy Edmund arose from his shrine as it seemed to the brother in his dream and showed his feet and legs bare, as though sickness was upon him. Then when one rose and would have covered the feet of the saint, the saint said, "Come not near. Lo! he shall cover my feet," and pointed his finger towards Samson. This is the interpretation of the dream: In that a champion was seen, this signified that he who was to become abbot would be constant in labour, alike when disputing with the archbishop of Canterbury about the pleas of the crown, and when striving with the knights of St. Edmund for the full payment of scutages, or with the burghers about encroachments on the market, or with the sokemen for the suits of hundreds; and that he was as it were a champion anxious to overcome his enemies by fighting, that so far as in him lay he might recover the rights and liberties of his church. Moreover, he covered the feet of the holy martyr, when he completed fully the towers of the church, which had been begun a hundred years before.

Such dreams did our brothers dream, and at once told them first of all in the cloister and then in the court. And so

riam, ita quod ante vesperam publice dicebatur in plebe, ille et ille et ille electi sunt, et unus eorum erit abbas.

*How the thirteen came to the king and showed to him the names of those whom the confessors had selected.*

1182, February 21.

Prior autem et xii. cum eo post labores et dilationes multas tandem steterunt coram rege apud Waltham, manerium Wintoniensis episcopi, secunda Dominica quadragesimæ. Quos dominus rex benigne suscepit, et asserens se velle secundum Deum agere et ad honorem ecclesiæ nostræ, præcepit fratribus per internuncios, scilicet, Ricardum episcopum Wintoniensem et G. cancellarium, postea archiepiscopum Eboracensem, ut nominarent tres de conventu nostro.

Prior vero et fratres se divertentes, quasi inde collocuturi, extraxerunt sigillum et fregerunt et invenerunt hæc nomina sub tali ordine scripta,—Samson subsacrista, R. celerarius,

it came to pass that before vespers the people openly said that this and this and this man was elected, and that one of them would be abbot.

So the prior and the twelve with him, after many labours stood at last in the presence of the king at Waltham,<sup>57</sup> a manor of the bishop of Winchester, on the second Sunday in Lent. And the lord king received them graciously, and declared that he wished to act according to the will of God and for the honour of our church. Then he gave command to the brothers through his proctors, Richard bishop of Winchester<sup>58</sup> and Geoffrey the chancellor,<sup>59</sup> who was afterwards archbishop of York, that they should nominate three members of our monastery.

Then the prior and the brothers withdrew themselves, as it were to discuss this matter, and drew forth the seal and broke it, and found these names written down in this order,—Samson

<sup>53</sup> Bishop's Waltham, in Hampshire.

<sup>54</sup> Richard Toclive, archdeacon of Poitiers (1162–73), elected bishop of Winchester in 1173; died in 1188.

<sup>55</sup> Son of Henry II. by some woman of low birth. He became bishop-elect of Lincoln in 1173, but resigned his see and was made chancellor in 1182. In 1189 he secured the archbishopric of York by forgery, as his enemies asserted, and certainly by bribery. From that time his life was one long quarrel with Richard I. and John, and with the chapter of York and Hubert Walter, both as dean of York and as archbishop. Eventually, he fled into exile as the result of his refusal to meet the financial demands of John, and died in Normandy in 1212.

Hugo tertius prior. Erubuerunt inde fratres qui maioris dignitatis erant. Mirabantur etiam omnes eundem Hugonem esse electorem et electum. Quia tamen rem mutare non poterant, ordinem nominum de communi consilio mutaverunt, pronuntiando primum H. quia tertius prior erat; secundo R. celerarium; tertio Samsonem, facientes verbo tenus novissimum primum et primum novissimum.

the sub-sacristan, Roger the cellarer, and Hugh the third prior. And at this the brothers who were of greater dignity blushed. Moreover all marvelled that the same Hugh should be both an elector and one of the elected. But because they could not alter the thing they unanimously changed the order of the names, naming Hugh, because he was third prior, first, and Roger the cellarer next, and Samson third. Thus, as far as words went, they made the last first, and the first last.<sup>40</sup>

Rex vero, primo quærens an nati essent in sua terra, et in cujus dominio, dixit se non nosse eos, mandans ut cum illis tribus alios tres nominarent de conventu.

But the king, having first asked whether they were born in his land, and in whose lordship, said that he did not know them, and commanded that they should name three other members of the monastery with them.

*How the thirteen, by command of the king, chose three other names from the monastery, and three strangers.*

caput nostrum est:" quod cito concessum est. Dixit prior: "W. sacrista bonus vir est." Similiter dictum est de Dionisio, et concessum est. Quibus nominatis coram rege sine omni mora, mirabatur rex, dicens: "Cito fecerunt isti. Deus est cum eis."

Quo concesso, dixit W. sacrista: "Prior noster debet nominari, quia

And when this had been granted, William the sacristan said, "Our prior ought to be nominated, for he is our head," and this was readily agreed. Then the prior said, "William the sacristan is a good man." The same was said of Dennis, and was agreed. And when these were named in the presence of the king without any delay, the king marvelled, saying, "These men act quickly. God is with them."

---

<sup>56</sup> Matt. xix., 30.

Postea mandavit rex ut propter honorem regni sui nominarent tres personas de aliis domibus. Quo audito, timebant fratres suspicantes dolum. Tandem consilium inierunt ut nominarent tres, sed sub conditione, scilicet, ut nullum reciperent nisi per consilium conventus qui domi fuit. Et nominaverunt tres, magistrum Nicholaum de Waringeford, postea ad horam abbatem de Malmsberi;<sup>†</sup> et Bertrandum priorem Sanctæ Fidis, postea abbatem de Certeseia;<sup>‡</sup> et dominum H. de Sancto Neoto, monachum de Becco, virum admodum religiosum et in temporalibus et spiritualibus admodum circumspectum.

And after that the king commanded that for the honour of the kingdom, they should nominate three persons from other houses. When they heard this the brothers feared, for they suspected a fraud. Yet did they agree to nominate three, but under conditions, namely, that they would receive no one save with the assent of the members of the monastery who were at home. And they named three, master Nicholas de Waringford,<sup>41</sup> who was afterwards for awhile abbot of Malmesbury, and Bertrand, prior of St. Faith's, who was afterwards abbot of Chertsey, and lord H. de St. Neots,<sup>42</sup> a monk of Bec, a most pious man, and in both secular and spiritual matters very prudent.

*How the list of names was reduced from nine to two.*

Quo facto mandavit rex, gratias agens, ut tres removerentur de novem, et statim remoti sunt alieni tres, scilicet prior Sanctæ Fidei, postea Certeseiensis abbas, et Nicholaus monachus Sancti Albani, postea abbas

When this had been done, the king sent them thanks and commanded that three of the nine should be removed, and the three strangers were at once removed, that is, the prior of St. Faith's, who was afterwards abbot of Chertsey, and Nicholas, the monk of St. Alban's, who was afterwards abbot

<sup>†</sup>“This Nicholas, a monk of St. Alban's, prior of Wallingford, succeeded Osbert Foliot as abbot of Malmesbury about the year 1183, and was deposed in 1187.” So Mr. Rokewode, from the Monasticon, “Ad horam” must therefore mean “for a season.”

<sup>57</sup> A monk of St. Alban's, prior of Wallingford. He became abbot of Malmesbury about 1163, but was deposed in 1187. (Rokewode, p. 114.)

<sup>‡</sup>“Bertrand [Bertan] succeeded Aymer, abbot of Chertsey” (Roke.); his successor, Martin, was elected in 1197.

<sup>58</sup> There was a Herbert, prior of St. Neot's in 1159 and in 1173. (Rokewode, p. 114.)

Malmsberiensis, et prior Sancti Neoti.

of Malmesbury, and the prior of St. Neot's.

Willelmus sacrista sponte cessit; remoti sunt duo ex quinque per præceptum regis; et postea unus ex tribus, et remanserunt tum duo, scilicet, prior et Samson.

William the sacristan of his accord withdrew, two of the five were removed by the order of the king, and finally one of the last three, so that there remained then two, namely, the prior and Samson.

*How Samson was elected  
abbot.*

Tunc tandem vocati sunt ad consilium fratrum prænominati internuntii domini regis. Et loquens Dionisius, unus pro omnibus, cœpit commendare personas prioris et Samsonis, dicens utrumque eorum literatum, utrumque bonum, utrumque laudabilem vitæ et integre opinionis, sed semper in angulo sui sermonis Samsonem protulit, multiplicans verba in laudem ejus, dicens eum esse virum rigidum in conversatione, severum in corrigendis excessibus, et aptum ad labores, et in sæcularibus curis prudentem, et in diversis officiis probatum.

Tunc tandem  
vocati sunt ad  
consilium fra-

Then at last the above-mentioned proctors of the lord king were summoned to the council of the brothers. And Dennis, speaking as one for all, began to commend the persons of the prior and Samson. He said that they were both learned men, both good, both praiseworthy in their lives and of unblemished reputation. But ever at the climax of his speech he put forward Samson, multiplying words in his praise, saying that he was a man strict in his conduct, stern in correcting faults, apt for labour, prudent in temporal matters, and proved in divers offices.

Respondit Wintoniensis: "Bene intelligimus quod vultis dicere; ex verbis vestris conjicimus quod prior vester vobis videtur aliquantulum remissus, et illum qui Samson dicitur vultis habere." Respondit Dionisius: "Uterque bonus est, sed meliorem vellemus ha-

Then the bishop of Winchester answered, "We know well what you would say, from your words we gather that your prior has appeared to you to be somewhat slack, and that you wish to have him who is called Samson." Dennis answered, "Both of them are good



bere si Deus vellet.” Cui episcopus: “Duorum bonorum magis bonum eligendum est: dicite aperte, vultis habere Samsonem?” Et responsum est præcise a pluribus et a majori parte, “Volumus Samsonem,” nullo reclamante, quibusdam tamen tacentibus ex industria, nec hunc nec illum offendere volentibus.

Nominato Samsone, coram domino rege, et habito brevi consilio cum suis, vocati sunt omnes, et dixit rex: “Vos præsentastis mihi Samsonem: non novi eum: si præsentaretis mihi priorem vestrum, illum reciperem quem vidi et agnovi; sed modo faciam quod vultis. Cavete vobis; per veros oculos Dei, si male feceritis, ego me capiam ad vos.”

Et interrogavit priorem si assentiret, et hoc vellet; qui respondit se hoc velle, et Samsonem multo majore dignum honore. Electus igitur, ad pedes regis procidens et deosculans, festinanter surrexit et festinanter ad altare tetendit, cantando: “Miserere mei Deus,” cum fratribus, erecto capite, vultu non mutato.

men, but we desire to have the better, if God wills.” Thereupon the bishop said, “Of two good things, the greater good should be selected. Say openly, do you desire to have Samson?” And many, and they a majority, answered plainly, “We wish to have Samson,” and none spoke against him. Some, however, were silent from caution, wishing to offend neither candidate.

Then Samson was nominated in the presence of the lord king, and when the king had consulted with his men for a while, all were summoned. And the king said, “You have presented to me Samson. I know him not. If you had presented your prior to me, I would have accepted him, for I have seen and know him. But I will only do what you will. Take heed to yourselves; by the true eyes of God, if you do ill, I will exact a recompense at your hands.”

Then he asked the prior if he assented to the choice and wished it, and the prior answered that he did will it, and that Samson was worthy of much greater honour. Therefore he was elected, and fell at the king’s feet and embraced them. Then he arose quickly and hastened to the altar, with his head erect and without changing his expression,

chanting the “Miserere mei, Deus”<sup>43</sup> with the brothers.

Quod cum rex vidisset, dixit astantibus: “Per oculos Dei,<sup>†</sup> iste electus videtur sibi dignus abbatiae custodiendae.”

And when the king saw this, he said to those that stood by, “By the eyes of God, this elect thinks that he is worthy to rule the abbey.”

*How the news of the election came to the monastery and how Samson was blessed.*  
A.D. 1182, February 28.

Hujus electionis rumor cum ad conventum perveniret, omnes claustrales vel fere omnes, et quosdam obedientiales, sed paucos, lætificavit: “Bene,” multi dicebant, “quia bene est.” Alii dicebant quod “non; imo, omnes seducti sumus.”

The news of this election came to the monastery, and all the cloistered monks or almost all of them were rejoiced, and also some of the officials, but few. “It is well,” said many, “because it is well.” Others said that this was not so, “Of a truth, we have all been bewitched.”

Electus, antequam rediret ad nos, benedictionem suam accepit a domino Wintoniensi, qui in eadem hora mitram capiti abbatis imponens et annulum digito, ait: “Hæc est dignitas abbatum sancti Eadmundi: diu est ex quo scivi hoc.”

Before he returned to us, the elect received his benediction<sup>44</sup> from the lord of Winchester, who in the same hour in the which he placed the mitre on the abbot’s head and the ring on his finger, said, “This man is worthy of the abbacy of St. Edmund, and for a long while have I known it.”

Abbas itaque tres monachos secum

Therefore the abbot retained with him

---

<sup>59</sup> Ps. 50, Vulgate.

<sup>†</sup> These strange oaths were constantly in the mouths of the Anglo-Norman and Angevin kings. William Rufus used to swear by “the holy Face of Lucca.”

<sup>60</sup> At Merewell, near Newport, I.W. He received his benediction from Richard of Winchester and Augustine, bishop of Waterford, on February 28th (*Chron. Bur., Mem. III., 7, and Ann. St. Ed., Mem. II., 5*). From the same sources we learn that Samson was received at St. Edmund’s on Palm Sunday, March 21st.

retinens, alios domum præmisit, nuntians adventum suum Dominica Palmarum, quibusdam commendans curam ad providenda necessaria in die festi sui.

*How Samson, having been made abbot, returned and was received at the monastery.*  
A.D. 1182, March 21.

servire; qui omnibus respondit, se esse contentum servantibus prioris, nec alios posse retinere, donec inde consulisset conventum suum. Unum tamen militem retinuit eloquentem et juris peritum, non tantum consideratione proximitatis, sed ratione utilitatis, causis quidem sæcularibus assuetum; quem suscepit in novitate sua quasi coadjutorem in mundanis controversiis, quia novus abbas erat, et rudis in talibus, sicut ipsemet protestatus est: quia nunquam ante susceptam abbatiam loco interfuit ubi datum esset vadium et plegium.

Cum debito honore et etiam processione receptus est a conventu suo, Dominica Palmarum.

Susceptus est autem dominus abbas hoc modo: proxima nocte jacuerat apud Chenteford, et accepta tempo-

three monks, and allowed the rest to return home. And he announced that he would himself come on Palm Sunday, and charged certain men with the care of providing those things which might be necessary for his feast.

On his homeward way a multitude of new relations met him, desiring to serve him. But he answered all of them that he was content with the servants of the prior, and that he was unable to maintain others until he had consulted the monastery on the matter. But one knight he did retain, a man who was eloquent and skilled in the law. This he did not only from consideration of their relationship, but from arguments of utility also, as he was indeed used to secular affairs. He received him as a novice and as his assessor in temporal disputes. For he was a new abbot and unskilful in such matters, as he himself protested, since until he received the abbacy he had never held any office in which surety and pledge was given.

On Palm Sunday he was received with due honour and with ceremony also by his monastery.

Now the lord abbot was thus received. The night before he had lain at Kentford, and at the proper moment we

ris opportunitate, ivimus contra eum solempniter, post exitum de capitulo, usque ad portam cimiterii, sonantibus campanis in choro et extra. Ipse vero multitudine hominum constipatus, videns conventum, descendit de equo extra limen portæ, et faciens se discalciari, intra portam nudipes susceptus est, priore et sacrista hinc et inde ducentibus eum. Nos vero cantavimus responsoria, “Benedictus Dominus,” de Trinitate, et post, “Martiri adhuc,” de sancto Eadmundo; ducentes abbatem usque ad magnum altare.

went to meet him in the solemn procession, after leaving the chapter, as far as the gate of the graveyard, while bells were rung in the choir and outside it. But he was surrounded by a multitude of men, and when he saw the monastery, dismounted from his horse without the threshold of the gate, and causing his sandals to be removed, was received within the door barefooted, the prior and the sacristan supporting him on either side. And we chanted the responses “Benedictus Dominus”<sup>45</sup> from the service for Trinity Sunday, and afterwards the “Martiri adhuc”<sup>46</sup> from that for St. Edmund, and conducted the abbot as far as the high altar.

Quibus peractis, siluerunt et organa et campanæ, et dicta oratione a priore, “Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, miserere huic,”<sup>†</sup> &c. super abbatem prostratum, et facta oblatione ab abbate, et deosculato feretro, rediit in chorum, et ibi recepit eum Samson cantor per manum, et duxit usque ad sedem abbatis ad occidentalem partem, ubi, eo

And when this had been done, the organs and bells were silenced, and the prior said the prayer “Omnipotens sempiterne Deus, miserere huic,”<sup>47</sup> over the prostrate abbot. Then the abbot made oblation and kissed the shrine, and returned to the choir. There Samson the precentor took him by the hand and led him to the abbot’s

<sup>61</sup> Response at matins after the second lesson on Trinity Sunday. (Rokewode, p. 18.)

<sup>62</sup> A response following the sixth lesson at matins on St. Edmund’s day. Rokewode (p. 115) gives the musical notes which accompany it from a life of the saint of the time of abbot Anselm. Rokewode seems to suggest that this was one of the antiphons composed in honour of St. Edmund by Warner, abbot of Rebaix, for which see Hermannus, *De Mir. St. Eadmundi* (*Mem. I.*, 69–70).

<sup>†</sup> Collect. Missæ Votivæ lxxi. in Sacrament. Gregor.—Liturgia Romana Vetus. Muratori, tom. ii., p. 90. (Rokewode.)

<sup>63</sup> Liturgia Romana Vetus. (Rokewode, p. 18, note 4.)

stante, in directum incepit cantor: "Te Deum laudamus;" quod dum decantabatur, deosculatur a priore et a toto conventu per ordinem.

Quibus expletis, ivit abbas in capitulum, sequente conventu et multis aliis. Dicto autem "Benedicite," in primis gratias egit conventui quod eum, ut aiebat, minimum eorum, non suis meritis, sed sola Dei voluntate, in dominum et pastorem elegerunt. Rogansque breviter ut orarent pro eo, convertit sermonem ad clericos et milites, rogans, ut eum consulerent ad sollicitudinem commissi regiminis.

Et respondens Wimerus vicecomes pro omnibus, dixit: "Et nos parati sumus vobis consistere in consilio et auxilio omnibus modis, sicut caro domino quem Dominus vocavit ad honorem suum et ad honorem sancti martyris Eadmundi."

Et deinde extractæ sunt cartæ regis, et lectæ in audientia de donatione abba-

chair on the western side of the choir, and while he stood there the precentor at once began "Te Deum laudamus," and while it was being chanted, the abbot was embraced by the prior and by the whole monastery.

And so, these ceremonies being completed, the abbot entered the chapter, the whole monastery and many others following. He said many times "Benedicite," and then he first returned thanks to the monastery that they had chosen him, the least of them all, as he said, not for his own merits but only by the will of God, to be their lord and pastor. And asking in a few words that they would pray for him, he addressed the clerks and knights, and asked them to advise him for the good of the monastery.

Then Wimer, the sheriff,<sup>64</sup> answered for them all, and said, "We also are ready to be with you in counsel and in helping you in every way, as with a dear lord whom the Lord has called for His honour, and for the honour of the holy martyr Edmund."

Afterwards the charters of the king concerning the donation of the abbacy

<sup>64</sup>Rokewode (p. 116) collects from the Pipe Rolls of Norfolk and Suffolk that Wimer was a sheriff of Norfolk and Suffolk in conjunction with Bartholomew Glanvill, and William Bardolf from the 16th to the 22nd years of Henry II.; and sheriff alone from then to the 34th year of Henry II.

tiæ. Facta autem oratione ab ipso abbate, ut ei Deus consuleret secundum gratiam suam, et responso “amen” ab omnibus, ivit in talamum suum, diem festivum agens cum plus quam mille comedentibus, in gaudio magno.

*How abbot Samson began  
to rule the monastery.*

Quando hæc fiebant, eram capellanus prioris, et infra quatuor menses capellanus abbatis factus, plurima notans et memoriæ commendans. In crastino ergo festi sui, convocavit priorem et alios quosdam paucos, quasi consilium ab aliis quærens: ipse enim sciebat quid esset factururus.

Dixit novum sigillum<sup>†</sup> esse faciendum, et cum mitra esse pingendum, licet prædecessores sui tale non haberent; sigillo autem prioris nostri hucusque usus fuerat, singulis literis in fine subscribens, quod proprium sigillum non habuit, unde et sigillo prioris oportuit uti ad tempus. Postea disponens domui suæ, diversos famulos diversis officiis deputavit, dicens

were brought forth, and were read in the hearing of all. The abbot himself also prayed that God would guide him according to His grace, and all answered “Amen.” Then he went into his own chamber, and celebrated his day of festival with more than a thousand guests and with great joy.

In those days I was prior’s chaplain, and within four months was made chaplain to the abbot. And I noted many things and committed them to memory. So, on the morrow of his feast, the abbot assembled the prior and some few others together, as if to seek advice from others, but he himself knew what he would do.

He said that a new seal<sup>49</sup> must be made and adorned with a mitred effigy of himself, though his predecessors had not had such a seal. For a time, however, he used the seal of our prior, writing at the end of all letters that he did so for the time being because he had no seal of his own. And afterwards he ordered his household,<sup>50</sup> and transferred various officials to

---

<sup>†</sup> As the frontispiece to his edition of the Chronicle, Mr. Gage Rokewode gives an engraving of an impression from this seal, answering to the description in the text, which is still attached to a document among the archives of Christ Church, Canterbury.

<sup>65</sup> A reproduction of this seal appears as a frontispiece to Rokewode’s edition.

<sup>66</sup> John vi., 6.

se prægogitasse viginti sex equos in curia sua habendos; et ad plus asserens, "puerum prius repere, postea firmius stare et ire;" hoc super omnia famulis præcipiens, ut caverent ne in novitate sua possit infamari avaritia cibi vel potus, sed hospitalitatem domus solícite procurarent.

In his et in omnibus rebus agendis et constituendis de Dei auxilio et proprio sensu plenius confidens, inglorium duxit de alieno pendere consilio, tanquam ipse sibi sufficeret. Mirabantur monachi, indignabantur milites; damnautes eum arrogancia, et quodammodo infamantes eum apud curiam regis, et dicentes quia nollet operari secundum consilium suorum liberorum hominum. Ipse magnates abbatiæ, tam laicos quam literatos, sine quorum consilio et auxilio abbatia videbatur non posse regi, omnes a privato suo elongavit consilio; et hac occasione Ranulfus de Glanvill, justiciarius Angliæ, primo eum suspectum habebat, et minus propitius ei erat quam deceret, donec ei certis indiciis constaret abbatem tam in interioribus quam exterioribus negotiis provide et

other offices, saying that he proposed to maintain twenty-six horses in his court, and many times he declared that "a child must first crawl, and afterwards he may stand upright and walk." And he laid this especial command upon his servants, that they should take care that he might not be laid open to the charge of not providing enough food and drink, but that they should assiduously provide for the maintenance of the hospitality of the house.

In these matters, and in all the things which he did and determined, he trusted fully in the help of God and his own good sense, holding it to be shameful to rely upon the counsel of another, and thinking he was sufficient unto himself. The monks marvelled and the knights were angered; they blamed his pride, and often defamed him at the court of the king, saying that he would not act in accordance with the advice of his freemen. He himself put away from his privy council all the great men of the abbey, both lay and literate, men without whose advice and assistance it seemed impossible that the abbey could be ruled. For this reason Ranulf de Glanvill, justiciar of England, was at first offended with him, and was less well-disposed towards him than was expe-

prudenter agere.

*How the abbot met the  
demand of Thomas de  
Hastings that his nephew  
should be steward.  
A.D. 1182 April 1.*

Facta summonitione generali, conveniunt omnes barones et milites et liberi homines ut facerent homagium quarto die Paschæ: et ecce! Thomas de Hastingo, cum magna multitudo militum, ducens Henricum nepotem suum nondum militem, clamans senescaldiam<sup>†</sup> cum consuetudinibus suis, sicut carta ejus loquitur. Quibus abbas statim respondit: "Henrico non nego jus suum, nec negare volo. Si sciret in propria persona mihi servire, concederem ei et decem hominibus et octo equis necessaria in mea curia, sicut carta ejus loquitur; si præsentetis mihi senescaldum, vicarium ejus, qui sciat et possit senescaldiam regere, recipiam eum in tali statu, sicut prædecessor meus eum habuit die quo fuit vivus et mortuus, scilicet cum iiiij<sup>or</sup> equis et pertinentiis. Quod si

dient, until he knew well from definite proofs that the abbot acted providently and prudently, both in domestic and in external affairs.

A general summons was sent out, and on the fourth day of Easter all the barons, and knights, and freemen came to do homage. And, lo! Thomas de Hastings came also with a great multitude of knights, and brought with him Henry his nephew,<sup>51</sup> who was not yet a knight, and for whom he demanded the office of steward with the customary dues thereof, as his charter provided. And to this demand the abbot at once answered, "I neither deny, nor wish to deny, his right to Henry. If he were able to serve me in his own person, I would grant him the means of supporting ten men and eight horses in my court. And if you will present a steward to me, who knows how to fulfil the office of steward and is able to do so, I will receive him on the same terms as my predecessor had his steward on the day whereon he was alive and dead, that is, I will allow him four horses with the things needful for

<sup>67</sup> Rokewode (p. 116 ff) prints the charters upon which Henry de Hastings claimed to be hereditary steward of the liberty of St. Edmund's.

<sup>†</sup> A seneschal (*senscalcus*, *senescallus*, *senescaldus*) originally meant the servant placed over the household, as "marshal" (*mariscalus*) meant the servant placed over the horses. The origin of the first part of the word is unknown; probably it is some Teutonic word like *sin*, meaning "old." In the twelfth century the seneschal generally administered justice for his lord, and this was the case at Bury, as Samson's remarks on Gilbert's appointment show.



nolueritis, pono loquelam coram rege vel coram capitali justicia.”

Quo dicto, cepit res dilationem: postea præsentatus est ei quidam senescaldus simplex et idiota, Gilbertus nomine, quem antequam suscepisset, dixit familiaribus suis: “Si defectus fuerit de justitia regis servanda per inscientiam senescaldi, ipse erit in misericordia regis et non ego, quia senescaldiam vendicat sibi jure hæreditario: et ideo ad præsens malo istum recipere, quam alium magis argutum ad me decipiendum. Ego mihi ero senescaldus cum auxilio Dei.”

*How the abbot dealt with the lands of his house.*

Post homagia suscepta, petivit abbas auxilium a militibus, qui promiserunt ab unoquoque xx. solidos; sed in instanti inierunt consilium, et retraxerunt duodecim libras de duodecim militibus, dicentes, quod illi xii. debent adjuvare alios xl. et ad wardas faciendas et ad scutagia, similiter et ad auxilium abbatis. Quod cum abbas audisset, iratus est, et dixit familiaribus suis, quod, si posset vivere, redderet eis vicem pro vice et gravamen pro gravamine.

them. But if you will not agree to this, I will make complaint before the king and before the chief justiciar.”

When the abbot had so spoken, the matter was postponed. But afterwards a certain simple and foolish steward, by name Gilbert, was presented to him, and before he received him, the abbot said to his intimates, “If the ignorance of the steward leads to the ill-rendering of the justice of the king, then it will be he who will be responsible to the king and not I, for he gained the stewardship by hereditary right. For the time, therefore, I would rather accept him than another, even more incompetent, to my loss. By God’s help, I will be my own steward.”

When homage had been received, the abbot demanded an aid from the knights, and they promised twenty shillings from each fee of a knight. But they at once took counsel, and reduced the aid by twelve pounds from twelve knights, alleging that these twelve ought to assist the other forty to keep ward, and to make scutages, and also in assisting the abbey. When the abbot heard this, he was wroth, and said to his friends that should his life be spared, he would repay them like for like, and injury for injury.<sup>52</sup>

Post hæc, per unumquodque manerium abbatiae fecit abbas inquire annuos census liberorum hominum, et nomina rusticorum, et eorum tenementa, et singulorum servitia, et in scriptum omnia redigi. Aulas autem veteres et domos confractas, per quas milvi et cornices volabant, reformavit; capellas novas ædificavit, et talamos et solia pluribus locis, ubi nunquam fuerunt ædificia, nisi horrea solummodo.

Plures etiam parcos fecit, quos bestiis replevit, venatorem cum canibus habens; et, superveniente aliquo hospite magni nominis, sedebat cum monachis suis in aliquo saltu nemoris, et videbat aliquando canes currere; sed de venatione nunquam vidi eum gustare.

Plura etiam assartavit et in agriculturam reduxit; in omnibus utilitati abbatiæ prospiciens: sed utinam super maneriis conventus commendandis consimili studio vigilaret! Maneria tamen nostra de Bradefeld et Rutham recepit ad tempus in manu sua, implens defectus firmarum per expensam xl. librarum, quæ postea resignavit nobis, audito quod murmur erat in conventu

After this, the abbot caused inquest to be made in every manor belonging to the abbacy as to the annual revenues of the free men, and the names of the villeins, and their holdings, and the services due from each, and caused all these details to be written down. Then he restored the old halls and ruined houses, through which kites and crows flew; he built new chapels, and rooms and seats in many places where there had never been buildings, save perhaps barns.

He also made many parks, which he filled with beasts, and had a huntsman and dogs. And whenever any important guest arrived, he used to sit with his monks in some retired grove, and watch the coursing for a while; but I never saw him interested in hunting.

He made many clearings and brought land into cultivation, in everything regarding the advantage of the abbacy. But would that he had watched with equal care over the grants of the manors of the monastery. For he received our manors of Bradfield and Rougham for a while into his own hand, making good the loss of rent by the expenditure of forty pounds, which he afterwards handed over to us when he

---

<sup>68</sup>For the way in which this threat was carried out, see text, p. 104.

ex hoc quod maneria nostra tenuit in manu sua.

Eisdem etiam maneriis et omnibus aliis regendis, tam monachos quam laicos sapientiores prioribus custodibus constituit, qui et nobis et terris nostris consultius providerent.

Octo etiam hundredos<sup>†</sup> in manu sua, et post mortem Roberti de Cokefeld recepit hundredum de Cosford, quos omnes servantibus suis de mensa sua custodiendos tradidit; quæ majoris quæstionis erant ad se referens, et quæ minoris per alios terminans, et singula ad suum commodum retorquens.

Facta, eo iubente, descriptio generalis per hundredos de letis et sectis, de hidagiis et fodercorn, de gallinis reddendis, et aliis consuetudinibus et redditibus et exitibus, qui in magna parte semper celati fuerant per firmarios, et omnia redegit in scriptum, ita quod, infra iiij<sup>or</sup> annos ab electione sua, non erat qui posset eum decipere de redditibus abbatiae ad valentiam unius denarii, cum de abbatia custo-

heard that the monastery murmured because he held our manors in his own hands.

For the management of the same manors and for the management of all other affairs, he appointed monks and laymen who were wiser than those who had previously held the posts, and who made careful provision for us and our lands.

Then he received eight hundreds into his own hands, and when Robert de Cokefield died, he took the hundred of Cosford. All these he handed over to the care of the servants of his own table. Matters of greater moment were kept for his own decision, and those which were of less import were decided by his agents; all things he turned to his advantage.

By his command, a general account was drawn up for every hundred of the leets and suits, of the hidages and customary supplies of fodder, of the hens which ought to be paid to him, and of all the other customary dues, revenues, and expenses, which the tenants had always concealed to a great extent. All these things he reduced to writing, so that within four years of his election, no one could deceive him as

---

<sup>†</sup>"Tenuit" desiderari videtur. (Roke.)

dienda nullum scriptum a predecesso-  
ribus suis recepisset, nisi schedulam  
parvam, qua continebantur nomina  
militum Sancti Eadmundi et nomi-  
na maneriorum, et quæ firma quam  
firmam sequi deberet. Hunc autem  
librum vocavit Kalendarium suum,  
quo etiam inscribebantur singula de-  
bita quæ adquietaverat; quem librum  
fere quotidie inspexit, tanquam ibi  
consideraret vultum probitatis suæ in  
speculo.

*Of that which was done at  
the abbot's first chapter.*

Prima die qua  
tenuit capitulum, confirma-  
vit nobis novo sigillo suo lx. solidos de  
Suthreia, quos prædecessores sui in-  
juste receperant primo ab Eadmundo,  
aureo monacho dicto, ut posset tene-  
re eandem villam ad firmam omnibus  
diebus vitæ suæ.

Et proposuit edictum ut nullus de cæ-  
tero ornamenta ecclesiæ invadiaret si-  
ne assensu conventus, sicut solebat fie-  
ri, nec aliqua carta sigillaretur sigillo  
conventus nisi in capitulo coram con-  
ventu;

to the resources of the abbey even to  
a penny's value, whereas he had recei-  
ved nothing in writing from his prede-  
cessors concerning the management  
of the abbey, except a little schedule  
containing the names of the knights  
of St. Edmund and the names of the  
manors, and the rent which attached  
to each farm. Now he called this book  
of his his Calendar,<sup>53</sup> in the which also  
were written down all the debts whi-  
ch he had paid. And he consulted this  
book almost daily, as if in it he saw the  
image of his probity as in a glass.

On the first day on the which he held a  
chapter, he confirmed to us under his  
new seal the sixty shillings for South-  
rey, which his predecessors had in the  
first instance unjustly received from  
Edmund, called the golden monk, that  
the same might hold the said township  
to farm all the days of his life.

And he proposed an edict that no one  
should pledge the ornaments of the  
church henceforth without the assent  
of the monastery, as had been done for-  
merly. He proposed also that no char-  
ter should be sealed with the seal of  
the monastery save in the chapter and  
in the presence of the whole commu-

<sup>69</sup> Rokewode (p. 121) mentions a transcript of the Calendar which was in a copy of the *Liber de Consuetudinibus S. Edmundi* in his possession.

nity.

et fecit Hugonem subsacristam, statuens ut Willelmus sacrista nichil omnino ageret de sacristia, nec in receptis nec in expensis, nisi per assensum ejus. Posthæc, sed non eodem die, antiquos custodes oblationum transtulit ad alia officia. Postremo ipsum W. deposuit; unde quidam diligentes Willelmum dicebant: "Ecce abbas! ecce lupus de quo somnium est! ecce qualiter sævit."

*How certain men wished to  
conspire against the abbot.*

et voluerunt facere quidam conspirationem contra abbatem. Quod cum abbati revelatum esset, volens nec omnino tacere nec conventum turbare, intrauit capitulum in crastino, extrahens sacculum plenum cartis cancellatis adhuc sigillis pendentibus, scilicet, prædecessoris sui, et partim prioris, partim sacristæ, partim camerarii, et aliorum officialium, quarum summa erat trium millium librarum et lii., et una marca, de pura sorte, præter usuram quæ excreverat, cujus magnitudo nunquam sciri poterat: de quibus omnibus pacem fecerat infra annum post electionem suam, et infra xii. annos omnia adquietavit.

Then he made Hugh sub-sacristan, ordaining that William the sacristan should do nothing in the office of sacristan, either as to receipts or as to expenses, save by his assent. Afterwards, but on the same day, he removed the former custodians of the oblations to other offices. And last of all he deposed William himself, whereupon certain who loved William said, "See the abbot! See the wolf of whom one dreamed! See how he ravens!"

Then some wished to conspire against the abbot. And when this was revealed to the abbot, as he wished neither to keep silence altogether nor to disturb the monastery, he entered the chapter on the morrow. And there he drew forth a small bag full of cancelled bonds, to which the seals were still attached, some of which were those of his predecessor, some of the prior, some of the sacristan, some of the chamberlain, and some of other officials. Of these the total was three thousand two score and twelve pounds, and one pure mark, over and above the increase due to usury, the amount of which none could know; and for all these he had made some arrangement within a year of his election, and within twelve

years he had paid them in full.

“Ecce,” inquit, “sapientia sacristæ nostri Willelmi! Ecce tot cartæ sigillo ejus signatæ, cum quibus impignoraverat cappas sericas, dalmaticas, turibula argenti, et textus aureos, sine conventu, quæ omnia adquietavi et vobis reconsignavi.” et multa alia adjecit, ostendens quare deposuerat W.; præcipuam tamen causam subticuit, nolens eum scandalizare.

And he said, “Observe the wisdom of our sacristan, William! See the number of bonds marked with his seal, in which he has pledged silken caps, dalmatics, silver vases, and books of the gospels bound in gold, without the assent of the monastery. And all these things I have settled and restored to you.” And he added many other words, showing wherefore he had deposited William. But on the principal cause he kept silence, not wishing to make him a public example.

Et cum substituisset Samsonem cantorem, nobis omnibus placentem et omni exceptione majorem, in pace facta sunt omnia. Abbas vero domos sacristæ in cimiterio funditus præcepit erui, tanquam non essent dignæ stare super terram, propter frequentes bibationes et quædam tacenda, quæ nolens et dolens viderat quando fuit subsacrista; et ita omnia complanari fecit, quod infra annum, ubi steterat nobile ædificium, vidimus fabas pullulare, et ubi jacuerant dolia vini, urticas abundare.

And all things became peaceful once more when he had replaced William with the precentor Samson, who was a man pleasing to all of us, and well known to be without fault. But the abbot ordered that the houses of the sacristan in the graveyard should be utterly destroyed, as if they were unworthy to stand above ground. And for this the cause was the frequent drinking bouts and certain things which cannot be mentioned, which he had seen when he was sub-sacristan with sorrow and pain. So he caused all the buildings to be levelled with the ground, and within a year, where there had stood a noble building we saw beans growing, and where casks of wine had lain we saw nettles in abundan-

ce.

*How the abbot journeyed  
through the lands of Saint  
Edmund, and how he  
escaped death at Warkton.*

Post clausum Paschæ ivit abbas per singula maneria sua et nostra, et per illa quæ confirmavimus in feudum firmariis, poscens ab omnibus et a singulis auxilium et recognitionem secundum consuetudinem regni; quotidie sæculari scientia proficiens, et ad exteriora negotia discenda et promovenda animum convertens.

Cum autem venisset apud Werketunam, et nocte dormisset, venit ei vox, dicens: "Samson, surge velociter," et iterum, "Surge, nimis moraris;" et surgens stupefactus, circumquaque respexit, et vidit lumen in domo necessaria, candelam scilicet, paratam cadere super stramen, quam Reinerus monachus ibi per incuriam reliquerat. Quam cum abbas extinxisset pergens per domum percepit ostium, quod unicum erat, ita obseratum quod aperiri non potuit nisi per clavem, et fenestras strictas, ita quod, si ignis excrevisset, ipse et omnes sui qui in solio illo dormierant extincti essent; quia non erat locus ubi exire vel quo effugere possent.

Post clausum  
Paschæ ivit ab-  
bas per singu-  
la maneria sua

After the end of Easter the abbot went through all his manors and ours, and through those which we had confirmed in fee to tenants. And from all and sundry he demanded an aid and recognition, according to the custom of the realm. Daily he grew skilled in earthly learning, and turned his attention to the acquisition of knowledge of external affairs and of providing for them.

But when he was come to Warkton and was at night sleeping, a voice came to him saying, "Samson, arise up quickly,"<sup>54</sup> and again, "Rise, thou tarriest too long." So he arose half dazed, and looking round about him saw in a necessary place a light, a candle which Reiner the monk had left there through carelessness, and which was about to fall on the straw. And when the abbot had put it out, he went through the house and found the door—for there was but one—so fastened that it could only be opened with a key, and the windows barred. Wherefore, had the fire grown, both he and all they who were sleeping in that building would have perished. For there was no way by which they might have gone out or escaped.

*How the creditors of the  
abbey demanded payment,  
and how the abbot took his  
manors into his own hand.*

tam Judei quam Christiani exigentes debita, turbantes et anxiantes eum, ita quod somnum amittebat, pallidus et macilentus effectus, et dicens, quod “nunquam cor meum quietum erit, donec finem debiti mei sciero.”

Veniente festo sancti Michaelis, omnia maneria sua in manu sua recepit cum parvis admodum implementis et paucis instauramentis; Waltero de Hatfeld condonavit xix. libras de firmis præteritis, ut libere reciperet <sup>iii</sup><sup>or</sup> maneria quæ abbas H. ei confirmaverat tenenda, scilicet Haregrava et Saxham et Cheventona et Stapelford;

*How the abbot did not then  
take Harlow into his own  
hand.*

Cum forte transitum faceremus in redeundo de Lundonia per forestam, domino abbate audiente, quæsi vi a vetula transeunte cujus hoc nemus esset, et de qua villa, et quis dominus, vel quis custos? et respondit, quia nemus erat abbatis Sancti Eadmundi, de villa de Herlava, et quod Arnal-

Quocunque  
ibat abbas,  
tunc temporis,  
occurrerant

Herlavam au-  
tem distulit  
abbas recipere  
hac occasione.

Now at that time, wheresoever the abbot went, there hastened to him both Jews and Christians demanding payment of the debts due to them. And they so disturbed the abbot, and caused him such anxiety, that he lost his sleep, and grew pale and thin. Then he said, “There will be no rest for my soul until I shall see an end of my indebtedness.”

When Michaelmas came, he took all his manors into his hand, with very few necessary implements and but little stock. He forgave Walter de Hatfield nineteen pounds of arrears of rent, in return for receiving from him the four manors in the which he had been confirmed as tenant by abbot Hugh, namely, Hargrave, Saxham, Chevington and Stapleford.

But the abbot delayed to receive Harlow, and for this cause. It chanced that once when we were returning from London through the forest, that in the hearing of the lord abbot I asked an old woman who passed us whose this wood was, and to what township it belonged, and who was its lord or who was warden over it. And she answered that it was a wood of the abbot of St. Edmund, of the township of Harlow, and that one called Arnald was

<sup>70</sup>Acts xxii., 7.



dus dictus esset custos ejus. De quo cum quærerem, qualiter se haberet versus homines villæ, respondit, quia demon vivus fuerat, inimicus Dei et excoriator rusticorum; sed timet modo novum abbatem Sancti Eadmundi, quem sapientem et cautelem credit esse, et ideo tractat homines pacifice. Quo audito, factus est abbas hilaris, et manerium recipere distulit ad tempus.

*How the abbot managed  
the lands which he farmed  
himself.*

Ex insperato venit tunc temporis rumor de morte uxoris Herlewini de Rung, quæ cartam ad tenendam eandem villam in vita sua habebat; et dixit abbas: “Heri dedissem lx. marcas ad liberandum illud manerium; modo liberavit illud Dominus.” Cumque sine omni dilatione illuc venisset et recepisset villam in manu sua, et in crastino isset Tilleneriam, membrum illius manerii, venit quidam miles offerens xxx. marcas, ut posset tenere illam carucatam terræ cum pertinentiis per antiquum servitium, scilicet iiij. libras; quod noluit abbas; et habuit inde illo anno xxv. libras, secundo anno xx. libras.

warden of it. And when I asked concerning him as to how he bore himself towards the men of the township, she answered that he had been a fiend incarnate, an enemy of God, and one who evil-intreated the poor. But now, she said, he fears the new abbot of St. Edmund, whom he believes to be wise and provident, and therefore treats his men well. And when he heard this the abbot was rejoiced, and delayed for a season to take that manor into his own hand.

Then there came the unexpected news of the death of the wife of Herlewin of Rungton. She held a charter by which she was to have that township for her life, and the abbot said, “Yesterday I would have given sixty marks to free that manor, now the Lord has freed it.” Then when he had come and had received the township into his hand without any delay, and on the morrow had gone to Tilleney which was a part of that manor, there came to him a certain knight offering thirty marks that he might hold that carucate of land with what belonged to it on the same terms as before, namely, four pounds a year. This the abbot refused, and he took thence that year five and twenty pounds, and in the next year twenty pounds.

Hæc et consimilia fecerunt eum omnia tenere in manu sua; scilicet quod alibi legitur: “Omnia Cæsar erat.”† Ille vero non segniter agens, horrea et boverias ædificare cœpit in primis; ad wainandas terras super omnia excolendas sollicitus, et ad boscos custodiendos vigilans, super quibus dandis vel minuendis ipse seipsum profitebatur avarum.

Unum solum manerium de Torp carta sua confirmavit cuidam Anglico natione, glebæ ascripto, de cujus fidelitate plenius confidebat quia bonus agricola erat, et quia nesciebat loqui Gallice.

*How abbot Samson was  
made a justice, and how he  
bore himself in this office.  
A.D. 1182, November.*

suam, et ecce! offerebantur ei literæ domini papæ constituentes eum iudicem de causis cognoscendis, ad quæ exequenda rudis fuit et inexercitatus, licet liberalibus artibus et scripturis divinis imbutus esset, utpote vir literatus, in scholis nutritus, et rector scholarum in sua provincia notus et approbatus. Vocavit proinde duos clericos legis peritos, et sibi associavit, quorum consilio utebatur in ecclesiasticis negotiis, decretis et decretalibus

This and other similar events led him to keep all things in his hand; as it is written in another place, “Cæsar was everything.” Nor was he slack, but caused first of all barns and cattlesheds to be built; he was anxious to cultivate the plough lands above all things; he was careful in maintaining the woods, and in giving and reducing these he made great profit for himself.

The one manor of Thorp alone he confirmed under his charter to a certain Englishman, a man adscript to the soil, in whose fidelity he had the fullest confidence, because he was a good farmer and because he knew no French.

Nondum transierant vii. menses post electionem

Seven months had not yet passed since his election, and, behold! letters of the lord pope were sent to him appointing him a judge for hearing causes. In the performance of this work he was rude and inexperienced, though he was skilled in the liberal arts and in the holy scriptures, as being a literate man, brought up in the schools and a ruler of scholars, and renowned and well proved in his own work. He therefore associated with himself two clerks who were learned in the law and joined them with him, using their advice in church matters, while he spent his leisure in studying the

† Lucan Phars. iii., 108.

epistolis operam præbens, cum hora dabatur; ita quod infra breve tempus, tum librorum inspectione, tum causarum exercitio, iudex discretus haberetur, secundum formam juris in jure procedens. Unde quidam ait, "Maledicta sit curia istius abbatis, ubi nec aurum nec argentum mihi prodest ad confundendum adversarium meum!"

Processu temporis, in causis sæcularibus aliquantulum exercitatus, naturali ratione ductus, tam subtilis ingenii erat quod omnes mirabantur, et ab Osberto filio Hervei subvicecomite dicebatur: "Iste abbas disputator est; si procedit sicut incipit, nos omnes excæcabit quotquot sumus." Abbas vero in hujusmodi causis approbatus, factus est justiciarius errans, sed ab errore et devio se custodiens. Verum "summa petit livor."<sup>†</sup> Cum homines sui conquererentur ei in curia Sancti Ædmundi, quia nolebat præcipitare sententiam nec credere omni spiritui, sed ordine judicio procedere, sciens quod merita causarum partium assertionem panduntur, dicebatur quod nolebat facere justitiam alicui conquerenti, nisi intervenitu pecuniæ datæ vel promissæ; et quia erat ei aspectus acutus et pene-

decrees and decretal letters. And the result was that in a little while he was regarded as a discreet judge, by reason of the books which he had read and the causes which he had tried, and as one who proceeded in the cases which he tried according to the form of law. And for this cause one said, "Cursed be the court of this abbot, where neither gold nor silver profit me to confound my enemy!"

In course of time, he became somewhat skilled in temporal matters, being guided by his commonsense, for his mind was so subtle that all men wondered, and Osbert FitzHerbert, the under-sheriff, used to say, "This abbot is given to disputation; if he goes on as he has begun, he will blind us all, however many we be." But the abbot, being approved in these matters, was made a justice in eyre, though he kept himself from error and wandering. But "envy seeks out the highest." His men complained to him in the court of St. Edmund since he would not give judgment hastily or believe every spirit,<sup>55</sup> but proceeded in a judicial manner, knowing that the merits of the cases of suitors are made clear by discussion. It was said that he would not do justice to any complainant, un-

<sup>†</sup> Ovid. Rem. Am. 369.

<sup>71</sup> I. John iv., 1.

trans, et frons Catonis, raro blandiens, dicebatur magis declinare animum severitati quam benignitati; et, in misericordiis accipiendis pro aliqua forisfactura, dicebatur iudicium superexaltare misericordiam, quia, sicut visum fuit pluribus, cum perventum erat ad denarios capiendos, raro remittebat quod juste accipi potuit.

less money were given or promised; and because his aspect was acute and penetrating, and his face, like Cato's, rarely smiling, it was said that his mind lent rather to severity than to mercy. Moreover, when he took fines for any crime, it was said that judgment rejoiced against mercy,<sup>56</sup> for in the opinion of many, when it came to a matter of taking money, he rarely remitted that which he might lawfully take.

Sicut profecit sapientia, ita et providentia in rebus custodiendis et augendis et in expensis honorifice faciendis;

So his wisdom increased, as well as his care in managing affairs, and in improving his state, and in spending honourably.

*How some men made  
complaint against the  
abbot.*

sed ed hic multi detractores oblectaverunt, dicentes, quia accepit de sacristia quod voluit, propriis parcens denariis, permittens bladum suum jacere usque ad tempus caræ venditionis, et jacens ad maneria sua aliter quam prædecessores sui, onerans celerarium hospitibus ab abbate potius suscipiendis, per quod abbas posset dici sapiens et instauratus et providus in fine anni; conventus vero et obedientiales inscii et improvidi haberentur.

sed ed hic multi detractores oblectaverunt, dicentes, quia

But hereupon many of his adversaries raised objections. For they said that he received what he would from the sacristy, and spared his own money, and allowed his corn to lie in the barns until such time as the price should be high. They said that he managed his manors in a way different from that of his predecessors; that he burdened his cellarer with guests who should rather have been received by the abbot, so that the abbot might win repute as a wise man and one who was clever and provident at the end of the year, but the monastery and its officials be thought ignorant and wasteful.

Ad has detractationes solebam respondere, quod si de sacristia aliquid accipit, ad utilitatem ecclesiæ illud convertit; et hoc nullus invidus negare potuit. Et, ut verum fatear, multo maiora et plura bona fuerunt patrata ex oblationibus sacristiæ, infra xv. annos post electionem suam, quam quadraginta annis ante.

Aliis objectionibus, quod abbas jacebat ad maneria sua, respondere solebam et excusabam dicens, quia abbas magis est lætus et hilaris alibi quam domi; et hoc utique verum fuit, vel propter conquærentium multitudinem qui occurrebant, vel propter rumorum relatores, unde sæpius contigit quod, propter exhibitionem rigidi vultus sui, ab hospitibus suis multum perdidit favoris et gratiæ, licet eis in cibo et potu satisfecerit.

*How the author talked with the abbot concerning the sadness of his manner.*

ei a secretis dixi: “Duo sunt quæ multum miror de vobis;” et cum quæsisset quæ duo: “Unum est, quod adhuc in tali statu fovetis sententiam Melu-

To these charges I used to answer that if he took anything from the sacristy, he employed it for the use of the church; and that no envious person could deny this. And to speak the truth, much more good and much greater good was done with the offerings of the sacristy during the fifteen years after his election than in the forty years preceding.

To the others who objected that the abbot went often to his manors, I was wont to answer and to excuse him by saying that the abbot was happier and in better spirits anywhere than at home. This also was the truth, whether on account of the constant complaints which came to him, or on account of those who told him rumours concerning himself. Accordingly, it often happened that his appearance was stern, and that so he lost much favour and grace with the guests, though he satisfied them with food and drink.

But I noticed this, and taking a favourable occasion, as I was with him alone, said, “There are two things in you which make me marvel greatly.” And when he asked what they were, I said, “One is, that you, in the circumstances in which you are placed, favour the opinion of those of Melun<sup>57</sup> who say

<sup>72</sup>Cp. James ii., 13.

nensium, dicentium ex falso nichil sequi, et cætera frivola." Quibus cum ipse respondisset quod voluit, adjeci ego: "Aliud nimirum est quod domini non exhibetis vultum propitium sicut alibi, nec inter fratres<sup>†</sup> qui vos diligunt et dilexerunt et in dominum sibi elegerunt, sed raro estis inter eos, nec tunc congaudetis eis, sicut dicunt."

Quibus auditis, vultum mutavit, et demisso capite respondit: "Stultus es et stulte loqueris. Scire deberes quod Salomon ait: Filiæ tibi sunt multæ: vultum propitium ne ostendas eis." Ego vero tacui, de cetero ponens custodiam ori meo.

Alia tamen vice dixi: "Domine, audi vi te in hac nocte post matutinas vigilantem et valde suspirantem contra morem solitum." Qui respondit: "Non est mirum; particeps es bonorum meorum in cibo et potu, et equitaturis, et similibus, sed parum cogitas de procuratione domus et familiæ, de variis et arduis negotiis curæ pastoralis, quæ me sollicitant, quæ animum meum gementem et anxium faciunt." Quibus respondi, elevatis manibus ad cælum:

that from a false premiss nothing can follow, and other foolish things." And when he answered what he would to this, I added, "The other thing at which I marvel is that you do not show a smiling face at home as you do elsewhere, nor remain among the brothers who cherish you, and love you, and have chosen you to be their lord, but are rarely with them, nor do you then rejoice with them, so they say."

When he heard this, his expression changed, and he answered, with bowed head, "You are a fool, and speak as a fool. You should know the saying of Solomon, Hast thou many daughters; show not thyself cheerful toward them." Then I was silent, and from that time placed a guard on my lips.

Yet on another occasion I said, "Lord, I heard you this night keeping watch after matins and breathing heavily contrary to your wont." And he answered, "It is not strange. You share my good things, food, and drink, and riding, and the like. But you think little of the toil of providing for the house and household, of the many and arduous labours which are a pastor's care. These make me anxious, and cause me to groan and to be troubled in spirit." Thereupon I

<sup>73</sup> Peter Abelard founded a school of dialectic at Melun.

<sup>†</sup> "Manetis" desiderari videtur. (Roke.)

“Talem anxietatem<sup>†</sup> mihi, omnipotens et misericors Dominus.”

Audiui abbatem dicentem, quod si fuisset in eo statu quo fuit antequam monacharetur, et habuisset v. vel sex marcas redditus cum quibus sustentari possit in scholis, nunquam fieret monachus nec abbas. Alia vice dixit cum iuramento, quod, si præsvisisset quæ et quanta esset sollicitudo abbatiae custodiendæ, libentius voluisset fieri magister almarii et custos librorum, quam abbas et dominus. Illam utique obedientiam dixit præ omnibus aliis se semper desiderasse. Et quis talia crederet? Vix ego; nec etiam ego, nisi quia, cum eo vi. annis existens die ac nocte, vitæ scilicet meritum et sapientiæ doctrinam plenius agnoscerem.

*Concerning a dream which the abbot had when a boy.*

Narravit aliquando, quod, cum esset puer ix. annorum, somniavit se stare præ foribus cimiterii ecclesiæ Sancti Eadmundi, et diabolus expansis ulnis velle eum capere; sed sanctus Eadmundus, prope astans, recepit eum in brachiis suis; cumque clamaret somniando, “Sancte Ædmonde,

raised my hands to heaven and answered, “From so great anxiety, almighty and merciful Lord, deliver me!”

I heard the abbot say that if he were in that condition in which he had been before he became a monk, and had five or six marks income wherewith he might support himself in the schools, he would never become either monk or abbot. And on another occasion, he said with an oath that had he known beforehand what care there was in ruling an abbey, and how great that care was, he would far rather have been almoner or librarian, than abbot and lord. And he declared that he had ever longed for the post of librarian above all others. Yet who would believe such things? Not I; no, not I; but that as I lived with him day and night for six years, I know fully the merit of his life and the wisdom of his mind.

Once he told me how when he was a boy of nine years, he dreamed that he stood before the doors of the cemetery of St. Edmund, and that the devil wished to seize him with his outstretched arms. But the blessed Edmund, who stood near, received him into his arms; and when he had cried out in his sleep, “St. Edmund, help me!” though he had never heard the saint named

<sup>†</sup>“Aufur” desideratur (Roke.).

adjuva me,” quem nunquam prius audierat nominari, expergefactus est. Mater vero ejus de tanto et tali clamore obstupuit, quæ, audito somnio, duxit eum ad sanctum Eadmundum orationis gratia; cumque venissent ad portam cimiterii, dixit, “Mater mea, ecce locus! ecce eadem porta, quam in somnis vidi, quando diabolus volebat me accipere:” et cognovit locum, ut aiebat, ac si prius eum carnalibus oculis vidisset.

Abbas ipse exposuit somnium; significans per diabolum voluptatem hujus seculi quæ eum volebat allicere, sed sanctus Eadmundus eum amplexatus est, quando eum monachum ecclesiæ suæ fieri voluit.

*How the abbot restrained  
his temper that he might  
not offend.*

Quidam de conventu murmurassent de quodam facto ejus, dixit mihi assidenti: “Deus, Deus,” inquit ille, “multum expedit mihi memorare somnium illud quod somniatum est de me antequam fierem abbas, scilicet quod sævirem ut lupus. Certe hoc est quod super omnia mundana timeo, ne conventus meus aliquid faciat, unde me sævire oporteat; sed ita est, cum

before, he awoke. Then his mother was amazed at his loud cry and at his words. And when she had heard the dream, she took him to St. Edmund’s, that he might pray there. So coming to the gate of the cemetery, he said, “Mother mine! see this place! See, the very door which I beheld in my dreams, when the devil would have taken me.” And he knew the place, he said, as if he had already seen it with his carnal eye.

The abbot himself explained the dream, saying that the devil in it meant the joys of this world which would have enticed him; but that the blessed Edmund embraced him, since he would have him become a monk of his church.

Once when it was told him that certain of those in the monastery murmured on account of some act of his, he said to me, as I was near him, “God, God, it is most expedient that I should be mindful of that dream which was dreamed concerning me before I became abbot, to the effect that I should raven as a wolf. Of a truth, I fear this above all earthly things, that my house may do something which may make it lawful for me to raven. But so it is, that when they say or do aught against my will, I call to mind that dream, and though I



dicunt vel agunt aliquid contra voluntatem meam; recolo illud somnium, et licet sæviam in animo meo, occulte fremens et frendens, vim mihi facio ne sæviam verbo vel opere: et,

Strangulat inclusus dolor et cor  
æstuat intus.”<sup>†</sup>

Cum autem esset colericus naturaliter, et facile accenderetur ad iram, iram tamen ratione dignitatis cum magna lucta animi refrænabat sæpius. De qua etiam re aliquando se jactitabat dicens: “Hoc et illud vidi, hoc et illud audiui, et tamen patienter sustinui.”

*How the abbot forbade  
secret accusations, and how  
he ordered the restoration  
of all private seals.*

verba quibus videbatur efficaciter venari favorem conventus. “Nolo,” inquit, “ut aliquis veniat ad me ad accusandum alium, nisi palam idem dicere voluerit; quod si aliquis aliter fecerit, nomen accusantis palam manifestabo. Volo etiam ut quilibet claustralis liberum habeat accessum ad me, ut mecum loquatur de necessitate sua quando voluerit.” Illud autem dixit quia magnates nostri, tempore H. abbatis, volentes nichil agi in monaste-

raven in spirit, groaning and gnashing my teeth in secret, I put force on myself that I may raven neither in word nor in deed. And hidden grief chokes me, and my heart burns within me.”

But though he was naturally choleric and easily moved to wrath, yet from respect for his office he generally restrained his anger, albeit with much grief of mind. Of this also he often spoke, saying, “I have seen this and that, I have heard this and that, and yet have I borne it patiently.”

Once as he sat in the chapter, the abbot spoke certain words whereby he seemed to court the favour of the monastery with success. “I will not,” he said, “that any come to me to accuse other, unless he will declare the same openly. But if any desire to act otherwise, I will publicly announce the name of the accuser. And I will also that every monk shall have free access to me, that he may talk with me of his needs when he will.” Now this he said because the chief men of our house in the days of abbot Hugh, wishing nothing to be done in the monastery save through them, decreed that no cloistered

---

<sup>†</sup>Ovid. Trist. v. 1, 63.

rio nisi per eos, decreverunt nullum monachum claustralem debere loqui cum abbate, nisi prius ostenderet capellano abbatis quid et de qua re vellet loqui cum abbate.

Quodam die iussit in capitulo, ut quicumque sigillum proprium haberet, ei redderet; et ita factum est, et inventa sunt triginta tria sigilla. Rationem hujus præcepti ipse ostendit, prohibens ne aliquis officialis appruntaret aliquod debitum ultra xx. solidos, sine assensu prioris et conventus, sicut solebat fieri. Priori vero et sacristæ reddidit sigilla sua, et cætera retinuit.

*Concerning further regulations which the abbot made.*

Alia die, iussit sibi dari omnes claves ci-starum et almariorum et hanepariorum, prohibens ne de cetero aliquis haberet ci-stam nec aliquid obseratum, nisi per licentiam, nec alias aliquid possideret, nisi quod regula permetteret. Cuilibet tamen nostrum generaliter dedit licentiam habendi denarios usque ad duos solidos, si forte nobis caritative darentur; ita tamen ut in pauperes parentes vel in pios usus expenderentur.

monk should speak with the abbot, unless he had first shown to the abbot's chaplain that which he desired to say to the abbot and the reason.

One day he commanded in the chapter that all who had seals of their own should restore them to him, and so it was done; and thirty and three seals were found. He himself clearly declared the reason for this command, and forbade any official to contract any debt above the sum of twenty shillings without the consent of the prior and monastery, as had been wont to be done in the past. Then he restored the prior and sacristan their seals and retained the others.

At another time he ordered that all the keys of the chests, cupboards, and hampers should be given up to him, and forbade anyone henceforth to have any chest or anything locked up, save by permission, or to possess anything of any description except such things as the rule allowed. However, he gave general permission to all of us to have money to the value of two shillings, if perchance this should be given to us in charity. The leave was still conditional on the money being expended for the benefit of poor relations or in pious uses.

Alia vice, dixit abbas se velle conservare antiquas consuetudines nostras de hospitibus suscipiendis; scilicet, quando abbas est domi, ipse recipiet omnes hospites cujuslibet conditionis, præter viros religiosos, et præter presbyteros sæcularis habitus, et præter eorum homines, qui per eos se advocaverunt ad portam curiæ; si vero abbas non fuerit domi, omnes hospites cujuslibet conditionis recipiuntur a celerario usque ad tredecim equos. Si vero laicus vel clericus venerit cum pluribus equis quam tredecim, recipiuntur a servientibus abbatis, vel intra curiam vel extra, ad expensas abbatis. Omnes viri religiosi, etiam episcopi, si ipsi forte fuerint monachi, pertinent ad celerarium et ad expensas conventus, nisi abbas voluerit eum honorare, et ad expensas suas in sua aula recipere.

*Concerning the appearance and private character of the abbot.*

calvus, vultum habens nec rotundum nec oblongum, naso eminente, labiis grossis, oculis cristallinis et penetrantibus intuitus, auribus clarissimi auditus,

Abbas Samson mediocris erat staturæ, fere omnino

On another occasion the abbot said that he wished to maintain our ancient custom in the matter of the reception of guests, so that when the abbot was at home he should receive all guests of whatever condition, except religious men, and except priests of secular habit, and except their men, who should come to the doors of the court by instruction of their masters. If, however, the abbot should not be at home, all guests of whatever condition should be received by the cellarer, up to the number of thirteen horses. But if a layman or clerk should come with more than thirteen horses, they should be received by the servants of the abbot, either within or without the court, at the expense of the abbot. All religious men, even bishops, if by chance they were monks, were to be the care of the cellarer and entertained at the expense of the monastery, unless the abbot were desirous of showing them honour and of receiving them in his hall at his own expense.

Abbot Samson was below the average height, almost bald; his face was neither round nor oblong; his nose was prominent and his lips thick; his eyes were clear and his glance penetrating; his hearing was excellent; his eyebrows arched, and frequently shaded; and a little cold soon made him

superciliis in altum crescentibus et sæpe tonsis; ex parvo frigore cito raucus; die electionis suæ quadraginta et septem annos ætatis habens, et in monachatu decem et septem annos;<sup>†</sup> paucos canos habens in rufa barba, et paucissimos inter capillos nigros, et aliquantulum crispis; sed infra xiiii<sup>or</sup> annos post electionem suam totus albus efficitur sicut nix;

homo supersobrius, nunquam desidiosus, multum valens, et volens equitare vel pedes ire, donec senectus prævaluit, quæ talem voluntatem temperavit; qui, audito rumore de capta cruce et perditione Jerusalem, femoralibus cilicinis cœpit uti, et cilicio loco staminis, et carnibus et carneis abstinere; carnes tamen voluit sibi anteferri sedens ad mensam, ad augmentum scilicet elemosinæ. Lac dulce et mel et consimilia dulcia libentius quam cæteros cibos comedebat.

hoarse. On the day of his election he was forty-seven, and had been a monk for seventeen years.<sup>58</sup> In his ruddy beard there were a few grey hairs, and still fewer in his black and curling hair. But in the course of the first fourteen years after his election all his hair became white as snow.

He was an exceedingly temperate man; he possessed great energy and a strong constitution, and was fond both of riding and walking, until old age prevailed upon him and moderated his ardour in these respects. When he heard the news of the capture of the cross and the fall of Jerusalem,<sup>59</sup> he began to wear under garments made of horse hair, and a horse-hair shirt, and gave up the use of flesh and meat. None the less, he willed that flesh should be placed before him as he sat at table, that the alms might be increased. He ate sweet milk, honey, and similar sweet things, far more readily than any other food.

<sup>†</sup> This agrees sufficiently well with the statement of the unknown author of the MS., Harl. 447 (not John of Taxter, with whom Mr. Rokewode confounds him in his note on this passage), that Samson took the habit in 1166. If so, he was not a monk at the time of his mission to Rome during the schism of Octavian; *infra*, p. 252. This point has been discussed in the Introduction.

<sup>74</sup> The *Ann. St. Ed. (Mem. II., 5)* bear this out, as under 1166 there is an entry, "Abbot Samson was made a monk." (Cp. *Mem. I., xliv.*)

<sup>75</sup> Jerusalem was taken by Saladin on October 2nd, 1187.

Mendaces et ebriosos et verbosos odio habuit; quia virtus sese diligit, et aspernatur contrarium. Murmuratores cibi et potus, et præcipue monachos murmuratores condemnans, tenorem antiquum conservans quem olim habuit dum claustralis fuit; hoc autem virtutis in se habuit quod nunquam ferculum coram eo positum voluit mutare. Quod cum ego novicius vellem probare si hoc esset verum, forte servivi in refectorio, et cogitavi penes me ut ponerem coram eo ferculum quod omnibus aliis displiceret in disco nigerri-  
mo et fracto. Quod cum ipse vidisset, tanquam non videns erat; facta autem mora, pœnituit me hoc fecisse, et statim, arrepto disco, ferculum et discum mutavi in melius et asportavi; ille vero emendationem talem moleste tulit, iratus et turbatus.

Homo erat eloquens, Gallice et Latine, magis ratione dicendorum quam ornatui verborum innitens. Scripturam Anglice scriptam legere novit elegantissime, et Anglice sermocinari solebat populo, sed secundum linguam Norfolchiæ, ubi natus et nutritus erat, unde et pulpitem iussit fieri in ecclesia et ad utilitatem audientium et ad decorem ecclesiæ.

He hated liars, drunkards, and talkative persons; for virtue ever loves itself and spurns that which is contrary to it. He blamed those who grumbled about their meat and drink, and especially monks who so grumbled, and personally kept to the same manners which he had observed when he was a cloistered monk. Moreover, he had this virtue in himself that he never desired to change the dish which was placed before him. When I was a novice, I wished to prove whether this was really true, and as I happened to serve in the refectory, I thought to place before him food which would have offended any other man, in a very dirty and broken dish. But when he saw this, he was as it were blind to it. Then, as there was some delay, I repented of what I had done, and straightway seized the dish, changed the food and dish for better, and carried it to him. He, however, was angry at the change, and disturbed.

He was an eloquent man, speaking both French and Latin, but rather careful of the good sense of that which he had to say than of the style of his words. He could read books written in English very well, and was wont to preach to the people in English, but in the dialect of Norfolk where he was born and bred. It was for this reason that he ordered a pulpit to be placed in the church.

ch, for the sake of those who heard him and for purposes of ornament.

Videbatur quoque abbas activam vitam magis diligere quam contemplativam, qui bonos obedientiales magis commendavit quam bonos claustrales; et raro aliquem propter solam scientiam literarum approbavit, nisi haberet scientiam rerum sæcularium; et cum audiret forte aliquem prælatum cedere oneri pastoralis et fieri anachoritam, in hoc eum non laudavit. Homines nimis benignos laudare noluit, dicens: "Qui omnibus placere nititur, nulli placere debet."

*How abbot Samson dealt  
with flatterers.*

Primo ergo anno susceptæ abbatiae omnes adulescentes quasi odio habuit, et maxime monachos; sed in processu temporis videbatur eos quasi libentius audire et magis familiares habere. Unde contigit quod, cum quidam frater noster, hac arte peritus, curvasset genua ante eum, et sub obtentu consilii dandi auribus ejus adulationis oleum infudisset, subrisi ego stans a longe; eo vero recedente, vocatus et interrogatus quare riserim, respondi, mundum plenum esse adulatoribus.

The abbot further appeared to prefer the active to the contemplative life, and praised good officials more than good monks. He rarely commended anyone solely on account of his knowledge of letters, unless the man happened to have knowledge of secular affairs, and if he chanced to hear of any prelate who had given up his pastoral work and become a hermit, he did not praise him for this. He would not praise men who were too kindly, saying, "He who strives to please all men, deserves to please none."

Now in the first year of his abbacy he seemed to hate all flatterers, and especially those who were monks. But in course of time he appeared to listen to them with some willingness, and to treat them more graciously. Once a certain one of our brothers, who was skilled in this art, had bent his knees before him, and under pretence of giving him counsel, had poured the oil of flattery into his ears, while I stood at a distance and smiled. Then when the brother had gone, the abbot called me and asked me why I had been smiling, and I answered that the world was full of flatterers.

Et abbas; “Fili mi, diu est quod adula-  
tores novi, et ideo non possum adula-  
tores non audire. Multa sunt simulanda  
et dissimulanda, ad pacem conventus  
conservandam. Audiam eos loqui,  
sed non decipient me, si possum, sicut  
prædecessorem meum, qui consilio eo-  
rum ita inconsulte credidit, quod diu  
ante obitum suum nichil habuit quod  
manducaret vel ipse vel familia sua,  
nisi a creditoribus mutuo acceptum;  
nec erat quod distribui potuit paupe-  
ribus die sepulturæ ejus, nisi quinquaginta  
solidos, qui recepti erant a Ri-  
cardo firmario de Palegrava, hac occa-  
sione quod eadem die intravit firmam  
de Palegrava; quos denarios idem Ri-  
cardus alia vice reddidit bailivis regis,  
integram firmam exigentibus ad opus  
regis.” His dictis confortatus fui.

*How abbot Samson  
managed his household.*

Ille vero stu-  
duit discipli-  
natam do-  
mum habere, et familiæ magnitudi-  
nem sed necessariam, providens sibi  
quod firma ebdomadæ, quæ prædeces-  
sori suo non sufficiebat ad expensam  
v. dierum, ei suffecit octo diebus, vel  
novem, vel decem, si esset ad maneria

And the abbot said, “My son, I have  
been flattered for a long while, and there-  
fore I cannot attend to flattery. There  
must be much pretence and much  
concealment that the peace of the mo-  
nastery may be preserved. I will hear  
them speak, but they will not deceive  
me, if I can prevent it, as they decei-  
ved my predecessor, who gave such  
unconsidered attention to them that  
for a long while before his death he  
had nothing wherewith to feed him-  
self or his household, save that which  
he borrowed from creditors. And on  
the day of his burial there was nothing  
which could be distributed among the  
poor, save fifty shillings which were  
received from Richard the tenant of  
Palgrave, because on the same day he  
entered on the tenancy of Palgrave;  
and this money the same Richard af-  
terwards paid again to the officials of  
the king, who exacted the full rent for  
the royal use.” And with these words  
I was reassured.

He laboured to secure a well regula-  
ted house, and a household large, but  
not larger than was right, and he took  
care that the weekly allowance which  
in the time of his predecessor had not  
been enough for five days, should last  
him for eight days, or nine, or ten, if he  
were on his manors and there were no  
great coming of guests. Every week,

sua sine magno adventu hospitum. Singulis vero ebdomadis, computationem expensæ suæ domus audiebat, non per vicarium, sed in propria persona, quod antecessor ejus nunquam solebat facere.

Septem annis primis quatuor fercula<sup>†</sup> in domo sua, postea nisia<sup>‡</sup> tria, præter xenia et præter venationem de parcis suis, vel pisces de vivariis suis. Et si forte aliquem retinuit ad tempus in domo sua prece alicujus potentis vel alicujus familiaris, vel nuncios, vel citharædos, vel aliquem hujusmodi, nacta opportunitate transfretandi vel longe eundi, a talibus superfluis se prudenter exoneravit.

*How the abbot treated  
those monks with whom he  
had been intimate before he  
became abbot.*

susceptam magis dilectos et magis familiares, raro promovit ad obedientias occasione pristinæ familiaritatis, nisi essent idonei; unde quidam ex nostris, qui ei erant propitii ad eligendum eum abbatem, dixerunt eum minus quam deceret diligere eos, qui eum antequam fuerat abbas dilexerant, et eos plus ab eo amari, qui eum et aperte

moreover, he audited the expenses of his house, not through an agent, but in person, a thing which his predecessor had never been accustomed to do.

For his first seven years he had four dishes in his house, afterwards only three, if one excludes presents, and game from his parks and fish from his ponds. And if he happened to keep anyone for a while in his house at the request of some great man or of one of his friends, or messengers, or minstrels, or any such person, he used to take any opportunity of crossing the sea or going a long journey, and so prudently freed himself from so great expense.

Monachos vero, quos socios abbas habuit ante abbatiam

Those monks whom the abbot, before he acquired the abbacy, had treated as his most cherished and intimate friends, he seldom raised to official positions on the score of his former intimacy with them, unless they were fit persons. Therefore some of our number, who had favoured his election as abbot, said that he showed them less favour than was their due, who had loved him before he was abbot, and that those rather were cherished by him who had slandered him both openly

<sup>†</sup>“Sumpsit” desiderari videtur.

<sup>‡</sup>= *non nisi*.



et occulte depravaverunt, et eum hominem iracundum, non socialem, paltenarium et baratorem de Norfolch, etiam in audientia multorum, publice nominaverunt. Verum, sicut ille pristinis amicis suis nihil amoris vel honoris indiscrete exhibuit post susceptionem abbatiae sic et pluribus aliis pro meritis suis nichil rancoris vel odii exhibuit, bonum aliquando reddens pro malo, et benefaciens persequentibus eum.

Habuit etiam in consuetudine quiddam quod nunquam vidi hominem habere, scilicet quod multos affectuose dilexit, quibus nunquam vel raro vulum amoris exhibuit; hoc quod vulgus clamat, dicens, "Ubi amor ibi oculus." Et aliud mirum fuit, quod damnum suum in temporalibus a servientibus suis scienter sustinuit, et se sustinere confessus est: sed, sicut credo, hoc fuit in causa, ut congruum tempus expectaret quo rem consultius emendaret, vel ut majus damnum dissimulando evitaret.

*How the abbot treated his relations.*

Parentes suos mediocriter dilexit, nec mi-

and secretly, and in the hearing of many had publicly declared him to be a hot-tempered man, one who was unsociable, conceited, and a Norfolk cheat. But, just as after he received the abbacy he made no injudicious exhibition of affection or of a desire to honour his former friends, so also he did not show towards the others any of that rancour or hatred which they deserved, returning good for evil on many occasions, and doing good to those who persecuted him.

He had also a characteristic which I have never seen in any other man, namely, that he had a strong affection for many to whom he never or seldom showed a loving face, which the common saying declares to be usual, when it says, "Where love is, there the glance follows." And there was another noteworthy thing, that he wittingly suffered loss from his servants in temporal matters, and allowed that he suffered it; but, as I believe, the reason for this was that he waited for a fit season when the matter might be conveniently remedied, or that by concealing his knowledge he might avoid greater loss.

For his relations he displayed moderate affection, but yet no less tender than that which others are wont to show,

nus vero tenere sicut alii solent; quia nullum infra tertium gradum habuit, vel habere simulavit. Sed audiui eum dicentem quod habuit parentes nobiles et generosos, quos nunquam imperpetuum ut parentes cognosceret; quia, ut aiebat, plus essent ei oneri quam honori, si hoc scirent; sed eos voluit consanguineos habere qui eum consanguineum habuerunt quando fuit pauper claustralis.

Quosdam eorum, (eos secundum quod sibi utiles et idoneos æstimavit) diversis officiis in domo sua, quosdam villis custodiendis, deputavit. Quos autem infideles probavit, a se elongavit, sine spe redeundi.

Quendam hominem mediæ manus,<sup>†</sup> qui patrimonium ejus fideliter servaverat, et ei juveni devote servierat, pro caro consanguineo habuit, et filio ejus clerico primam ecclesiam in abbazia sibi commissa vacantem dedit, et cæteros filios ejus omnes promovit.

since he had no relatives within the third degree, or pretended that he had not. I have, however, heard him assert that he had relations who were noble and distinguished, but that he would never at any time recognise them as relations. For, as he said, they would be rather a burden than a source of advantage to him if they knew of their relationship. On the other hand, he wished to have as kin those who had claimed kinship with him when he was a poor cloistered monk.

Some of his relations, in cases where he thought them useful and capable men, he appointed to various offices in his house, and others he entrusted with the wardenship of manors. But any whom he proved to be unfaithful he drove far from him, without hope of return.

He held as his dear kinsman a certain man of low birth, who had managed his inheritance faithfully and served him devotedly in his boyhood. To this man's son, who was a clerk, he gave the first church which fell vacant after his accession to the abbacy, and he also promoted all the man's other sons.

---

<sup>†</sup> Of lowly station.

*How the abbot was mindful  
of those who had shown  
kindness to him in the past,  
and how he treated those  
who had been harsh.*

Capell anum  
quendam, qui  
eum sustinue-  
rat in scholis  
Parisius quæ-  
stu aquæ benedictæ, quando pauper  
fuerat, mandari fecit, et ei ecclesiasti-  
cum beneficium quo sustentari possit,  
affectu vicario, contulit.

Cuidam servienti prædecessoris sui  
victum et vestitum concessit omnibus  
diebus vitæ suæ, qui imposuerat ei  
compedes ad præceptum domini sui,  
quando fuit positus in carcere.

Filio Eliæ, pincernæ Hugonis abbatis,  
facienti ei homagium de terra patris  
sui, dixit in plena curia: “Distuli jam  
capere homagium tuum vij. annis de  
terra quam H. abbas dedit patri tuo,  
quia illud donum erat in detrimentum  
aulæ de Elmeswell: modo victus sum,  
memor beneficii quod pater tuus mihi  
fecit quando in vinculis eram, quia mi-  
sit mihi portionem de ipso vino quod  
dominus suus biberat, mandando ut  
confortarer in Deo.”

There was a certain chaplain who had  
maintained him in the schools of Paris  
by the sale of holy water,<sup>60</sup> when he  
was poor. This man the abbot caused  
to be summoned to him, and confer-  
red on him an ecclesiastical benefice,  
with the position of vicar, whereby he  
might be supported.

He granted to a certain servant of his  
predecessor food and clothing for all  
the days of his life, this man being he  
who had placed fetters on him at the  
command of his lord when he was im-  
prisoned.

When FitzElias,<sup>61</sup> the cup-bearer of ab-  
bot Hugh, came to do him homage for  
his father's land, the abbot said to him  
in open court, “I have delayed now for  
seven years to receive your homage  
for the land which abbot Hugh gave to  
your father, since that gift was to the  
detriment of the manor of Elmswell.  
Now I give way, since I am mindful of  
the good which your father did to me  
when I was in bonds. For he sent to me  
some of the very wine which his lord  
drank, with a message that I should be

---

<sup>60</sup>It was common practice to devote the money derived from the sale of holy water to the support of poor clerks. The synod of Exeter (1287) definitely provided that such profits should be so spent. (*Mem. I.*, 247, note b.)

<sup>61</sup>As to grants of land to Elias, by abbot Hugh, see Rokewode (p. 122). The total amounted to one hundred and forty acres, of which sixty were in Elmswell.

of good courage in God.”

Magistro Waltero, filio magistri Willelmi de Dice, petenti caritative vicariam ecclesiæ de Cheventona, respondit: “Pater tuus magister scholarum erat; et cum pauper clericus eram, concessit mihi introitum scholæ suæ sine pacto et caritative, et usum discendi; et ego, causa Dei, concedo tibi quod postulas.”

When master William, son of master William of Diss,<sup>62</sup> asked of his grace for the vicarage of the church of Chevington, he answered, “Your father was master of the schools, and when I was a poor clerk he allowed me to enter the school without terms and of his grace, and to have the opportunity of learning. And I, for the sake of God, grant you that which you ask.”

Duos etiam milites de Risebi, Willelmum et Normannum, cum iudicati essent forte in misericordia ejus, ita allocutus est coram omnibus; “Cum essem monachus claustralis missus Dunelmiam pro negotiis ecclesiæ nostræ, et illinc in redeundo per Risebi, vespere obscuro interceptus, petissem hospitium a domino Normanno, omnino repulsam sustinui; domum vero domini Willelmi adiens et hospitium postulans, ab eo honorifice susceptus sum: et ideo xx. solidos, scilicet misericordiam, sine misericordia, integram recipiam a Normanno; Willelmo autem gratias ago, et debitam miserationem xx. solidorum gratanter remitto.”

Two knights also from Risby, William and Norman, were by chance judged to be at his mercy, and he thus addressed them in the presence of all: “When I was a cloistered monk, I was sent to Durham on the business of our church. And as I was returning thence by way of Risby, I was overtaken by a dark night, and sought entertainment from the lord Norman, but suffered an absolute denial. Then I went to the house of lord William and prayed for lodging, and was honourably received by him. For this cause I will take twenty shillings, the full penalty, without pity, from Norman; but I give thanks to William, and gladly remit the due penalty of twenty shillings.”

---

<sup>78</sup> This is the compiler of the passage which appears at the end of Jocelin's *Chronicle* (see note to p. 153).

*Concerning other good acts  
of abbot Samson.*

Quædam juven-  
cula vir-  
guncula, ostia-  
tim victum quærens, conquesta est  
abbati, quod unus ex filiis Ricardi filii  
Drogonis eam vi oppresserat; quæ  
tandem, procurante abbate, pro bono  
pacis unam marcam accepit. Abbas  
autem iij<sup>or</sup> marcas accepit ab eodem  
R. pro concessione concordie; sed  
omnes illas v. marcas jussit dari sta-  
tim cuidam mercatori, hoc pacto, ut  
præfatam pauperulam duceret in  
uxorem.

*Before A.D. 1198.*

In villa Sancti  
Ædmundi do-  
mos lapideas emit abbas, et eas sco-  
larum regimini assignavit, hac occa-  
sione, ut pauperes clerici in perpe-  
tuum ibi quieti essent de conductio-  
ne domus, ad quam conducendam de-  
narium vel obolum singuli scolares,  
tam impotentes quam potentes, bis in  
anno conferre cgebantur.

*How the Jews were driven  
from Saint Edmund's.*  
A.D. 1190.

Recuperatio  
manerii de  
Mildenhala  
pro mille mar-  
culis argenti et centum, et ejectio Ju-

A certain young girl, who was begging  
her bread from door to door, made  
complaint to the abbot that one of the  
sons of Richard FitzDrogo had assaul-  
ted her. This wrong, by the abbot's  
intervention, was at last settled for the  
sake of peace by the acceptance of one  
mark by the girl. The abbot further  
took four marks from the said Richard  
for leave to compound for his offence.  
But all these five marks he ordered to  
be given at once to a certain pedlar, on  
condition that he should marry the  
poor girl.

In the town of St. Edmund's the ab-  
bot bought stone houses, and appoin-  
ted them for the maintenance of the  
schools.<sup>63</sup> His reason for so doing was  
that thus the poor clerks might there  
be for ever free from paying rent for  
houses. Hitherto, for the payment of  
the rent, all the scholars, poor and rich  
alike, had been compelled to contri-  
bute a penny or a halfpenny twice a  
year.

The recovery of the manor of Milde-  
nhall for one thousand one hundred  
silver marks, and the expulsion of the  
Jews<sup>64</sup> from the town of St. Edmund's,  
and the foundation of a new hospital

<sup>79</sup>The date of the foundation of the school by abbot Samson is uncertain. But as there is a grant to the master in 1198, the foundation was probably made early in the abbacy of Samson. (Cp. Rokewode, p. 123.)

deorum de villa Sancti Ædmundi, et fundatio novi hospitalis de Babbewell, magnæ probitatis sunt indicia. at Babwell, were signs of great virtue.

Dominus abbas petiit a rege literas ut Judei ejicerentur<sup>†</sup> a villa Sancti Ædmundi, allegans quod quicquid est in villa Sancti Ædmundi, vel infra *ban-namleucam*, de jure Sancti Ædmundi est; ergo, vel Judei debent esse homines Sancti Ædmundi, vel de villa sunt ejiciendi. Data est ergo licentia, ut eos ejiceret, ita tamen quod haberent omnia katalla, scilicet et pretia domorum suarum et terrarum. Et cum emissi essent, et armata manu conducti ad diversa oppida, abbas jussit sollempniter The lord abbot sought letters from the king that the Jews might be expelled from the town of St. Edmund's, asserting that whatever is in the town of the blessed Edmund, or within the district subject to the jurisdiction of the monastery, belongs of right to the Saint, and that consequently the Jews ought either to be the men of St. Edmund, or else be driven from the town. Leave, therefore, was given to him to eject them, provided that they should have all their chattels, as well as the value

<sup>80</sup> Arnold (*Mem. I.*, 249, note) points out that, in the absence of any royal castle to which the Jews might retire for safety, their expulsion was really in their own interests. They would otherwise be always liable to massacre, and especially at this particular time, which was marked by an outburst of fanaticism against the Jews, who were massacred in many towns, especially at York. Diceto (*II.*, 75–6) mentions the massacre of fifty-seven Jews at St. Edmund's on Palm Sunday, 1190.

<sup>†</sup> Under the circumstances, this must have been the most humane course in the interest of the Jews themselves. All large English towns at this time were imperfectly policed, and the temper of the populace savage and uncertain. A riot having been once set on foot, the only hope of safety for the Jews was in taking refuge in some royal castle. Thus at Norwich, where there was a massacre of Jews about this time (Feb. 6, Diceto), those of them who were found in private houses perished; those who escaped to the castle were safe. So at Lincoln, the rumour of an intended attack having come to their ears, the Jews of the town sought shelter in the “*munitio regia*” (*Newb. iv. 9*) and saved their lives. At York, where the hideous tragedy of their fate was on so large a scale as to attract the notice of history, the Jews, having been admitted into the castle, would have escaped with life but for their own suspicious folly, which led them to shut the gates against the governor, when for some cause he had gone outside the walls. But at Lynn in January, and at Stamford on the 7th March, there being no royal castle at either place, the resident Jews had been killed and plundered with impunity. At Bury itself (*Harl. 1032*, sub an. 1090; Diceto, 651) there was a murderous outbreak on Palm Sunday (March 18) in which, according to Diceto, fifty-seven Jews perished. There was no castle at Bury; to the abbot alone could the survivors look for protection; and Samson knew that he had not sufficient force at his command to ensure it to them. To banish them therefore was the best thing that could be done.

excommunicari per omnes ecclesias et ad omnia altaria omnes illos, qui de cetero receptarent Judeos vel in hospitio reciperent in villa Sancti Ædmundi. Quod tamen postea dispensatum est per justiciaries regis, scilicet, ut si Judei venerint ad magna placita abbatis ad exigendum debita sua a debitoribus suis, sub hac occasione poterunt duobus diebus et ij. noctibus hospitari in villa, tertio autem die libere discedent.

of their houses and lands. And when they were sent forth, and under armed force were conducted to various towns, the abbot ordered that in every church and before every altar those should be solemnly excommunicated who should henceforth receive Jews or entertain them as guests in the town of St. Edmund's. This provision was afterwards modified by the justices of the king, to the effect that if Jews should come to the great pleas of the abbot in order to exact debts due to them from their debtors, then for this reason they might be entertained for two days and two nights in the town, and depart in peace on the third day.

*How the abbot secured the manor of Mildenhall, and endowed the hospital at Babwell.*  
A.D. 1189 September.

Abbas optulit regi Ricardo quingentas marcas pro manerio de Mildenhala, dicens illud manerium lx. librarum et decem, et pro tanto esse rollatum in magna rolla de Wincestria.<sup>†</sup> Et cum ita spem voti sui con-

The abbot offered king Richard five hundred marks for the manor of Mildenhall,<sup>65</sup> saying that the annual value of that manor was seventy pounds, and that it had been enrolled for that amount in the great roll of Winchester.<sup>66</sup> And when he thought that he would obtain his desire in this matter, the settlement of the affair was

<sup>81</sup> This manor was in the hands of the Crown in Domesday. It had, however, been granted to St. Edmund by the charter of Edward the Confessor, and was held by a certain Stigand during the life of Edward (*Mem.* I., 48 and 250, note *a*; cp. *Monasticon* III., 188). The present transaction is related by Benedictus (II., 91; cp. Hoveden, III., 18) "And Samson, abbot of St. Edmund's, bought from King Richard the manor, which is called Mildenhall, for one thousand marks, because it was said to have belonged originally to the abbey of St. Edmund's."

<sup>†</sup> Domesday Book; the returns forming the basis of which "were transmitted to a board sitting at Winchester, by whom they were arranged in order and placed upon record": Lingard, i. 249.

<sup>82</sup> That is, Domesday Book.

postponed to the following day. In the interval there came one to the king and told him that the manor was worth quite one hundred pounds. And so when the abbot urged his request on the morrow, the king said to him, "My lord abbot, it is useless for you to make this petition to me. Either you shall give me a thousand marks, or you shall not have the manor."

But queen Eleanor, who according to the custom of the realm, had the right to receive a hundred marks when the king received a thousand,<sup>67</sup> took from us a great gold chalice of the value of a hundred marks, and restored this same chalice to us for the good of the soul of king Henry her lord, who had originally given it to St. Edmund.

At a later date, when the treasure of our church was carried to London for the ransom of king Richard,<sup>68</sup> the queen redeemed the same chalice<sup>69</sup> for a hundred marks and restored it to us, and received from us a charter in proof of our promise, made on the word of tru-

<sup>83</sup>This was the "aurum reginae" or queen-gold, a due of ten per cent., to be paid by everyone who made a gift to the king. (Blackstone, quoted by Arnold, *Mem.* I., 250, note c.)



nobis in testimonium promissionis nostræ factæ in verbo veritatis, quod calicem illum nunquam pro aliquo casu ab ecclesia nostra alienabimus.

A.D. 1198

Cum autem persoluta esset tanta pecunia cum magna difficultate adquisita, sedit abbas in capitulo, dicens se habere aliquam portionem de tanto quæstu tanti manerii. Et responsum est a conventu quod hoc justum est, et ad voluntatem vestram fiat. Et dixit abbas, se posse vindicare de jure dimidiam partem, ostendens se plusquam cccc. marcas cum magnis laboribus expendisse, sed dixit se esse contentum quadam portione illius manerii, quæ dicitur Icklingham; quod concessum est ei libentissime a conventu. Abbas vero hoc audiens,

th, that we would never for any reason alienate that chalice from our church.

Now when this large sum of money had been collected with great difficulty and had been paid, the abbot, sitting in the chapter, said that he ought to share somewhat in so great an acquisition as that of so fair a manor. And the monastery answered, "That is just. Let it be done according to your will." And the abbot said that he might lawfully claim half of it, and showed that he had spent more than four hundred marks with great labour, but that he would be content with one portion of that manor, a place called Icklingham, and this was most readily granted to him by the monastery. Hearing this,

<sup>‡</sup>The exaction of a heavy ransom by a German emperor (Henry VI.) from an adversary who had fallen under his power, like the substantially similar transaction in 1871, was conducted with all the forms of courtesy. The sum demanded was 70,000 marks; and Richard declared (in the letter to his mother written from Hagenau on the 19th April 1193, in obedience to which St. Edmund's and all other monasteries in the kingdom handed over their gold and silver to royal commissioners), that the treaty of amity which he had concluded with the emperor was worth all the money, and that if he were free and at home in England, he would voluntarily pay as much or more money to obtain such a treaty! (Hoved. iii. 209).

\*"The Queen's release of the golden chalice is set forth in the Registr. Sac., fol. 29 v., and is printed in Dugdale" (Rokewode).

<sup>84</sup>Richard was ransomed from Henry VI., for 100,000 marks of silver "according to the standard of Koln." (Hoveden, III., 215-6. Diceto, II., 110.) The demands made on the clergy and laity may be found in Hoveden (III., 208 ff). All the monasteries were obliged to hand over their gold and silver, which was placed in the hands of royal commissioners appointed to superintend the raising of the ransom. (Hoveden, III., 210.)

<sup>85</sup>The charter of release is printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon* (Ed. 1846; Vol. III., 154).

dixit: “Et ego illam partem terræ recipio ad meum opus, non ut retineam in manu mea, vel ut parentibus meis donem, sed pro anima mea et pro animabus vestris communiter dono illam novo hospitali de Babbewell, in sustentationem pauperum et usum hospitalitatis.” Dixit, et ita factum est, et carta regis postea confirmatum.

the abbot said, “And I receive that portion of the land for my own purposes, not that I may keep it in my hand or to give it to my relations, but that for the good of my soul and of the souls of all of you, I give it to the new hospital at Babwell,<sup>70</sup> for the support of the poor and for the use of the hospital.” So he spoke, and so it was done, and the act was afterwards confirmed by a charter from the king.<sup>71</sup>

Hæc et consimilia facta, scriptis et laudibus æternanda, fecit abbas Samson. Nichil tamen se dixit agere, nisi posset facere in diebus suis dedicari ecclesiam nostram; post quod factum, asseruit se velle mori: ad cuius facti sollemnitatem dixit se esse paratum expendere duo milia marcas argenti, dummodo dominus rex ibi esset præsens, et res debito honore peragi possit.

These and other like things did abbot Samson, which are worthy to be written down and to be praised for all time. Yet he declared that he would have done nothing, unless in his time he could bring to pass that our church should be dedicated; and when that had been accomplished, he asserted that he was ready to die. Moreover, he said that for the doing of this thing he would expend two thousand marks of silver, if so the king might be present and the affair carried through with due ceremony.

*Concerning the church of Woolpit, and how it was secured for the abbey.*  
A.D. 1183

Nuntiatum est abbati, quod ecclesia de Wlpet vaca-

The abbot learnt that the church of Woolpit was vacant, for Walter of Coutances<sup>72</sup> had been elected to the bishopric of Lincoln. And presently he summoned together the prior and

<sup>86</sup> Traces of this are to be found in a small ruin near the railway bridge on the Thetford road. (Arnold, *Mem. I.*, 252, note *a*.)

<sup>87</sup> On this charter, see Rokewode (p. 124–5).

ret, Waltero de Constantiis<sup>†</sup> electo ad episcopatum de Lincolnia. Mox convocavit priorem et magnam partem conventus, et incipiens narrationem suam, et<sup>‡</sup> ait: “Bene scitis quod multum laboravi propter ecclesiam de Wlpet, propter quam habendam in proprios usus vestros iter arripui versus Romam per consilium vestrum, tempore scismatis inter papam Alexandrum et Octavianum, transivique per Italiam, illa tempestate qua omnes clerici qui portabant literas domini papæ Alexandri capiebantur, et quidam incarcerationantur, quidam suspendebantur, quidam, truncatis naso et labiis, remittebantur ad papam in dedecus et confusionem ipsius. Ego vero simulavi me esse Scottum, et Scotti habitum induens, et gestum

most of the monastery, and taking up his tale, said: “You know well what great labours I have undergone in the matter of the church of Woolpit, and how to secure it for your exclusive use I journeyed to Rome by your advice, in the days of the schism between Alexander and Octavian.<sup>73</sup> And I traversed Italy at the time when all clerks bearing letters of pope Alexander were seized, some of them being imprisoned and others hanged, and others, after having their noses and lips cut off, were sent back to the pope to his shame and confusion. I, however, pretended that I was a Scot,<sup>74</sup> and put on Scottish dress, and adopted the manners of a Scot. And I often shook my staff as they shake the weapon which they call a gaveloc at those who moc-

<sup>†</sup>Walter of Coutances, who, when archdeacon of Oxford, had been one of the witnesses to Henry II's will, was elected to Lincoln in July 1183, and consecrated in France, by Richard, archbishop of Canterbury. In the following year he was made archbishop of Rouen. Many interesting letters from him to Ralph de Diceto, dean of London, are preserved in the *Ymagines Historiarum* of the latter.

<sup>88</sup>Elected bishop of Lincoln and consecrated in 1183. In the next year he was translated to Rouen. He was one of Richard I's most trusted servants, and was sent to England to settle the disputes which arose between Longchamp and John after the departure of Richard on the crusade. He died in 1207.

<sup>‡</sup>*Sic.*

<sup>89</sup>On the death of Adrian IV., in 1159, Cardinal Roland was elected by a majority only, and took the name of Alexander III. The imperialist party, however, declared Cardinal Octavian pope under the name of Victor IV. Octavian was supported by the citizens of Rome and by the emperor, and recognised by the imperial synod of Pavia. Alexander took refuge in France. Victor died (1164) without the dispute having been finally settled. (Cp. Gregorovius, *City of Rome in the Middle Ages* (Eng. trans.) Vol. IV, p. 563 ff.)

<sup>90</sup>Arnold (*Mem. I.*, xliii.) gives as the reason for Samson's action the fact that Scotland favoured the party of Octavian, in opposition to the English support of Alexander.

Scotti habens, sæpe illis qui mihi il-  
ludebant baculum meum excussi, ad  
modum teli quod vocatur *gaveloc*, de  
more Scottorum voces comminatorias  
proferens. Obviantibus et interrogan-  
tibus, quis essem, nichil respondi, nisi:  
'*Ride, ride Rome, turne Cantwereberei.*'  
Sic feci, ut me et propositum meum  
celarem,

Tutius et peterem, Scotti sub  
imagine, Romam.

Impetratis autem literis a domino pa-  
pa pro voto meo, in redeundo transivi  
per quoddam castellum, sicut via mea  
ducebat ab urbe; et ecce ministri de  
castro circumdederunt me, capientes  
et dicentes: 'Iste solivagus, qui Scot-  
tum se facit, vel explorator est, vel por-  
titor literarum falsi papæ Alexandri.'  
Et dum perscrutabantur panniculos  
meos et caligas, et femoralia, et etiam  
sotulares veteres, quos super humeros  
portavi ad consuetudinem Scottorum,  
injeci manum meam in peram quam  
portavi cuteam, in qua scriptum do-  
mini papæ continebatur, positum sub  
ciffo parvo, quo bibere solebam: et Do-  
mino Deo volente, et sancto Ædmun-  
do, simul extraxi scriptum illud cum  
ciffo, ita quod, brachium extendens in  
altum, breve tenui sub ciffo. Ciffum

ked me, shouting threatening words  
in the manner of the Scots. To those  
who met me and asked me who I was,  
I answered nothing except, 'Ride, ride  
Rome, turne Cantwereberei.'<sup>75</sup> I acted  
thus that so I might conceal my pur-  
pose, and as a Scot might safely reach  
Rome. Then when I had obtained  
from the lord pope such letters as I de-  
sired, on my homeward way I passed  
by a certain castle as the road led me  
from the city. And, lo! the officers of  
the castle surrounded me, laying hold  
on me, and crying, 'This wanderer,  
who makes himself out to be a Scot, is  
either a spy or one bearing letters of  
the false pope Alexander.' And while  
they closely examined my clothes and  
boots and undergarments, and even  
the old shoes, which I carried on my  
shoulders in the Scottish manner, I  
put my hand into the little bag which  
I carried, and in which the letter of  
the lord pope was contained, lying  
under a little cup from which I was  
wont to drink. And the Lord God and  
St. Edmund willing it, I drew out the  
writing and the cup together, so that,  
stretching my hand on high, I held the  
writ underneath the cup. And they  
saw the cup, it is true, but they did not  
notice the writ. And so I escaped their

<sup>75</sup> Arnold (*Ibid.*, note 1) gives as the meaning of this, "I am riding towards Rome, turning from Canterbury." He adds, "If he had meant to say, 'returning from Canterbury,' he would at once have been taken for an English adherent of Alexander."

quidem viderunt, sed breve non per-  
ceperunt. Et sic evasi manus eorum  
in nomine Domini. Quicquid mone-  
tæ habui abstulerunt a me, unde opor-  
tuit me ostiatim mendicare, sine omni  
expensa, donec in Angliam venirem.  
Audiens autem quod ecclesia illa da-  
ta esset Galfrido Ridello, contristata  
est anima mea, eo quod in vanum la-  
boravi. Veniens ergo domum, feretro  
Sancti Ædmundi latenter me suppo-  
sui, timens ne dominus abbas me ca-  
peret, et incarcerationet, qui nichil mali  
merueram; nec erat monachus qui me-  
cum audebat loqui, nec laicus qui mihi  
auderet victum ministrare, nisi aliquis  
furtive. Tandem, inito consilio, misit  
me abbas apud Acram in exilium, ibi-  
que diu moram feci. Hæc et multa alia  
mala innumerabilia passus sum prop-  
ter ecclesiam de Wlpet; sed benedic-  
tus Deus, qui omnia cooperat in bo-  
num; ecce! ecclesia, pro qua tot mala  
sustinui, data est in manu mea, et nunc  
potestatem habeo donandi eam ubi  
voluero, quia vacat. Et ego eam con-  
ventui reddo, et in suos proprios usus  
assigno antiquam consuetudinem vel  
pensionem x. marcarum, quam perdi-  
distis plus quam lx. annis. Integram  
libentius vobis eam darem, si possem;

hands, in the name of the Lord. Wha-  
tever money I had on me they took  
away, so that it was necessary for me  
to beg for my bread, spending nothing,  
until I came to England. But when  
I heard that the church was given to  
Geoffrey Ridel,<sup>76</sup> my soul was grieved  
with the thought that my labour had  
been vain. So when I reached home I  
secretly cast myself before the shrine  
of St. Edmund, for I feared that the  
lord abbot would seize me and cast  
me into prison, who had deserved  
no ill. And there was no monk who  
dared to speak with me, and no lay-  
man who dared supply me with food,  
save secretly. At length, the abbot  
took counsel and exiled me to Acre,<sup>77</sup>  
and there I long remained. These  
and many other countless ills I have  
suffered for the sake of the church of  
Woolpit. But blessed be God, Who  
maketh all things work together for  
good! Behold! the church for which  
I have borne so many hardships, is  
given into my hand, and now I have  
the power to give it to whomsoever I  
will, since it is vacant. And I restore it  
to the monastery, and for its sole use  
I assign the ancient customary due  
or pension of ten marks, which you

<sup>72</sup> Archdeacon of Canterbury, and a strenuous opponent of Becket. He was elected to Ely in 1173, and died in 1189. In the text of the *Chronicle* there will be found an account of a dispute between him and Samson, as to the bishop's right to demand timber (p. 113 ff.).

<sup>73</sup> As to this, see note to p. 6.

sed scio, quod episcopus Norwicensis mihi contradiceret, vel si hoc concederet, tali occasione subjectionem et obedientiam de vobis sibi vindicaret, quod est inconsultum et inconveniens. Faciamus ergo quod de jure possumus facere; ponamus clericum vicarium, qui episcopo respondeat de spiritualibus, et vobis de decem marcis; et volo, si vos consulitis, ut vicaria illa donec alicui consanguineo R. de Hengheham, monachi et fratris vestri, qui mihi fuit consors in illo itinere versus Romam, et eisdem periculis expositus et propter idem negotium.”

have lost for more than sixty years. I would give it in its entirety to you with pleasure were I able to do so; but I know that the bishop of Norwich would forbid this, or if he were to grant it, he would make it an excuse to demand subjection and obedience from you, which is neither wise nor convenient. Therefore let us do what we may lawfully do. Let us place there a clerk as vicar to answer to the bishop for the spiritualities, and to you for the ten marks; and I wish, if you agree, that the vicarage may be given to some relative of Roger de Hengham, a monk and your brother, who was my companion in that journey to Rome, and was exposed to the same dangers as I was and for the same cause.”

His dictis omnes surreximus et gratias egimus; et receptus est Hugo clericus, frater prædicti Rogeri, ad prædictam ecclesiam, salva nobis annua pensione x<sup>cem</sup> marcarum.

At these words we all arose and gave thanks; and Hugh, a clerk and a brother of the said Roger, was received in the said church, saving our annual pension of ten marks.

*How the abbot disputed  
with the archbishop  
concerning the manor of  
Eleigh.  
C. A.D. 1186*

In manerio monachorum Cantuariensis, quod dicitur Illegga, et quod est in hundredo abbatis, contigit fieri homicidium. Homines vero archiepiscopi noluerunt pati, ut illi homicidæ starent ad rectum in

In manerio monachorum Cantuariensis, quod dicitur Illegga,

In a manor of the monks of Canterbury, which is called Eleigh, and which is in the hundred of the abbot, there chanced to be a murder. But the archbishop's men would not allow the murderers to take their trial in the court of St. Edmund. Then the abbot made complaint to king Henry, and said that archbishop Baldwin<sup>78</sup> was

curia sancti Ædmundi. Abbas vero conquestus est regi Henrico, dicens, quod archiepiscopus Baldewinus vindicabat sibi libertates ecclesiæ nostræ, optentu cartæ novæ quam rex dederat ecclesiæ Cantuariensi post mortem sancti Thomæ.

Rex autem respondit, se nunquam fecisse cartam aliquam in præjudicium ecclesiæ nostræ nec aliquid sancto Ædmando velle auferre, quod habere solebat. Quo audito, dixit abbas consiliariis privatis suis: "Sanius consilium est, ut archiepiscopus conqueratur de me, quam ego de archiepiscopo. Volo me ponere in saisinam hujus libertatis, et post me defendam cum auxilio sancti Ædmundi, cujus jus hoc esse cartæ nostræ testantur."

Subito ergo, summo mane, procurante Roberto de Cokefeld, missi sunt circiter quater xx. homines armati ad villam de Ilegga, et ex inopinato ceperunt illos tres homicidas et ligatos duxerunt ad Sanctum Ædmundum, et in fundum carceris projecerunt. Conquerente inde archiepiscopo, Ranulfus de Glanvilla iusticiarius præcepit, ut

claiming the liberties of our church for himself, on the ground of a new charter which the king had given to the church of Canterbury after the death of the blessed Thomas.

Then the king answered that he had never given a charter to the prejudice of our church, and that he did not wish to take from the blessed Edmund anything which he had formerly possessed. On hearing this, the abbot said to his intimate advisers: "It is wiser counsel that the archbishop should make complaint of me than that I should make complaint of the archbishop. I wish to place myself in possession of this liberty, and then I will defend myself with the help of St. Edmund, in whose right our charters bear witness that this liberty is."

Accordingly, unexpectedly, and very early in the morning, with the help of Robert de Cokefield, about eighty armed men were sent to the town of Eleigh, and took those three murderers by surprise and brought them bound to St. Edmund's, and cast them into the dungeon of the prison. And when the archbishop made complaint

<sup>94</sup>Bishop of Worcester (1180–83). He was elected to Canterbury, after some dispute, on the death of Richard of Dover, December 1183. (Gervase, I., 311 ff.) Died, 1190, at the siege of Acre.

homines illi ponerentur per vadium et plegios ad standum ad rectum in curia qua deberent stare, et summonitus est abbas, ut veniret ad curiam regis, responsurus de vi et injuria, quam dicebatur fecisse archiepiscopo. Abbas vero sine omni exonio se pluries præsentavit.

of this, Ranulf Glanvill, the justiciar, commanded that those men should be bound by surety and pledges to stand their trial in the court wherein they ought to stand it; and the abbot was summoned to come to the court of the king and to make reply concerning the violence and injury which he was said to have done to the archbishop. And the abbot many times presented himself at the court, without attempting to make excuse.

A.D. 1187 February 11.

Tandem in capite jejunii steterunt coram rege in capitulo Cantuariensi, et lectæ sunt palam cartæ ecclesiarum hinc et inde. Et respondit dominus rex: "Istæ cartæ ejusdem antiquitatis sunt et ab eodem rege Ædwardo emanant. Nescio quid dicam nisi ut cartæ ad invicem pugnent."<sup>†</sup> Cui abbas dixit: "Quicquid de cartis dicatur, nos in saisina sumus, et hucusque fuimus, et de hoc ponere me volo in verumdictum duorum comitatum, scilicet, Norfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ, se hoc concedere."

At last, at the beginning of the fasting time,<sup>79</sup> they stood before the king in the chapter-house of Canterbury, and the charters of the two churches were read publicly. And the lord king answered, "These charters are of equal age, and come from the same king Edward. I know not what to say, save that the charters are contradictory." To this the abbot replied, "Whatever may be said about the charters, we are seised of the liberty, and have been in the past, and on this point I will submit to the verdict of the two counties, Norfolk and Suffolk, which will allow

<sup>75</sup> Gervase (I., 353) mentions the meeting and supplies the date.

<sup>†</sup> In margine hic legitur: "Quia carta quam habemus de sancto Ædwardo antiquior est, quam carta quam habent monachi Cantuarienses. Quia carta, quam habent, non data eis libertatem, nisi inter homines suos tantum: et carta nostra loquitur de tempore regis Ædwardi et de tempore matris suæ reginæ Emmæ, quæ habuit viii. hundredos et dimidium in dotem, ante tempora sancti Ædwardi, et Mildenhale insimul" (Roke.).

<sup>96</sup> That is, will admit that the abbey has possessed this jurisdiction from time immemorial. (*Mem.*, I., 256, note.)



this.”<sup>80</sup>

Sed archiepiscopus Baldwinus, habito prius consilio cum suis, dixit, homines Norfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ multum diligere Sanctum Ædmundum, et magnam partem illorum comitatum esse sub ditione abbatis, et ideo se nolle stare illorum arbitrio. Rex vero iratus inde et indignans surrexit, et recedendo dixit: “Qui potest capere capiat:” et sic res cepit dilationem, “et adhuc sub iudice lis est.”<sup>†</sup>

Vidi tamen, quod quidam homines monachorum Cantuariensium vulnerati fuerunt usque ad mortem a rusticis de villa de Meldingis, que sita est in hundredo Sancti Ædmundi; et qui sciverunt, quod actor forum rei sequi debet, maluerunt silere et dissimulare, quam inde clamorem facere abbati sive baillivis ejus, quia nullo modo voluerunt venire in curiam Sancti Ædmundi ad placitandum.

A.D. 1191.

Postea levaverunt homines de Illegga quoddam trebuchet, ad faciendam justitiam pro falsis mensuris panis vel bladi mensurandi, unde

Archbishop Baldwin, however, having first taken counsel with his men, said that the men of Norfolk and Suffolk loved St. Edmund greatly, and that a large part of those counties was under the rule of the abbot, and therefore he would not abide by their arbitration. But the king was angry and offended at that, and rising up, left the place, saying, “He that is able to receive it, let him receive it.”<sup>81</sup> And thus the matter was postponed, and is still undecided.

But I saw that some of the men of the monks of Canterbury were wounded to the death by the rustics of the township of Midling, which is situated in the hundred of St. Edmund, and as they knew that the prosecutor is bound to go to the court of the defendant, they preferred to be silent and to hide the matter, rather than complain of it to the abbot or his officers, since they were in nowise willing to come and plead in the court of St. Edmund.

After these things the men of Eleigh set up a certain measure for the doing of justice in cases where bread and corn had been measured with false measures, and the abbot made com-

<sup>80</sup>Matt. xix., 12.

<sup>†</sup>Hor. de Arte Poet. 78.

conquestus est abbas domino Eliensi episcopo, tunc justiciario et cancellario. Ille vero abbatem audire nolebat, quia dicebatur olfacere archiepiscopatum, qui vacabat tunc temporis. Cum autem venisset apud nos, et susceptus esset ut legatus, antequam recederet, orationem fecit ad feretrum sancti martyris; abbasque, nacta opportunitate, dixit, cunctis audientibus qui aderant: "Domine episcope, libertas, quam sibi vindicant monachi Cantuarienses, est jus sancti Ædmundi, cuius corpus præsens est, et quia non vis me adjuvare ad tuendam libertatem ecclesiæ suæ, pono loquelam inter te et ipsum. Ipse de cætero procuret jus suum." Cancellarius nichil dignatus est respondere; qui infra annum Angliam exire compulsus est, et divinam

plaint of this to the lord bishop of Ely,<sup>82</sup> who was at that time justiciar and chancellor. But he would not hear the abbot, because he was alleged to be scenting the archbishopric,<sup>83</sup> which was then vacant. When, however, he had come among us, and was received as legate, before he departed, he made prayer at the shrine of the holy martyr. And the abbot, seizing the opportunity, said in the hearing of all who were present, "My lord bishop, the liberty, which the monks of Canterbury claim, is the right of St. Edmund, whose body is here, and as you will not assist me to protect the liberty of his church, I put a complaint between you and him. Henceforth he may secure his right." The chancellor did not condescend to make any answer,<sup>84</sup> and within a

<sup>98</sup>William Longchamp, elected to Ely and made justiciar and joint regent at the accession of Richard I. He was driven from office in 1191, owing to the opposition of John and Hugh Puiset, bishop of Durham. He died in 1197.

<sup>99</sup>The archbishopric remained vacant from the death of Baldwin until 1191—over a year—when Reginald, bishop of Bath, was elected. He died less than fifteen days later. (Benedictus, II., 226–7.) The archbishopric then remained vacant again until the election of Hubert Walter, 1193.

<sup>100</sup>The pride of Longchamp is the common theme of all the chroniclers, who unite in attributing his fall to this fault. Having obtained the legation from Clement III., he claimed to be supreme over church and state alike, refusing (perhaps in accord with Richard's instructions) to admit that he had any colleague in the office of justiciar. His character is sketched in a letter of Hugh Nunant, bishop of Coventry, which is to be found in Benedictus (II., 215–20). "He was a man great among all the people of the west, as one having power over the kingdom and the authority of the apostolic see, being as it were ambidextrous. . . . He seemed, indeed, to divide the elements with God, leaving heaven alone to the God of heaven. . . . From sea to sea he was feared as God, and were I to say more than God, I should not lie, for God is long-suffering and merciful, but he did all things ill and in haste." William of Newburgh calls him "that rhinoceros." Richard of Devizes calls him "that three-named and threefold man."

ultionem expertus est.

year was forced to leave England, and suffered divine vengeance.

A.D. 1193.

Cum autem idem cancellarius redisset de Almannia, et applicisset apud Gippewic, et pernoctasset apud Heggham, venit rumor ad abbatem, quod cancellarius vellet transire per Sanctum Ædmundum, apud nos missam in crastino auditurus. Prohibuit ergo abbas, ne celebrarentur divina, dum cancellarius esset in ecclesia præsens, quia dixit se audisse, apud Londonias, Londoniensem episcopum pronuntiasse cancellarium esse excommunicatum, et excommunicatum<sup>†</sup> recessisse ab Anglia, coram sex episcopis, et nominatim pro violentia illata archiepiscopo Eboracensi

But when the same chancellor had returned from Germany<sup>85</sup> and had landed at Ipswich, and spent the night at Hitcham, a report came to the abbot that the chancellor wished to pass through St. Edmund's, and to hear mass with us on the morrow. Therefore the abbot forbade the celebration of the divine offices while the chancellor was present in the church, for he said that he had heard in London that the bishop of London had pronounced the chancellor excommunicate, in the presence of six bishops, especially for the violence which he had done to the archbishop of York,<sup>86</sup> at Dover, and that the said chancellor, while excommuni-

<sup>101</sup> Longchamp, after failing to persuade the regency to permit his return before, came back to England in 1193, with letters from Henry VI. as to the ransom of Richard. (Hoveden, III., 211.)

<sup>†</sup> In Dr. Lingard's *Hist. of Engl.* no mention is made of this excommunication. Yet the Chronicle of Bromton (Twys. 1225) distinctly says, that when in Oct. 1191, Geoffrey, Archbishop of York, on being released from confinement, came up to London, the archbishop of Rouen (Walter de Coutances) and six English bishops pronounced a sentence of excommunication against the chancellor who had imprisoned him. Diceto probably gives the real facts; he says that the archbishop and bishops pronounced the excommunication at Reading, in general terms, against "omnes qui consilium, vel auxilium, vel mandatum dederunt, ut archiepiscopus Eboracensis extraheretur ab ecclesia, tractaretur indigne, &c.," and specially against two confidential knights of the chancellor, Alberic de Marines and Alexander Puintel. (ii. 98, Rolls ed.). With this agrees in substance the account given by Gervase (i. 507, Rolls ed.). Newburgh, Hoveden, and bishop Hugh de Nunant (in the witty and abusive letter preserved by Benedictus Abbas) make no mention of any excommunication.

<sup>102</sup> Richard had forbidden Geoffrey to visit England for three years, but the archbishop landed at Dover. There he was arrested by order of Longchamp, but released on the intervention of John. (Benedictus, II., 106; 209–11.) As to the excommunication of Longchamp, this is mentioned by Benedictus (II., 211–12), and by Richard of Devizes (pp. 36, 43, 56). Ralph de Diceto (II., 98) makes the excommunication general only.

apud Doffram.<sup>†</sup>

Veniens ergo<sup>‡</sup> in crastino cancellarius apud nos, non invenit qui missam ei cantaret, nec clericum, nec monachum. Immo, sacerdos stans ad primam missam ad canonem missæ, et ceteri sacerdotes, ad altaria cessaverunt, stantes inmoti labiis, donec nuntius veniret dicens, illum recessisse ab ecclesia. Cancellarius omnia dissimulans, multa gravamina intulit abbati, donec, procurantibus amicis, hinc et inde ad pacis osculum reversi sunt.

*How the abbot wished to take the cross, and how he offered to seek king Richard in Germany.*

*A.D. 1188 January 21.*

nos orationis gratia, abbas ipse sibi fecit crucem occulte de lineo panno, et tenens in una manu crucem et acum et filum, petivit licentiam a rege, ut

Cum rex Henricus accepisset crucem et venisset infra mensem ad

cate, had departed from England.

Accordingly, when the chancellor came among us on the morrow, he found no one to chant mass for him, either clerk or monk. But the priest, indeed, who stood at the first mass and at the canon of the mass, and the other priests by the altars, ceased, and stood with unmoved lips, until a messenger came and said that he had left the church. The chancellor took no notice openly, but he did many ills to the abbot, until, by the mediation of friends, they both returned to the kiss of peace.

When king Henry had taken the cross<sup>87</sup> and was come less than a month later that he might pray among us, the abbot secretly made for himself in one hand the cross and a needle and thread, he sought leave from the king that he might take the cross. But leave was refused him, for John, bishop of Norwich,<sup>88</sup> opposed it, and said that it

---

<sup>†</sup> Geoffrey, who had just been consecrated at Tours, by pope Celestine's order, to the see of York, had sworn to the king, his half brother, that he would not return to England without his leave. He did return however; and on his landing at Dover (Sept. 1191) was arrested by the chancellor's orders, and thrown into prison.

<sup>‡</sup> Longchamp fled the kingdom in 1191, after his fall from power. "He came to England in the following year, but was not suffered to proceed farther than Canterbury, and crossed the seas again. In 1193 the chancellor returned, bearing letters from the emperor, and met the Regency at St. Alban's. It was on this occasion that he passed through St. Edmundsbury, coming from his manor of Hitcham, after landing at Ipswich." (Rokewode.)

<sup>103</sup> At Gisors, 1188.

acciperet crucem; sed denegata est ei licentia, procurante episcopo Norwicensi Johanne, et dicente, quia non expediret patriæ, nec tutum esset comitatibus Norfolchiæ et Sutfolchiæ, si episcopus Norwicensis et abbas Sancti Ædmundi simul recederent.

A.D. 1193.

Cum rumor venisset Lundeniis de captione regis Ricardi, et incarceratione ejus in Alemannia, et barones convenissent pro consilio accipiundo, prosiliit abbas coram omnibus, dicens, se esse paratum quærere dominum suum regem, vel in tapinagio vel alio modo, donec eum inveniret, et certam notitiam de eo haberet; ex quo verbo magnam laudem sibi adquisivit.

*How the abbot resisted the authority of the legate.*

A.D. 1190.

Cum cancellarius, episcopus scilicet Eliensis, legati fungeretur officio et concilium cele-

was not well for the land, nor safe for the counties of Norfolk and Suffolk, that the bishop of Norwich and the abbot of St. Edmund's should go away at the same time.

When news had reached London of the capture of king Richard,<sup>89</sup> and of his imprisonment in Germany, and the barons had met to take counsel on the matter, the abbot stood forth in their presence, and said that he was ready to seek his lord the king. He said that he would search for him in disguise or in any other way, until he found him and had certain knowledge of him. And from this speech he gained great praise for himself.

When the chancellor, the bishop of Ely, filled the office of legate and held a council at London,<sup>90</sup> he proposed certain decrees against the black monks, talking of their wandering to the shrines of St. Thomas and of St. Ed-

<sup>104</sup> John of Oxford, elected to Norwich in 1175; died, 1200. As a matter of fact, John did not go to Palestine. He was waylaid and robbed on his journey, and obtained absolution from his vow from the pope. Richard made this excuse for levying a heavy fine. (Hoveden, III., 42. Richard of Devizes, p. 12.)

<sup>105</sup> Richard was captured in December, 1192, near Vienna, and imprisoned at Durrenstein. In the following year he was handed over to the emperor Henry VI. and imprisoned in various castles in Germany. Hoveden (III., 198) only mentions the abbots of Boxley and Robertsbridge as going to search for Richard, and it would seem that Samson merely offered to go, though it appears that he did subsequently visit Germany (see text, p. 87).

braret apud Londoniam,<sup>†</sup> et quædam decreta proposuisset contra nigros monachos, loquens de vagatione eorum ad sanctum Thomam et ad sanctum Ædmundum peregrinationis obtentu, et contra abbates loquens, præfiniens eis certum numerum equorum: respondit abbas Samson: "Nos non recipimus aliquod decretum contra regulam sancti Benedicti, quæ permittit abbatibus liberam dispositionem habere de monachis suis. Ego vero baroniam sancti Ædmundi servo et regnum ejus; nec sufficiunt mihi tredecim equi, sicut quibusdam aliis abbatibus, nisi plures habeam ad executionem regiæ justitiæ conservandæ."

*Of the conduct of the abbot  
while king Richard was in  
captivity.  
A.D. 1193.*

Cum esset werra in tota Anglia, capto rege Ricardo, abbas cum toto conventu sollemniter excommunicavit omnes factores werræ et pacis turbatores, non timens comitem Johannem fratrem regis nec alium, unde abbas magnanimus dicebatur. Post quod factum ivit ad

mund under pretence of pilgrimage, and speaking against the abbots, mentioning a certain number of horses which they ought to have. Then abbot Samson answered, "We will not receive any decree which is contrary to the rule of St. Benedict, which allows the abbots a free hand in the control of their monks. And I serve the barony of St. Edmund and his realm; thirteen horses are not enough for me, as they may be for some other abbots, unless I have additional horses for the administration of the justice of the king."

After the capture of king Richard, there was war throughout England. And the abbot with the whole monastery solemnly excommunicated all who stirred up war and broke the peace, showing no fear of earl John, the king's brother, or of any other, whence he was called a great-souled abbot. And after doing this, he went to the siege of Windsor,<sup>91</sup> where he appeared in

<sup>†</sup> Gervase (i. 488, Rolls ed.), whose eyes seldom travel outside of Canterbury, describes the battle about precedence and privilege which ushered in this council, but has not one word to say of its proceedings. Matthew Paris (or rather Wendover), and Hemingford, speaking of the chancellor with strong prejudice, say that little or nothing was done in the council that was of any benefit to the Church. (Wilkins, Conc. i. 493.)

<sup>106</sup> This council is mentioned by Benedictus (II., 106). Richard of Devizes (p. 14) mentions that at this council Longchamp gave judgment that the monks should be expelled from Coventry, in accordance with the wishes of Hugh Nunant.

obsidionem de Windleshor, ubi armatus cum quibusdam aliis abbatibus Angliæ, vexillum proprium habens, et plures milites ducens ad multas expensas, plus ibi consilio quam probitate nitens.<sup>†</sup>

Nos vero claustrales tale factum periculosum iudicavimus, timentes consequentiam, ne forte futurus abbas cogatur in propria persona ire in expeditionem bellicam. Datis indutiis illo tempore ivit in Alemanniam, et ibi visitavit regem cum donis plurimis.

*Concerning that which befel certain knights who desired to hold a tournament contrary to the wish of the abbot.*  
A.D. 1193.

quod faciendum convenerunt multi inter Theford et Sanctum Ædmondum, sed prohibuit eos abbas; qui resistentes, votum suum impleverunt.

arms with some other abbots of England, and had his own standard. He had there also with him many knights at great expense, and he gained a reputation rather for skill in the council than for virtue.

But we who were cloistered monks considered this course of action to be fraught with danger, fearing lest some future abbot might be compelled to go to war in person. Then, when a truce had been granted, he went to Germany, and there sought the king with many gifts.

Post reditum regis Ricardi in Angliam, data est licentia torneandi militibus. Ad

After the return of king Richard to England, leave was granted to knights to hold tournaments,<sup>92</sup> and many gathered between Thetford and St. Edmund's for this purpose. Then the abbot forbade them, but they resisted him, and did all that they desired.

<sup>107</sup> John, acting in concert with Philip Augustus, availed himself of the opportunity afforded by Richard's capture to stir up disorder in England. He captured Windsor, and demanded the fealty of the kingdom from the justiciars. On their refusal, he fortified his castles against them. The justiciars, however, under the direction of Hubert Walter, acted promptly, and soon compelled the surrender of all John's castles, except Nottingham and Tickhill. Windsor was handed over to the custody of Eleanor. (Hoveden, III., 204–7.)

<sup>†</sup>The construction is incomplete.

<sup>108</sup>The object of this provision is explained by Diceto (II., 120–1), and was to raise money for the king by the sale of licences. The rates at which the licences were sold were twenty silver marks for an earl, ten for a baron, three for a knight holding land, and two for a knight not holding land. (Hoveden, III., 268.)

June 28.

Alia vice venerunt quatuor viginti iuvenes cum sectis suis, filii nobilium, ad vindictam faciendum cum plenis armis ad prædictum locum. Quo perfecto, redierunt in villam istam causa hospitandi. Abbas vero hoc audiens, portas iussit obserari, et eos omnes includi. Crastinus dies erat vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli. Fide ergo interposita, promittentes se non exire, nisi per licentiam, manducaverunt omnes cum abbate illo die; sed post prandium, abbate eunte in talamum suum, surrexerunt omnes et inceperunt carolare et cantare, mittentes in villam propter vinum, bibentes, et postea ululantes, abbati et conventui somnum suum auferentes, et omnia in derisum abbatis facientes, et diem usque ad vesperam hoc modo deducentes, nec propter mandatum abbatis voluerunt desistere.

Vespere vero adveniente, seras portarum villæ fregerunt, et vi exierunt. Abbas vero omnes sollemniter excommunicavit, per consilium tamen archiepiscopi Huberti iusticiarii tunc temporis; quorum multi venerunt ad emendationem, absolutionem petentes.

On another occasion twenty-four young men, sons of nobles, came fully armed with their followers to have their revenge at the same place. And when they had made an end, they returned to the town to lodge there. But when the abbot heard of it, he commanded the gates to be closed and all of them to be shut within the town. The following day was the vigil of the apostles Peter and Paul. Therefore, when they had given their word that they would not leave the town without permission, they all ate with the abbot on that day. After the meal, when the abbot had retired to his private chamber, they all arose and began to laugh and sing. And sending to the town for wine, they drank and afterwards shouted loudly, and so they kept the abbot and the monastery from their sleep, and did everything to mock the abbot. So they spent the day until the evening, nor would they cease at the abbot's command.

Finally, when evening was come, they broke the bars of the gates of the city, and forced their way out. The abbot solemnly excommunicated them all, by the advice of archbishop Hubert,<sup>93</sup> who was then justiciar, and many of

<sup>109</sup>Hubert Walter, dean of York (1188), and bishop of Salisbury (1189). He went on the crusade, and was present at the siege of Acre. He was elected archbishop in 1193, and died in 1205.



*Concerning the missions of  
the abbot to the papal  
court.*

A.D. 1182, 1187, & 1188.

Primi quos misit, statim postquam fuit benedictus, impetraverunt in genere omnes libertates et consuetudines quæ concessæ fuerant prius, etiam tempore schismatis, prædecessoribus suis; postea impetravit, primus inter abbates Angliæ, quod dare posset episcopalem benedictionem sollemniter ubicunque fuerit; et hoc est impetratum sibi et successoribus suis. Postea impetravit exemptionem generalem sibi et successoribus suis ab omnibus archiepiscopis Cantuariensibus, quam abbas H. prædecessor suus specialiter sibi adquisierat. Plures et novas libertates in illis confirmationibus apponi fecit abbas Samson, ad maiorem libertatem et securitatem ecclesiæ nostræ.

Venit quidam clericus ad abbatem portans literas petitorias de redditu ecclesiastico habendo. Et abbas extrahens de scrinio suo septem scripta apostolica cum bullis pendentibus, ita respondit: "Ecce scripta apostolica, quibus diversi apostolici diversis clericis ecclesiastica beneficia petunt dari. Cum

Romam misit  
abbas sæpius  
nuntios suos,  
non vacuos.

them made reparation and sought absolution.

The abbot sent many messengers to Rome, and not in vain. The first whom he sent, immediately after his benediction, obtained in detail all the liberties and rights which had been granted to his predecessors, even in the days of schism. Afterwards he obtained that he might give episcopal benediction wherever he might be, and he was the first of the abbots of England to gain this. This right he won for himself and for his successors. At a later date he acquired complete exemption for himself and for his successors from all the archbishops of Canterbury, a privilege which abbot Hugh had secured for himself alone. In these confirmations of privileges abbot Samson caused the inclusion of many new liberties, to the great freedom and safety of our church.

Then a certain clerk came to the abbot, bearing letters asking for the grant of some ecclesiastical benefice. And the abbot drew from his desk seven apostolic letters, with leaden seals hanging to them, and answered as follows: "See the apostolic letters, whereby different popes seek that ecclesiastical be-

ergo illos pacavero qui prævenerunt, tibi redditum dabo, quia qui prius venit ad molendinum prius molere debet.”

*How the abbot met the claim of Earl de Clare to bear the standard of Saint Edmund.*

Facta est summonitio magna in hundredo de Risebrigga, ut audiretur querela et rectum comitis de Clara apud Witham. Ipse vero constipatus multis baronibus et militibus, comite Alberico et multis aliis assistentibus, dixit; quod ballivi sui fecerunt ei intelligere, quod ipsi solebant annuatim accipere ad opus suum v. solidos de hundredo et ballivis hundredi, et nunc detinerentur injuste; et allegabat, quod prædecessores sui fuerunt feoffati, ad captionem Angliæ, de terra Alfrici filii Withari,<sup>†</sup> qui quondam fuerat dominus illius hundredi.

Abbas vero sibi consulens, nec de loco se movens, respondit: “Mirum videtur domine comes; quod dicis deficit. Rex Ædwardus dedit Sancto Æd-mundo et carta sua confirmavit hunc

nefices may be given to this or that clerk. When then I have satisfied those who come first I will give you a benefice, since he who first comes to the mill ought to grind first.”

A general summons was issued in the hundred of Risbridge that the complaint and trial of earl de Clare<sup>94</sup> might be heard at Witham. And he was accompanied by a great crowd of barons and knights, while Earl Alberic<sup>95</sup> and many others were present, and he said that his officers had given him to understand that they were wont to receive five shillings for his use from the hundred and from the officers of the hundred, which were now wrongfully withheld. He also alleged that his predecessors had been enfeoffed with the land of Alfric, son of Withgar,<sup>96</sup> who was formerly lord of that hundred, at the time of the conquest of England.

But the abbot, considering in his own mind and not stirring from his place, answered, “My lord earl, your words astonish me! Your case is not proven. King Edward gave to St. Edmund, and

<sup>110</sup> Richard de Clare, fourth earl of Hertford (d. 1218), one of the twenty-five barons appointed to enforce the observance of Magna Carta.

<sup>111</sup> Alberic de Vere, first earl of Oxford (d. 1194). For his subsequent quarrel with Samson, see text, p. 106.

<sup>†</sup> Wisgari, Lib. Domesday, 389 b.; Withgari, *ibid.* 390. (Roke.)

<sup>112</sup> For details as to his holding, see Rokewode, p. 129.

hundredum integre, et de illis v. solidis nulla fit ibi mentio. Dicendum est tibi, pro quo servitio, vel qua ratione exis illos v. solidos." Et comes, habito consilio suorum, respondit se debere portare vexillum Sancti Ædmundi in exercitu, et ob hanc causam illos v. solidos sibi deberi. Et respondit abbas: "Certe, inglorium esse videtur si tantus vir, utpote comes Clarensis, tam parvum donum pro tali servitio recipiat: abbati autem Sancti Ædmundi parvum gravamen est dare v. solidos. Comes R. Bigot se saisiatum tenet, et saisiatum se asserit officio portandi vexillum Sancti Ædmundi, qui illud portavit quando comes Lehecestriæ fuit captus et Flandrenses destructi. Thomas etiam de Mendham dicit hoc esse jus suum. Cum vero dirationaveris versus eos hoc esse jus tuum, ego libenter v. solidos, quos quæris, persolvam." Comes vero respondit, se esse locuturum inde cum comite R. cognato suo, et sic res cepit dilationem usque hodie.

confirmed the gift in his charter, this whole hundred, and no mention was made of these five shillings. Do you tell us for what service, or on what grounds, you claim those five shillings!" And the earl, having consulted his men, replied that he had the right to bear the standard of St. Edmund in the host, and for this reason those five shillings were due to him. Then the abbot answered, "In truth, it seems an unworthy thing that so great a man as the earl de Clare should receive so small a gift for so important a service, but it is small harm to the abbot of St. Edmund's to give five shillings. Earl Roger Bigod<sup>97</sup> holds that he is seised of the land, and declares that he is seised of the duty of bearing the standard of St. Edmund,<sup>98</sup> and he bore it when the earl of Leicester was taken and the Flemings destroyed. Moreover, Thomas de Mendham<sup>99</sup> says that this right belongs to him. But when you shall have proved against them that this right is yours, I will willingly pay the five shillings which you demand." Then the earl answered that he would

<sup>113</sup>Second earl of Norfolk, died 1221. One of the twenty-five barons of Magna Carta.

<sup>114</sup>Rokewode (pp. 129–31) quotes a passage from Lydgate's metrical life of St. Edmund on the subject. The whole poem was printed by C. Horstmann in his *Altenglische Legenden*, Heilbron, 1881. (See *Mem.* III., l.–li.) A reproduction of the standard is published as a tailpiece to Rokewode's edition.

<sup>115</sup>He held a knight's fee in Livermere. (See Rokewode, p. 132, who appends other details.) He was possibly descended from a brother of abbot Baldwin, and seems to have been a constable to the monastery.

speak of the matter to earl Roger his relative, and so the matter has not been decided to this day.

*Concerning the case of  
Adam de Cokefield.  
A.D. 1191.*

Mortuo Roberto de  
Kokfeld, venit  
Adam filius

ejus et cum eo parentes sui, comes R. Bigot, et alii multi potentes, et sollicitantes abbatem de tenementis prædicti Adæ, et præcipue de dimidio hundredo de Cosford tenendo per annum censum c. solidorum, tanquam hoc esset jus suum hæreditarium, et dicentes quod pater ejus et avus ejus tenuerunt illud quater xx. annis retro et plus.

Now, when Robert de Cokefield was dead, his son Adam came with his relatives, earl Roger Bigod, and many other powerful men. And they sought from the abbot the holdings of the said Adam, and especially for half the hundred of Cosford, to be held at an annual rent of a hundred shillings, as if this was his by hereditary right, and declared that his father and grandfather had held it for eighty years past and more.

Abbas vero, nacta opportunitate loquendi, apponens duos digitos suos ad duos oculos suos, dixit: “Illa die et illa hora perdam oculos istos, qua alicui concedam hundredum hæreditarie tenendum, nisi rex inde vim mihi faciat, qui mihi potest auferre abbatiam et vitam.” Ostendensque rationem dicti, ait: “Si aliquis teneret hundredum hæreditarie, et ipse forisfaceret versus regem aliquo modo ita quod ex hæreditari deberet, statim vicecomes Sutfolchiæ et ballivi regis saisiant hundredum; et exercerent potestatem suam infra terminos nostros; et si haberent custodiam hundredi, pericli-

But the abbot, when he had opportunity for speaking, put his two fingers to his two eyes, and said, “May I lose these eyes in that day and hour in the which I grant a hundred to any man to hold by hereditary right, unless the king, who is able both to take away the abbacy from me and to deprive me of life, force me to do this thing.” And he gave the reason for this saying, and added, “If any man hold a hundred by hereditary right, and if he commit an offence of any sort against the king for the which he ought to be disinherited, forthwith the sheriff of Suffolk and the officers of the king would

taretur libertas octo hundredorum et dimidii.”<sup>†</sup>

seize the hundred, and would exercise authority within our borders. And if they should have the wardenship of this hundred, then would the liberty of eight hundreds and a half<sup>100</sup> be imperilled.”

Convertensque sermonem ad Adam, ait: “Si tu, qui clamas hæreditatem in illo hundredo, acciperes in uxorem aliquam liberam feminam, quæ teneret saltem unam acram terræ de rege in capite, rex post mortem tuam saisieret totum tenementum tuum et wardam filii tui, si esset infra ætatem; et ita ballivi regis intrarent in hundredum Sancti Ædmundi in præjudicium abbatis. Ad hoc, pater tuus recognovit mihi, se nihil juris hæreditarii vindicare de hundredo; et, quia servitium suum mihi placuit, permisi eum tenere omnibus diebus vitæ suæ, meritis suis exigentibus.”

Then he addressed himself to Adam, and said, “If you, who claim hereditary right in this hundred, were to marry any free woman, who held even a single acre of land from the king in chief, the king after your death would have seisin of the whole of your land and the wardship of your son, if he were a minor, and thus the officers of the king would enter the hundred of St. Edmund to the prejudice of the abbot. For the matter of that, your father made acknowledgment to me that he claimed no hereditary right in that hundred, and because his service pleased me, I permitted him to hold it all the days of his life, as his deserts warranted.”

His dictis, oblata est abbati pecunia multa: sed nec potuit flecti nec prece nec pretio. Convenit tandem inter eos

After he had thus spoken, much money was offered to the abbot, but he could not be turned from his purpose.

<sup>116</sup>The grant of this land, which had been held by Emma of Normandy, wife of Ethelred II., was granted to St. Edmund by Edward the Confessor on the occasion of his visit to the monastery in 1044. (*Mem.*, I., 363, cp. Rokewode, pp. 132–33, and Hermannus, in *Mem.*, I., 48.) The hundreds were Thingoe, Thedwastre, Blackburne, Bradborn, Bradmere, Risbridge, Babery, and half that of Exning. (*Mem.*, I., xxviii., note 1.) The charter is printed in Dugdale's *Monasticon* (III., 138, No. vii., ed. 1846).

<sup>†</sup>See ante, pp. 48, 128.

ita: Adam renunciavit juri suo quod ore dicebat se habere in hundredo, et abbas confirmavit ei omnes alias terras suas, sed de villa nostra de Cokefeld nulla fuit facta mentio, nec cartam creditur inde habere; Semere et Grotene tenebit ad tempus vitæ suæ.

*How the mill which  
Herbert the dean had built  
was overturned.*

Herbertus decanus levavit molendinum ad ventum super Hauberdun: quod cum audisset abbas, tanta ira excanduit, quod vix voluit comedere, vel aliquod verbum proferre. In crastino, post missam auditam, præcepit sacristæ ut sine dilatione faceret carpentarios suos illuc ire et omnia subvertere, et materiam lignorum in salvam custodiam reponere.

Audiens hoc decanus, venit dicens, se hoc de jure posse facere super liberum feudum suum, nec beneficium venti alicui homini debere denegari, et dixit se velle suum proprium bladum ibi

se either by prayer or present. At the last it was thus agreed between them: Adam abandoned the right which he had verbally claimed in the hundred, and the abbot confirmed to him all his other lands.<sup>101</sup> No mention was made, however, of our township of Cokefield, and it is believed that he had no charter concerning it. Semere and Groton he was to hold for the term of his life.

Herbert the dean<sup>102</sup> built a windmill on Haberdon.<sup>103</sup> When the abbot heard this, he was so wroth that he would hardly eat, or speak a single word. On the morrow, after he had heard mass, he commanded the sacristan that without delay he should cause his carpenters to go thither and overturn everything, and place the wood with which it had been built in safe keeping.

And the dean heard this, and he came, saying that he was by law able to do this on his freehold land, and that the profit which may come from the wind ought to be denied to no man. He

<sup>117</sup> The lands confirmed to him were those which he held in Lafham, Whetfeld, Wordsey, Navelton, Lilesey, and Bretenham. (Rokewode, p. 132.)

<sup>118</sup> He received a grant of lands from abbot Ordning, his cousing. (Rokewode, p. 133.)

<sup>119</sup> "Within the bounds of St. Edmundsbury, lies behind Southgate street, extending to the river Lark, contiguous to the parish of Rougham." (Rokewode, p. 133.)

molere, non alienum, ne forte putaretur hoc facere in vicinorum molendinorum detrimentum.

Et respondit abbas adhuc iratus: "Gratias tibi reddo ac si ambos pedes meos amputasses; per os Dei, nunquam panem manducabo, donec fabrica illa subvertatur. Senex es, et scire debuisti, quod nec regi nec justituario licet aliquid immutare vel constituere infra *bannamleucam* sine abbate et conventu; et tu tale quid præsumsisti? Nec hoc sine detrimento meorum molendinorum est, sicut asseris, quia ad tuum molendinum burgenses concurrent, et bladium suum molerent pro beneplacito suo, nec [in] eos possem de jure advertere, quia liberi homines sunt. Nec etiam molendinum celerarii noviter levatum stare sustinerem, nisi quia levatum fuit antequam fui abbas. Recede," inquit, "recede; antequam domum tuam veneris, audies quid fiet de molendino tuo."

Decanus autem timens a facie abbatis, consilio filii sui magistri Stephani, famulos sacristæ præveniens, molendinum illud elevatum a propriis famu-

said also that he intended to grind his own corn there and not that of other men, that he might not be thought to have done this thing to the detriment of neighbouring mills.

And the abbot, still angry, replied, "I thank you as much as if you had cut off both my feet; by the face of God, I will never eat bread until that building be overturned. You are an old man, and you ought to know that neither the king nor his justiciar may change anything or build anything within the jurisdiction of the monastery, without the leave of the abbot and the house. And who are you, that you are so very presumptuous? Nor is this without harm to my mills, as you pretend, for the burghers go to your mill, and grind their corn at their pleasure, while I cannot lawfully hinder them, since they are free men. And I would not allow even the mill of the cellarer, which has been newly built, to stand, had it not been that it was built before I was abbot. Depart," he went on, "depart. Before you come to your house, you will hear what has come to pass in the matter of your mill."

Then the dean, fearing before the face of the abbot, took counsel with his son, master Stephen, and anticipated the servants of the sacristan, and caused

lis suis, sine omni mora, erui fecit; ita quod, venientibus servientibus sacristæ, nichil subvertendum invenerunt.

*How the right of the abbot to present to certain churches was disputed, and what befel in the matter.*

A.D. 1194 & LATER.

obtinuit. Quasdam etiam calumniatas retinuit; ecclesiam de Westle, de Meringetorp, de Brethenham, de Wenelinga, de Pakeham, de Neutona, de Bradefeld in Norfolcia, medietatem ecclesiæ de Bocsford, ecclesiam de Scaldewella, et ecclesiam de Endgate. Omnes ab aliis calumniatas retinuit, et tres portiones de ecclesia de Dicleburcha ad jus advocacionis suæ revocavit, et illarum portionum tenementa ad liberum feudum ecclesiæ reduxit, salvo servitio quod inde debetur aulæ de Tiveteshala.

A.D. 1188.

Ecclesia vero de Bocsford vacante, cum summonita fuisset inde recognitio, venerunt quinque milites tentantes abbatem, et quærentes quid inde deberent jurare. Abbas autem noluit eis aliquid dare, vel promittere, sed dixit: "Cum ad juramentum

Quarumdam ecclesiarum advocacionem calumniatus est abbas et

the mill which had been built by his own servants to be destroyed without delay. And so it was, that when the men of the sacristan came there, they found nothing to overthrow.

The right of the abbot to present to certain churches was disputed, and he gained the point. He also retained the right to present in certain other cases where that right had been disputed, in the cases of the churches of Westley, Meringthorpe, Bretenham, Weneling, Pakenham, Newton, and Bradfield in Norfolk, half the church of Boxford, the church of Scaldwell and the church of Endgate.<sup>104</sup> All these he retained against the claim of others, and he recovered the right of presentation to three parts of the church of Dickleburgh. And in those portions he restored the holdings to the freehold of the church, saving the service due thence to the manor of Titshall.

But when the church of Boxford fell vacant, and an inquest was ordered in the matter, five knights came, tempting the abbot, and asking him what they should swear in that matter. But the abbot would not either give or promise them anything, and said, "When the time comes to make oath, say that

<sup>120</sup> Rokewode (p. 133-4) collects the evidence of the possession of these churches by St. Edmund.



perventum fuerit, dicite rectum secundum conscientiam vestram." Ipsi vero indignantes recesserunt, et ei per iuramentum suum advocacionem illius ecclesiæ, scilicet ultimam præsentationem,<sup>†</sup> abstulerunt; quam tamen postea recuperavit, multis factis expensis, et datis decem marcis.

Ecclesiam de Hungetona non vacantem sed calumniatam retinuit abbas, tempore Durandi de Hostesli, licet ipse monstraverit in testimonium juris sui cartam W. Norwicensis episcopi, qua continetur, quod Robertas de Valoniis socer ejus dederit illam ecclesiam Ærnaldo Luvello.

which is right according to your conscience." Then they went away in anger, and by their oath, in an inquest of darrein presentment,<sup>105</sup> deprived him of the right of presenting to that church. This right he afterwards regained at great expense and by a payment of ten marks.

The abbot retained the church of Honington, which had not been vacant, but to which his claim had been disputed in the time of Daniel de Hostelli, though he produced in evidence of his right a charter of William, bishop of Norwich,<sup>106</sup> wherein it was provided that Robert de Valoniis, his father-in-law, had given that church to Ernald Lovell.

Before A.D. 1191.

Vacante medietate ecclesiæ de Hopetuna, mota est controversia inde inter abbatem et Robertum de Ulmo, positoque die concordie<sup>†</sup> apud Hopetonam, post multas altercationes dixit abbas ad prædictum R., nescio quo impetu animi ductus: "Tu jura in propria persona, quod hoc tuum

When half the church of Hopeton was vacant, a dispute arose on this matter between the abbot and Robert de Ulmo. And when a day for settling the matter was appointed at Hopeton, after much disputing, the abbot said to the same Robert, being moved thereto by some sudden impulse, "Swear in your own person that this right is

<sup>†</sup> A special assize for trying cases of *Nouvel Disseisin*, *Mort d'Ancestor*, and *Darrein Presentment*, was erected by clause 18 of Magna Charta. See Stubbs, *Const. Hist.* i. 617.

<sup>121</sup> An inquest for the purpose of discovering the person who last presented to a benefice.

<sup>122</sup> William de Turbeville, bishop of Norwich, 1146 to 1174. He was a strong adherent of Becket.

<sup>†</sup> A "dies concordie" was probably a "love day." Comp. Wyclif, in *Grete Sentens of Curs* (Works, Clar. Press, iii. 322); rich men's followers, he says, "schal holde wrongis at love dayes, and bere doun troupe and pore men in here riȝt, by colour of lordis knelynge in þe chapel."

jus est, et ego concedo quod tuum sit.” Cumque miles ille renuisset jurare, delatum est juramentum per consensum utriusque partis sexdecim legalibus de hundredo, qui juraverunt hoc esse jus abbatis. Gilbertus filius Radulfi et Robertus de Cokefeld, domini illius feudi, affuerunt et consenserunt.

*How abbot Samson  
disputed with Jordon de  
Ros.*

Prosiliens ibi  
magister Jordanus de Ros,  
habens tam  
cartam H. abbatis, quam prædicti R.,  
et hinc inde ut uter eorum dirationaret  
ecclesiam, ipse personatum haberet,  
dixit se esse personam totius ecclesie  
et clericum proximo mortuum  
fuisse vicarium ejus, reddendo ei annuam  
pensionem de illa medietate,  
et inde ostendit cartam Walchelini  
archidiaconi.

Abbas vero turbatus et iratus erga eum,  
nunquam eum in gratiam amicitie recepit,  
donec ipse Jordanus in capitulo monachorum  
de Theford, instante abbate, reassignavit  
in manus episcopi ibi præsentis illam  
medietatem præcise, sine omni conditione  
et spe recuperandi eam, coram multitudine  
clericorum. Quo facto, dixit abbas: “Domine  
episcope, ego ex promisso teneor dare  
redditum alicui clerico vestro: et

yours, and I will grant that it is.” And when the knight refused to swear, the matter was transferred with the assent of both parties to sixteen legal men of the hundred, who made oath that the right belonged to the abbot. Gilbert Fitz Ralph and Robert de Cokefield, the lords of that fief, were present, and gave their assent.

Then master Jordan de Ros, who had charters both from abbot Hugh and the said Robert, came forward, and addressing both parties, said that whichever of them proved his claim to the church, he ought to have the position of rector. He declared that he was rector of the whole church, and that the recently deceased clerk was his vicar, paying to him an annual income from that half, and in evidence he produced a charter of Walchelin the archdeacon.

Then the abbot was perturbed and angered with him, nor did he ever receive him into his favour until the same Jordan in the chapter of the monks of Thetford, owing to the abbot’s insistence, resigned into the hands of the bishop, who was present there, that half absolutely, without any conditions or hope of recovery, in the presence of a number of clerks. When this had been done, the abbot said, “My lord bishop,

ego dabo hanc medietatem hujus ecclesie cui ex vestris volueritis." Et episcopus petivit, ut amicabilem redderetur eidem magistro Jordano, et sic ex presentatione abbatis eam suscepit Jordanus.

Postea mota est controversia inter abbatem et eundem Jordanum de terra Herardi in Herlava, utrum esset liberum feudum ecclesie, an non. Cumque inde summonita esset recognitio duodecim militum in curia regis facienda, facta est in curia abbatis apud Herlavam per licentiam Rannulfi de Glanvilla, et juraverunt recognitores se nunquam scivisse illam terram fuisse separatam ab ecclesia, sed tamen illam terram debere abbati tale servitium quale debet terra Eustachii, et quædam aliæ terræ laicorum in eadem villa.

Tandem convenit inter eos ita: magister Jordanus in plena curia recognovit illam terram esse laicum feudum, et se nichil inde vindicare, nisi per gratiam abbatis; et illam terram tenebit omnibus diebus vite suæ, reddendo inde annuatim abbati xij. denarios pro omnibus servitiis.

I am bound on a promise to give the revenue to one of your clerks, and I will give the half of this church to whichever of your clerks you will." And the bishop asked that he would restore it in a friendly manner to the same Jordan, and thus Jordan received it by presentation from the abbot.

After this a dispute arose between the abbot and this same Jordan about the land of Herard in Harlow, as to whether or no it was a free fief of the church. And when an inquest of twelve knights was ordered on this matter, to be made in the king's court, by leave of the justiciar Ranulf Glanvill it was made in the court of the abbot at Harlow. And the jurors swore that they had never known that land divided from the church, but yet that this land owed to the abbot the same service as the land of Eustace and certain other land of laymen in the same township owed to him.

At last an agreement was reached between them on the following terms: master Jordan in full court acknowledged that this land was a lay fief, and that he had no rights in it except by the grace of the abbot. And he was to hold that land all the days of his life, paying an annual rent to the abbot for it of twelve pence in commutation of

all services.

*How the author made a list  
of the abbot's churches as a  
gift to the abbot, and the  
names of those churches.*

Cum iuxta  
consuetudi-  
nem Anglo-  
rum multi

multa darent munera abbati, ut domino, die Circumcisionis Dominicæ, cogitavi ego Jocelinus quid dare possem. Et incepti in scriptum redigere omnes ecclesias quæ sunt in donatione abbatis, tam de nostris maneriis quam de suis, et rationabilia pretia earum, sicut possent poni ad firmas, tempore quo blatus mediocriter venditur. Et intrante anno subsequente, dedi abbati schedulam illam pro munere ejus, quam valde gratanter accepit.

Ego vero, quia placui tunc temporis in conspectu ejus, cogitavi in corde meo quod dicerem ei, ut aliquam ecclesiam daret conventui et assignaret in usum hospitalitatis, sicut desideravit quando pauper monachus claustralis fuit, et sicut ipse voluit ante electionem suam, ut fratres jurarent, ut super quemcumque sors abbatiæ caderet, hoc faceret. Sed dum hoc cogitavi, occurrit mihi memoriæ, quod quidam alius prius dixerat ei idem verbum, et audieram abbatem respondentem, se non posse demembrare baroniam, scilicet nec debere minuere libertatem et dignitatem, quam H. abbas et ceteri prædecessores

Now when, in the manner of the English, many men gave many presents to the abbot, as to their lord, on the day of the Circumcision of the Lord, I, Jocelin, thought what I could give to him. And I began to write out a list of all the churches which are in the gift of the abbot, both on our manors and on his, and the right values of the same, according as they might be placed at firm at a time when the price of corn was moderate. And when the beginning of the next year came, I gave to the abbot that schedule as my gift to him, and he received it with great pleasure.

Then I, because I was then pleasing in his sight, "thought in my heart" that I might say to him that he should give some church to the monastery and should assign it to the maintenance of hospitality, as he had himself desired when he was a poor cloistered monk, and as before his election he had wished the brothers to swear, that he on whom the lot of the abbacy should fall should do this. But while I so thought I suddenly called to mind that some other had already said to him this word, and that I had heard the abbot answer that he could not dismember his barony, that is, that he ought not to

sui habuerunt de ecclesiis donandis, qui nullam vel vix contulerunt conventui; et idcirco tacui.

Scriptum tale fuit:

“Hæ sunt ecclesiæ de maneriis et socagiis abbatis. Ecclesia de Meleford valet xl. libras, Geventona x. marcas, Saxham xij. marcas, Hargrava v. marcas, Brethenham v. marcas, Bocsford centum solidos, major Fornbam c. solidos, Stowa c. solidos, Hunegetona v. marcas, Helmeswell tres marcas, Cotuna xij. marcas, Brocford v. marcas, Palegrava x. marcas, major Hornningesherd v. marcas, Cunegestuna iii<sup>j</sup><sup>or</sup> marcas, Herlava xix. marcas, Stapelforda tres marcas, Tiveteshala c. solidos, Wirlingword cum Bedingfeld xx. marcas, Saham vi. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Wortham c. solidos, Rungetona xx. marcas, Torp vi. marcas, Wlpet præter pensionem c. solidos, Ressebroc v. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Hopetona lx. solidos, Richingale vi. marcas, tres partes ecclesiæ de Dicleburch, quælibet pars valet xxx. solidos et plus, medietas ecclesiæ de Gislingham quatuor marcas, Ichelingham vj. marcas. De ecclesia de Mildenhala, quæ valet xl. marcas, et de medietate

reduce the liberty and dignity which abbot Hugh and others, his predecessors, had possessed in the matter of giving churches, which brought little or no gain to the monastery. And for this cause I was silent.

Now the writing was as follows:—

“These are the churches on the manors and socages of the abbot: The church of Melford, valued at forty pounds; Chevington, ten marks; Saxham, twelve marks; Hargrave, five marks; Bretenham, five marks; Boxford, a hundred shillings; the greater Fornham, a hundred shillings; Stowe, a hundred shillings; Honington, five marks; Elmswell, three marks; Cotton, twelve marks; Brocford, five marks; Palgrave, ten marks; the greater Horningsherth, five marks; Kingston, four marks; Harlow, nineteen marks; Stapleford, three marks; Tivetshall, a hundred shillings; Worlingworth and Bedingfeld, twenty marks; Saham, six marks; half the church of Wortham, a hundred shillings; Rungton, twenty marks; Thorp, six marks; Woolpit, with the pension excluded, a hundred shillings; Rushbrook, five marks; half the church of Hopeton, sixty shillings; Richinghall, six marks; three parts of the church of Dickleburgh, at the rate of over thirty shillings for each part; half the church

ecclesiæ de Wederdena quid dicam? Wenelinge c. solidos, ecclesia de Len x. marcas, ecclesia de Scaldewelle v. marcas, de Werketona—.

ch of Gislingham, four marks; Icklingham, six marks; the church of Mildenhall, which is worth forty marks, and half the church of Wederden, some unknown quantity; Weneling, a hundred shillings; the church of Len, ten marks; that of Scaldwell, five marks; Warkton

...

“Hæ sunt ecclesiæ de maneriis conventus; Mildenhal, Bertona, et Horningsherth xxv. marcas præter pensionem, Rutham xv. marcas præter pensionem, Bradefeld v. marcas, Pakeham xxx. marcas, Suthreia c. solidos, Riseby xx. marcas, Neutona iiij<sup>or</sup> marcas, Wepsted xiiij. marcas, Fornham Sancte Genovefe xv. marcas, Herningeswell ix. marcas, Fornham Sancti Martini iij. marcas, Ingham x. marcas, Lacford c. solidos, Alvedena x. marcas, Kokefeld xx. marcas, Semere xij. marcas, Grotone v. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Frisingfeld xiiij. marcas, Beccles xx. marcas, Broc xv. marcas, Hildercle x. marcas, Werketona x. marcas, Scaldewell v. marcas, Westle v. marcas, ecclesia in Norwico duas marcas præter pensionem alleciorum, et duæ ecclesiæ in Colecestra iii. marcas præter pensionem iiij. solidorum, Chelsword c. solidos, Meringetorp iiij. marcas, medietas ecclesiæ de Bradefeld in Norfolchia tres marcas: staffacres, et

“These are the churches on the manors of the monastery:—Mildenhall, Barton, and Horningsherth, valued at twenty-five marks, exclusive of the pension; Rougham, fifteen marks, exclusive of the pension; Bradfield, five marks; Pakenham, thirty marks; Southrey, a hundred shillings; Risby, twenty marks; Newton, four marks; Whepstead, fourteen marks; Fornham St. Genevieve, fifteen marks; Herningswell, nine marks; Fornham St. Martin, three marks; Ingham, ten marks; Lackford, a hundred shillings; Alpheton, ten marks; Cokefield, twenty marks; Semere, twelve marks; Grotton, five marks; half the church of Frisingfeld, fourteen marks; Beccles, twenty marks; Broc, fifteen marks; Heldcercle, ten marks; Warkton, ten marks; Scaldwell, five marks; Westley, five marks; a church in Norwich, two marks, excluding the pension of herrings; and two churches in Colchester, three marks, excluding the pension of four shillings; Chelsworth, a

foracres, et tertiæ partes decimarum dominiorum Wrabenesse, vj. marcas.”

*How the abbot freed his church from contribution to the fine inflicted on Norfolk and Suffolk.*

A.D. 1187.

Duo comitatus Norfolchia et Suthfolchia positi fuerunt in misericordia regis a iusticiariis errantibus propter quoddam forisfactum, et positæ fuerunt l. marcæ super Norfolchiam, et xxx. super Sutfolciam. Et cum quædam portio de illa communi misericordia poneretur super terras Sancti Ædmundi et acriter exigeretur, abbas sine omni mora adiit dominum regem, et invenimus eum apud Clarendonam; ostensaque ei carta regis Ædwardi, quæ liberas facit terras Sancti Ædmundi de omnibus geldis et scottis, præcepit rex per literas suas, ut sex milites de comitatu de Norforchia et sex de Sutfolchia summonerentur ad recognoscendum coram baronibus scaccarii, utrum dominia Sancti Ædmundi deberent esse quæta de communi misericordia;

hundred shillings; Meringthorp, four marks; half the church of Bradfield in Norfolk, three marks; staffacres, and foracres,<sup>107</sup> and a third of the tithes of the demesnes of Wrabnesse, six marks.”

The two counties of Norfolk and Suffolk were adjudged by the itinerant justices to be fined at the king's discretion for some fault, and fifty marks were imposed upon Norfolk and thirty upon Suffolk. And when some portion of that common fine was placed upon the lands of St. Edmund and sternly exacted, the abbot without delay went to the lord king, and we found him at Clarendon. And when a charter of king Edward, which freed the lands of St. Edmund from all gelds and scot, had been shown to him, the king ordered by his letters that six knights of the county of Norfolk and six of that of Suffolk should be summoned to make inquest in the presence of the barons of the exchequer, as to whether the demesnes of St. Edmund ought to be quit of that general fine.

<sup>123</sup>“These staffacres, it would seem, were certain payments or fees due to the abbot's staff or crozier.” (Rokewode, p. 134.) Arnold (*Mem. I.*, 268, note) suggests that the foracres were similar payments for the right of attending the market (*forum*).

et electi sunt tantum sex milites, ut ita parceretur laboribus et expensis, et ideo quia habuerunt terras in utroque comitatu, scilicet Hubertus de Briseword, W. filius Hervei, et Willielmus de Franchevilla, et tres alii, qui Londonias iverunt nobiscum, et ex parte duorum comitatum libertatem ecelesie nostrae recognoverunt. Justiciarii autem assidentes verumdictum illorum inrollaverunt.

*How the abbot disputed  
with his knights.  
A.D. 1196.*

Abbas Samson iniit certamen cum militibus suis ipse contra omnes, et omnes contra eum,—(proposuit eis quod deberent ei facere integre servitium quinquaginta militum in scutagiis, et in auxiliis, et in consimilibus, quia, ut aiebant, feudos tot militum tenebant,)—quare decem ex illis quinquaginta militibus essent sine servitio, vel qua ratione vel cujus auctoritate illi quadraginta reciperent servitium decem militum. Responderunt omnes una voce talem fuisse consuetudinem, ut decem ex illis semper adjuvarent quadraginta, nec se velle inde, nec debere inde respondere, nec in placitum intrare.

Then six knights were chosen, that so trouble and expense might be saved, and these because they held lands in both counties, namely, Hubert de Brisewood, W. FitzHervey, and William de Francheville, and three others. They went with us to London, and on behalf of the two counties adjudged this liberty to belong to our church. Then the justices who were present enrolled their verdict.

Abbot Samson began a struggle with his knights,<sup>108</sup> he against all and all against him. He declared that they ought to make to him the full service of fifty knights in scutages, aids, and the like, since, as they admitted, they held the fees of that number of knights. He disputed as to why ten of those fifty knights should be free from service, and as to the reason or authority those forty received the service of ten knights. They all with one voice answered that such was the custom, that ten of them should ever help the forty, and they said that on this matter they would neither make answer nor stand trial, as they ought not to do so.

Cum ergo fuissent summoniti inde re- But when they were summoned to ma-

<sup>124</sup>Rokewode (p. 134–5) gives a list of the knights in 3 Ric. I. As to the struggle, compare the text, p. 43.



sponsuri in curia regis, quidam exonerunt se ex industria, quidam apparuerunt in dolo, dicentes, se non respondere sine paribus suis. Alia vice se præsenterunt, qui prius se absenterunt, dicentes similiter, se non debere respondere sine paribus suis, qui in eadem querela fuerunt.

Cumque sic sæpius illusissent abbati, et in magnis et in gravibus expensis vexassent, conquestus est inde abbas H. archiepiscopo tunc iusticiario; qui respondit in generali concione quemlibet militem pro se ipso debere loqui et pro suo proprio tenemento. Et dixit palam abbatem bene scientem et bene potentem esse ad dirationandum jus ecclesiæ suæ contra omnes et singulos.

Comes ergo R. Bigot primus sponte confessus est in iure se debere abbati domino suo servitium trium militum integre, et in releviis et in scutiagiis et in auxiliis, sed de warda facienda ad castellum Norwici tacuit.

Venerunt postea duo ex militibus, postea tres, postea plures, postea sæpe omnes, et ad exemplum comitis idem

ke answer on this matter in the court of the king, some craftily excused themselves and others craftily appeared, the latter saying that they ought not to answer without their peers. On another occasion, those who had at first absented themselves appeared, and said the same thing, that they ought not to make answer without their peers, who were with them in the dispute.

And when they had thus many times mocked the abbot, and had vexed him with great and heavy expenses, the abbot complained on this matter to archbishop Hubert, who was then iusticiar. And he answered in the full council that each knight ought to reply for himself and for his own holding. And he said openly that he knew well, and was well able to secure, the right of his church against all and every one of them.

Then earl Roger Bigod was the first to acknowledge freely that in law he owed his lord, the abbot, the full service of three knights, and both in reliefs, and scutages, and aids. But as to the wardenship of the castle of Norwich, he was silent.

After that there came two of the knights, and then three, and then more, and eventually almost all, and, following

servitium recognoverunt; et quia non sufficebat recognitio inde facta in curia Sancti Ædmundi, secum ducebant omnes abbas Lundonias ad suos sumptus, et uxores et mulieres, qui erant terrarum hæredes, ut recognitionem facerent in curia regis, et singuli singulos chirographos acceperunt.

Albericus de Ver, et Willelmus de Hastings, et duo alii fuerunt in servitio regis ultra mare, quando hæc fiebant, et ideo loquela de eis differri debuit. Albericus de Ver ultimus erat qui abbati resistebat; abbas vero averia ejus cepit et vendidit, unde oportuit eum venire in curiam et respondere sicut pares sui. Inito ergo consilio, recognovit tandem Sancto Ædmondo et abbati jus suum.

Superatis ergo omnibus militibus, ex tali victoria tale lucrum poterit abbati,<sup>†</sup> nisi abbas voluerit aliquibus parceret; quotiens xx. solidi ponentur super scutum, remanebunt abbati xij. libræ, et si plus vel minus ponatur, plus vel minus ei remanebit secundum debitam portionem. Item solebat abbas et antecessores sui semper in fine xx. ebdomadatum dare vij. solidos ad war-

the example of the earl, admitted the same service. And as a recognition made on this matter in the court of St. Edmund was not enough, the abbot took with him to London at his own expense the wives and women, who were heiresses of lands, that they might make recognition in the king's court, and each received a separate charter.

Alberic de Vere and William de Hastings, and two others were in the service of the king, across the sea, when these things were done, and therefore this dispute had to await final settlement. Alberic de Vere was the last who resisted the abbot; but the abbot took and sold his cattle, by which means he was driven to come to the court and make answer as his peers had done. And so he took counsel, and at last recognised the right as belonging to St. Edmund and the abbot.

Therefore when all the knights had been overcome, the abbot might have made great gain of money from so notable a victory, had he not desired to spare some of them. For whenever twenty shillings are charged on a fee, there will remain for the abbot twelve pounds, and if more or less be charged, then more or less will remain according to the due proportion. Further,

<sup>†</sup> Desiderari videtur "accrescere." Roke.

dam castelli de Norwico<sup>†</sup> de sua bursa pro defectu trium militum, quos comes R. Bigot tenet de Sancto Ædmondo, et solebant singuli milites de quatuor constabiliis dare xxviii. denarios, quando intrabant ad wardas faciendas, et unum denarium marescaldo, qui illos denarios colligebat, et ideo xxviii. denarios et non amplius dabant, quia decem milites de quinta constabilia solebant adjuvare ceteros quadraginta; ita quod, ubi debebat dare tres solidos integre, dederunt tantummodo xxix. denarios, et qui debebat intrare ad wardam faciendam in fine iiiij<sup>or</sup> mensium, intravit in fine xx. ebdomadarum. Modo autem dant singuli milites plene tres solidos et remanet abbatati superexcrementa quæ excrescit ultra xxix. denarios, unde poterit se adquietare de prænominatis vii. solidis.

the abbot and his predecessors were wont at the end of twenty weeks to give seven shillings for the wardship of the castle of Norwich from his own money, to supply the defect of the three knights; fees which earl Roger Bigod holds of St. Edmund. And all the knights of the four constabularies used to pay twenty-eight pence when they began to make wards, and one penny to the marshal who collected those pennies, and they gave twenty-eight pence and no more, because the ten knights of the fifth constabulary were wont to assist the other forty. Therefore, when they ought to have given three shillings in full, they gave only nineteen pence, and one who should have entered upon the duty of making ward at the end of four months, entered at the end of twenty weeks. Now, however, all the knights paid three shillings in full, and the amount by which it has been increased beyond twenty-nine pence remains to the abbot, wherefore he can repay himself the said seven shillings.

Ecce patet quam vim obtinuerunt comminationes abbatis, quas fecit die prima, quando recepit homagium de

Thus was seen how the threats of the abbot, which he uttered on his first day when he received the homage of his

<sup>†</sup>In 1173 the careless guard kept at Norwich had been the cause of the town's being taken and sacked by the Flemings (Will. de Neub. ii. 30); it was therefore to be expected that the defences of the castle would in after times be looked to more closely.

militibus suis, sicut præscriptum est, quando singuli milites promiserunt ei xx. solidos, et statim se retraxerunt, nolentes dare ei in summa nisi xl. libras, dicentes quod decem milites deberent adjuvare ceteros quadraginta in auxiliis et wardis faciendis, et in omnibus consimilibus.

Est autem quædam terra in Tivette-shale de feudo abbatis quæ reddere solet vigilibus de castello Norwici *Waite-fe*, id est, xx. solidos per annum, scilicet quinque solidos in quolibet jejunio quatuor temporum. Antiqua est hæc consuetudo, quam abbas libenter vellet mutare, si posset; sed impotentiam suam considerans in hac parte adhuc tacet et dissimulat.

*Concerning Henry of  
Essex.*

Ad beati regis et martyris memoriam diffusius dilatandam, præscriptis non incontinue, ut credimus, istud connectimus; non quod ego tantillus et nullius fere momenti istud memoriali titulo commendaverim,<sup>†</sup> quia dominus Jocelinus, elemosinarius noster, vir religionis eximiæ, potens in

knights, had their fulfilment, when, as has been related, all the knights promised him twenty shillings and at once went back on their promise, refusing to give him a total sum of more than forty pounds in making aids and performing wards and in all like things.

In Tivetshall there is some land on the fee of the abbot which used to pay to the watchmen of the castle of Norwich waite-fee, which is to say, twenty shillings a year, at the rate of five shillings at each of the four fasting times. This is an ancient custom, which the abbot was very anxious to change if he could. But as he saw his weakness in this matter, he still is silent and conceals his wish.

In order to spread far and wide the memory of the blessed king and martyr, we have added what follows to our writings, not improperly we hope.<sup>109</sup> It is not that I, who am unimportant and almost of no account at all, should put this out with an historical title, but that master Jocelin, our almoner, a man of renowned piety, one mighty in word

<sup>125</sup> This passage, as would appear from the terms of the first paragraph, is an interpolation by some other writer than Jocelin. Gervase (i., 165) mentions the conduct of Henry of Essex on the Welsh expedition, and the disastrous result on the English army. He adds, "Owing to this accident, Henry, who had been the noblest among the princes of England, suffered everlasting shame and disinheritance." Diceto (I., 310) mentions the duel. (Cp. *Mem.* I., 272, note.)

<sup>†</sup> "Sed" desideratur. Ro.

sermone et opere, ad potestatis preces imperiosas, sic tandem exorsus est; quæ mea reputo, quia, juxta præceptum Senecæ, quicquid ab aliquo bene dictum est, mihi inpræsumptuose ascribo.<sup>††</sup>

and deed, at the pressing request of the powers that be, at last thus began it in this way; and I regard the work as mine, since, according to the precept of Seneca, I may without presumption ascribe to myself whatever has been well said by another.

Cum venisset abbas apud Radingas, et nos cum eo, sicut decuit, suscepti sumus a monachis ejusdem loci; inter quos Henricus de Essexia devotus occurrit, qui, nacta loquendi opportunitate, abbati et omnibus assidentibus narravit qualiter victus fuit in duello, et qualiter Sanctus Ædmundus et ob quam causam confudit eum in ipsa hora pugnandi. Ego vero narrationem ejus in scriptum redegei, domino abbate præcipiente, et scripsi in hæc verba:

When the abbot was come to Reading, and we with him, we were rightly received by the monks of that place. And among them was Henry of Essex as a professed monk, who, when he had a chance to speak to the abbot and to those who were present, told us how he had been conquered in a trial by battle, and how and why St. Edmund confounded him in the very hour of conflict. But I wrote down his tale by command of the lord abbot, and I wrote it also in these words.

Quum non potest malum vitari nisi cognitum, actus et excessus Henrici de Estsexia memoriali scripto tradere dignum ducimus, ad cautelam quidem, non ad usum. Utilis et indemnis so-

Inasmuch as it is impossible to avoid unknown evil, we have thought it well to commit to writing the acts and crimes of Henry of Essex, that they may be a warning, and not an example. Sto-

<sup>†</sup>The cowardice of Henry of Essex, the hereditary standard bearer, who, in 1157, during an expedition into Flintshire, when the Welsh made a sudden attack, dropped the standard, and so brought the king and army into great peril, made a great sensation. Gervase (i. 165, Rolls ed.) briefly summarises the whole story; Diceto (*Ymag. Hist.* i. 310, Rolls ed.) records the duel fought between Henry and Robert de Montfort in 1163, and its result. Carlyle, with even more than his usual force and beauty of language, has made use of the monk's narrative in "Past and Present." Who this monk was is not known. The compiler in Bod. 240, p. 654, says it was Jocelin himself; but that seems inconsistent with the tenor of the opening sentence.

<sup>††</sup>Many things resembling this sentiment occur in the 109th Epistle of Seneca; but probably the passage meant is somewhere else in his works.

let esse castigatio, quam persuadent exemplaria.

Prædictus itaque Henricus dum floret in prosperis, inter primates regni vir magni nominis habebatur, genere clarus, armis conspicuus, regis signifer, verendus omnibus privilegio potestatis. Ceteri comprovinciales ecclesiam beati Ædmundi regis et martyris in rebus et redditibus ampliabant; ille vero non solum clausis oculis hoc præteribat, verum etiam vi et injuriis, et per injuriam, annuum redditum quinque solidorum abstraxit, et in proprios usus convertit.

Processu vero temporis, cum in curia Sancti Ædmundi ageretur causa de raptu cujusdam virginis, accessit idem H. protestans et asserens, loquelam illam in curia sua debere tractari ratione nativitatis ejusdem puellæ, quæ in dominio suo de Lailand nata fuerat. Cujus rationis prætextu, curiam Sancti Ædmundi in itineribus et innumerabilibus expensis longo temporis tractu vexare præsumpsit.

A.D. 1157.

In his interim  
et consimili-

ries often convey an useful and salutary warning.

The said Henry, then, while he enjoyed great prosperity, had the reputation of a great man among the nobles of the realm, and he was renowned by birth, noted for his deeds of arms, the standard-bearer of the king, and feared by all men owing to his might. And when others who lived near him enriched the church of the blessed king and martyr Edmund with goods and rents, he on the contrary not only shut his eyes to this fact, but further violently, and wrongfully, and by injuries took away the annual rent of five shillings, and converted it to his own use.

In the course of time, moreover, when a case arose in the court of St. Edmund concerning a wrong done to a certain maiden, the same Henry came thither, and protested and declared that the trial ought to be held in his court because the place where the said maiden was born was within his lordship of Lailand. With the excuse of this affair, he dared to trouble the court of St. Edmund for a long while with journeyings and countless charges.

But fortune, which had assisted his wishes in these and other like matters,

bus arridens ad votum, prosperitas perpetui subintulit causam doloris, et, sub fantasia jocundi principii, tristes in eum exitus moliebatur; ex usu etenim est ei arridere ut sæviat, blandiri ut fallat, extollere ut deprimat. Nec mora; insurrexit in eum Robertus de Monteforti, ipsius consanguineus, nec genere nec viribus impar, in conspectu principum terræ damnans et accusans eum de proditione regis. Asseruit nempe eum in expeditione belli apud Waliā in difficili transitu de Coleshelle vexillum domini regis fraudulenter abjecisse, et mortem ejus sublimi voce proclamasse, et in præsidium ejus venientes, in fugam convertisse. In rei veritate, prædictus Henricus de Essexia inclitum regem Henricum secundum, Walensium fraudibus interceptum, diem clausisse credidit extremum; quod revera factum fuisset, nisi Rogerus comes Clarensis, clarus genere et militari clarior exercitio, cum suis Clarensibus maturius occurrisset, et domini regis vexillum elevasset, ad corroborationem et animationem totius exercitus.

brought upon him a cause for lasting grief, and after mocking him with a happy beginning, planned a sad conclusion for him; for it is the custom of fortune to smile, that she may rage; to flatter, that she may deceive; and to raise up only that she may cast down. For presently there rose against him Robert de Montfort, his relative, and a man not unequal to him in birth and power, and slandered him in the presence of the princes of the land, accusing him of treason to the king. For he asserted that Henry, in the course of the Welsh war, in the difficult pass of Coleshill, had treacherously cast down the standard of the lord king, and proclaimed his death in a loud voice; and that he had induced those who were coming to the help of the king to turn in flight. As a matter of fact, the said Henry of Essex believed that the renowned king Henry the Second, who had been caught in an ambush by the Welsh, had been slain, and this would have been the truth, had not Roger, earl of Clare,<sup>110</sup> a man renowned in birth and more renowned for his deeds of arms, hastened up quickly with his men of Clare, and raised the standard of the lord king, which revived the strength and

<sup>126</sup>In the Latin there is here a play upon words: "comes Clarensis, clarus," etc., which cannot be rendered in a translation.

courage of the whole army.

Henrico quidem resistente  
<sup>A.D. 1163.</sup>  
te prædicto Roberto in concione, et  
objecta penitus inficiente, evoluto  
breui temporis spatio, ad corporale  
duellum perventum est. Convenerunt  
autem apud Radingas pugnaturi in  
insula<sup>†</sup> quadam satis abbatiae vicina;  
convenit et gentium multitudo, visura  
quem finem res sortiretur. Et factum  
est, cum Robertus duris et crebris  
ictibus viriliter intonasset, et audax  
principium fructum victoriae promi-  
sisset, Henricus parumper deficiens  
circumquaque respexit, et ecce in con-  
finio terrae et fluminis vidit gloriosum  
regem et martyrem Ædmundum ar-  
matum et quasi in aere volitantem,  
et cum quadam vultus austeritate  
versus eum crebro capitis motu mi-  
nas iracundiae et indignationis plenas  
prætententem; vidit et alium cum  
eo militem, Gilbertum de Cerivilla,  
non solum quantum ad apparentiam  
gradu dignitatis inferiorem, sed et ab  
humeris supra statura minorem, oculo-  
los quasi indignantes et iracundos in  
eum convertere. Hic ad præceptum  
ipsius Henrici, vinculis et tormentis  
afflictus, diem clausit extremum, in-  
trusus occasione et accusatione uxoris

Then Henry resisted the said Robert  
in the council, and utterly denied the  
charge, so that after a little while the  
matter came to a trial by battle. Then  
when they met at Reading to fight on  
an island somewhat near the abbey,  
there gathered there also a multitude  
of persons, to see how the affair would  
end. And it came to pass, that when  
Robert manfully made his armour  
ring again with hard and frequent  
blows, and his bold beginning pro-  
mised the fruit of victory, Henry's  
strength began to fail him a little. And  
as he looked round about, behold! on  
the edge of land and water, he saw the  
glorious king and martyr Edmund,  
armed and as it were flying in the  
air, and looking towards him with an  
angry countenance, often shaking his  
head in a threatening manner, and  
showing himself full of wrath. And  
Henry also saw with the saint ano-  
ther knight, Gilbert de Cereville, who  
appeared not only less than the saint  
in point of dignity, but also head and  
shoulders shorter; and he looked on  
him with accusing and angry glances.  
This Gilbert, by order of the said Hen-  
ry, afflicted with bonds and tortures,  
had died, as the result of an accusation

<sup>†</sup> The fight on the Thames eyot, "now a verdant meadow," is still traditionally remembered at Reading; see Murray's Handbook for Berks., p. 35.



Henrici, quæ propriam nequitiam in innocentem deflectens, dicebat se petitiones precarias Gilberti de illicito amore non posse sustinere.

Hos itaque, tam sollicitus quam timidus, intuens, Henricus antiquum scelus novum ferre pudorem recordatur. Et jam totus desperans, et rationem in impetum convertens, impugnantis non defendentis, assumpsit officium. Qui dum fortiter percussit, fortius percussus est; et dum viriliter impugnabat, viriliter inugnabatur. Quid multa? victus occubuit.

Cumque mortuus crederetur, ad magnam petitionem magnatum Angliæ, ejusdem Henrici consanguineorum, concessum est monachis ejusdem loci, ut darent ejus corpus sepulturæ. Postea tamen convaluit, et, resumpto sanitatis beneficio, sub regulari habitu, superioris ævi labem deterisit, et, longam dissolutæ ætatis ebdomadam uno saltem sabbato curans venustare studia virtutum in frugem felicitatis excoluit.

brought against him by the wife of Henry, who cast the penalty for her own ill-doing on an innocent man, and said that she could not endure the evil suggestions of the said Gilbert.

When he saw these sights, then, Henry grew alarmed and fearful, and called to mind that an old crime brings new shame. And now, giving up all hope, and abandoning skilful fighting for a blind rush, he took the part of one who attacks rather than that of one who defends himself. And when he gave hard blows, he received harder; and while he fought manfully, he was more manfully resisted. In a word, he fell conquered.

And as he was thought to be dead, in accordance with the earnest request of the magnates of England, the relatives of the said Henry, the monks of that place were allowed to give burial to his corpse. But he afterwards revived, and when he had regained the blessing of health, under the regular habit, he wiped out the stain of his former life, and taking care to purify the long week of his dissolute past with at least one sabbath, he cultivated the study of the virtues, to bring forth the fruit of happiness.

*How the abbot deceived  
the bishop of Ely for the  
good of his church.*

Galfridus Ridelus episcopus Eliensis petiit ab abbate materiam lignorum ad quædam magna ædificia facienda apud Glemesford; quod et abbas concessit, sed invitus; non ausus tunc eum offendere. Abbate moram apud Meleford faciente, venit quidam clericus episcopi, rogans ex parte domini sui ut ligna promissa possent capi apud Ælmeswell; et erravit in verbo, dicens Ælmeswell, ubi dicere deberet Ælmessethe, quod est nomen cujusdam nemoris de Meleford. Et mirabatur abbas de mandato, quia talia ligna non potuerunt inveniri apud Ælmeswell.

Quod cum audisset Ricardus forestarius de eadem villa, dixit occulte abbati, episcopum misisse proxima ebdomada præterita carpentarios suos tanquam exploratores in boscum de Ælmessethe, et eligisse<sup>†</sup> meliora ligna totius bosci, et signa sua imposuisse. Quo audito, subito comperit abbas nuntium episcopi errasse in mandato, respondens ei se facere libenter voluntatem episcopi.

Geoffrey Ridel, bishop of Ely, sought from the abbot a supply of wood for making some great buildings at Glemesford, and the abbot granted this request against his will, for he did not at that time dare to offend the bishop. But while the abbot was staying at Melford, a certain clerk of the bishop came and asked on behalf of his lord that they might be allowed to take the said wood at Elmswell; and he made a mistake in his speech, saying Elmswell where he should have said Elmset, the latter being the name of a certain wood at Melford. And the abbot marvelled at the message, for such wood was not to be found at Elmswell.

Then when Richard the forester of the same township had heard this, he told the abbot privately that the bishop in the preceding week had sent his carpenters as spies into the wood of Elmset, and that they had chosen the best trees in the whole wood, and marked them with their signs. At this news, the abbot saw at once that the messenger of the bishop had delivered his message wrongly, and told him that he would gladly meet the wish of the bishop.

In crastino recedente nuntio, sta-

On the morrow, after the messenger

---

<sup>†</sup>lege, elegisse.

tim post missam auditam ivit abbas cum carpentariis suis in boscum prænominatum, et omnes quercus prius signatas, cum plusquam centum aliis, suo signo signari fecit ad opus Sancti Ædmundi, et ad culmen magnæ turris, præcipiens ut quantocius succiderentur.

had departed, as soon as he had heard mass, the abbot went with his carpenters into the said wood, and caused all the oaks which had been already marked, and more than a hundred others, to be marked for the use of St. Edmund, and for the completion of the great tower; and he ordered that they should be cut down as rapidly as possible.

Episcopus autem, cum ex responso sui nuntii intellexit ligna prædicta apud Ælmeswell esse capienda, eundem nuntium multis contumeliis affectum remisit ad abbatem, ut verbum in quo erraverat corrigeret, dicendo Ælmesethe non Ælmeswell; sed antequam venisset ad abbatem, jam succisa erant omnia ligna quæ episcopus desideraverat, et carpentarii sui signaverant. Unde et eum ligna alia et alibi capere oporteret si vellet. Ego autem, quando hoc videbam, ridebam, et dicebam in corde meo: "Sic ars deluditur arte."

But the bishop, when he learned from the report of his messenger that the needed wood was to be taken at Elmswell, overwhelmed the messenger with much abuse, and sent him back to the abbot that he might correct the word which he had said wrongly, that is, when he said Elmswell for Elmset. But before he had come to the abbot, all the trees, which the bishop desired, and which his carpenters had marked, had been cut down. It was therefore necessary for the bishop to take other trees and in another place, if he would. But I, when I saw this, laughed and said in my heart, "Thus craft is defeated by craft."

*How there were disputes  
concerning the  
appointment of bailiffs for  
the town.  
A.D. 1182.*

Mortuo Hugone abbate, voverunt custodes abbatiæ deponere præfectos villæ Sancti Ædmundi et

On the death of abbot Hugh, the wardens of the abbacy desired to depose the bailiffs of the town of St. Edmund's, and to appoint new bailiffs by their authority, alleging that this right pertained to the king, in whose hand

novos constituere sua auctoritate, dicentes hoc pertinere ad regem, in cuius manu abbatia fuit. Nos autem inde conquerentes, misimus nuntios nostros domino Ranulfo de Glanvilla, tunc justiciario; qui respondit se bene scire xl. libras debere reddi de villa annuatim sacristiæ nostræ, et nominatim ad luminaria ecclesiæ; et dixit H. abbatem pro voluntate sua et in thalamo suo sine consensu conventus præfecturam dedisse quotiens voluit et quibus voluit, salvis xl. libris altari reddendis; et ideo non esse mirandum si bailivi regis hoc ipsum exigerent ex parte regis, et acerbe loquens, nos omnes monachos stultos nominavit, ex hoc quod passi sumus abbatem nostrum talia fecisse; non advertens quod monachorum summa religio tacere est, et excessus suorum prælatorum clausis oculis præterire; nec attendens quod baratores dicuntur, si in aliquo, sive juste sive injuste, contradicimus, et quandoque rei læsæ majestatis, vel carceris vel exilii poena damnamur; unde et sanius consilium mihi et consimilibus meis videtur, ut confessores, quam ut moriamur martyres.

the abbey was. But when we made complaint on this matter and sent our messengers to the lord Ranulf Glanvill, who was then justiciar, he answered that he was well aware that forty pounds ought to be rendered from the town<sup>111</sup> to our sacristan annually, and especially for the lights of the church. And he added that abbot Hugh, according to his pleasure and in his chamber, without the assent of the monastery, had given the office of bailiff as often and to whomsoever he would, saving the forty pounds of revenue for the altar; it was therefore not remarkable if the officials of the king exacted this right on the king's behalf. Then in rough tones, he called all us monks fools in that we had allowed our abbot to do such things, not thinking that the chief duty of monks is to keep silence, and to shut their eyes to all the faults of their prelates, nor thinking of the fact that we are called cheats if in any matter, either rightly or wrongly, we raise opposition, and that sometimes we are accused of treason, and sometimes condemned to imprisonment and exile. For these reasons, it seems the wiser counsel to me and those in my position, rather to die as confessors than as martyrs.

<sup>127</sup> Rokewode (p. 136) states that Eugenius III. confirmed the appropriation of the rents of the town to the use of the sacrist, in the days of abbot Ording.

Redeunte ad nos nuntio nostro, et nar-  
rante quæ audierat et viderat, quasi  
inviti et coacti inivimus consilium ut,  
communi voluntate et conventus et  
custodum abbatiaë, deponerentur ve-  
teres præfecti villæ, reluctantæ Sam-  
sone subsacrista nobiscum, quantum  
potuimus.

Samson autem abbas factus, non im-  
memor injuriæ conventui illatæ, in  
crastino Paschæ proximæ post electio-  
nem suam fecit conveniri in capitulo  
nostro milites et clericos et multitudi-  
nem burgensium, et coram omnibus  
dixit istam villam pertinere ad con-  
ventum et ad altare, nominatim ad  
inveniendâ luminaria ecclesiæ; et se  
velle renovare antiquam consuetu-  
dinem, ut coram conventu et cum  
communi assensu tractaretur de præ-  
fectura villæ et consimilibus quæ ad  
conventum pertinebant.

Et nominati sunt eadem hora duo bur-  
genses, Godefridus et Nicholaus, ut es-  
sent præfecti, habitaque disputatione  
de cujus manu cornu acciperent, quod

When our messenger returned to us  
and told what he had heard and seen,  
we took counsel, as it were unwillingly  
and under compulsion, to the effect  
that, by the common action of the mo-  
nastery and of the wardens of the ab-  
bey, the old bailiffs of the town should  
be deposed; this was as far as possible  
to be a joint act, though Samson, who  
was our subsacristan, was opposed to  
the plan.

At a later date, when he had been ma-  
de abbot, Samson was not unmindful  
of the injury which had been done to  
the abbey, and on the morrow of the  
Easter next after his election, he cau-  
sed the knights and clerks and many  
burgesses to be gathered together in  
our chapter, and in the presence of all  
of them said that this town belonged  
to the monastery and to the altar, espe-  
cially in the matter of finding lights  
for the church. And he said that he  
wished to renew the old custom, that  
all that concerned the bailiwick of the  
town and such like matters pertaining  
to the monastery, should be decided  
in the presence of the monastery and  
by common assent.

And at that same time two burghers,  
Godfrey and Nicholas, were named  
bailiffs, and there was a dispute as to  
the question from whose hand they

dicitur *mot-horn*, tandem illud receperunt de manu prioris, qui post abbatem caput est de rebus conventus. Illi autem duo præfecti bailivam suam pacifice custodierunt per plures annos, quousque dicerentur remissi in iustitia regis custodienda: dictante autem ipso abbate, ut major securitas daretur conventui super hac re, remotis illis, recepit Hugo sacrista villam in manu sua, novos servientes constituens, qui ei de præfectura responderent; sed processu temporis, nescio quomodo, postea novi præfecti substituti sunt alibi quam in capitulo, et sine conventu; unde vel simile vel majus timetur periculum post decessum abbatis Samsonis, quam fuerit post decessum Hugonis abbatis.

should receive the horn, which is called moot-horn.<sup>112</sup> At last they received it from the hand of the prior, who after the abbot is the chief man in the affairs of the monastery. Then those two bailiffs peacefully exercised their jurisdiction for many years, until they were said to be slack in administering the justice of the king. Then at the suggestion of the abbot himself, that greater security might be given to the monastery in this matter, they were removed, and the sacristan Hugh received it into his hand. He appointed new servants, who were responsible to him for the bailiwick. In course of time, however—I know not for what reason—new bailiffs were again appointed elsewhere than in the chapter, and without the assent of the monastery, on which account there was a fear of the same or greater danger after the death of abbot Samson than there had been after the death of abbot Hugh.

Quidam autem ex fratribus nostris, de amore et familiaritate abbatis plenius confidens, nacta opportunitate, et modeste sicut decuit, convenit inde abbatem, asserens inde murmur fieri in conventu. Abbas vero, his auditis, diu tacuit, ac si aliquantulum inde turbare-

And one of our brothers, who was fully confident of the love and friendship of the abbot, took an opportunity to address the abbot on this matter, with due modesty, and he declared that the monastery murmured for this cause. When the abbot heard this he was long

<sup>112</sup>The horn which was sounded to summon to assemblies of the moots or meetings, whether of the shire or boroughs. (Cp. Rokewode, p. 136–7.)

tur, et tandem ita dicebatur respondisse: "Nonne ego, ego sum abbas? nonne mea interest disponere de rebus ecclesiæ mihi commissæ, dummodo sapienter egero et secundum Deum? Si defectus fuerit regiæ justitiæ in villa ista, ego calumniatus ero, ego ero summonitus, mihi incumbet labor itineris et expensæ, et defensio villæ et pertinentium; ego stultus habebor, non prior, non sacrista, non conventus; sed ego, qui caput eorum sum et esse debeo. Per me et consilium,<sup>†</sup> Domino adjuvante, erit villa servata indemnite pro posse meo, et salvæ erunt quadraginta libræ annuatim reddendæ altari. Murmurent fratres; detrahant; dicant inter se, quod voluerint; pater eorum sum et abbas; quamdiu vixero, honorem meum alteri non dabo."

His dictis, recessit monachus, qui eadem responsa referebat. Ego autem de talibus verbis mirabar, et contrariis motibus mecum disputavi; tandem dubitare coactus, eo quod regula ju-

silent, as if he were somewhat troubled for this, and at last, so it is said, answered as follows: "Am not I, even I, the abbot? Is it not my affair to dispose of the goods of the church committed to my care, provided that I act wisely and according to God? If there be a default in the administration of the king's justice in this town, I shall be accused on the matter, I shall be summoned to the court, on me will fall the labour of the journey and the expense, and the defence of the town and of that which pertains thereto. It will be I who am regarded as a fool, and not the prior or the sacristan or the monastery. No, it will be I, who am and ought to be their head. By my means and by my counsel, with God's help, the town shall be preserved unharmed so far as in me lies, and the forty pounds of annual rent to the altar shall be preserved. Let the brothers murmur; let them blame me; let them say what they will among themselves. I am their father and abbot, and while I live, I will not give mine honour to another."

When he had so spoken, the monk left him and told his answers. But I marvelled at such words, and thought the thing over in secret and with care. At last I was forced to doubt still, since

---

<sup>†</sup>"Meum," desiderari videtur. Roke.

ris dicit et docet, ut omnia sint in dispositione abbatis.<sup>†</sup>

*How abbot Samson  
disputed with the men of  
London about the payment  
of tolls.*

loneo ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi; plures tamen inviti et coacti dederunt illud; unde multus tumultus et commotio magna facta est inter cives Lundeniæ in suo hustengio. Convenientes ergo inde, abbati S. dixerunt, se quietos esse debere per totam Angliam auctoritate cartæ, quam habuerunt de rege Henrico secundo.

Quibus abbas respondit, quod, si necesse esset, bene posset trahere regem in warrantum, quod nunquam aliquam cartam eis fecit in præjudicium ecclesiæ nostræ, nec in detrimentum libertatum Sancti Ædmundi, cui sanctus Ædwardus *tollum* et *themum* et omnia jura regalia concessit et confirmavit, ante conquestum Angliæ; et quod rex Henricus dedit Lundeniensibus quie-

the rule of law says and teaches us that all things are in the disposition of the abbot.

The merchants of London wished to be quit from toll at the fair of St. Edmund's. Many, however, though unwillingly and under compulsion, paid it, and on this account many tumults and a great disturbance occurred between the citizens of London in their court. Wherefore, having held a meeting about the matter, they sent word to abbot Samson that they ought to be quit of toll throughout all England, under the authority of the charter which they held from king Henry the Second.

To this the abbot answered that, were it needful, he could easily bring the king to warrant him that he had never made them a charter in prejudice of our church, or to the injury of the liberties of St. Edmund, to whom the holy Edward had granted and confirmed toll and theam<sup>113</sup> and all regalian rights before the conquest of England. And he added that king Henry

<sup>†</sup> Grat. Decr. Pars Secunda, xviii. 2, 9: "Abbatis sollicitudo, ad quem potestas tota pervenire convenit."

<sup>129</sup> These two words are defined in Stubbs' *Select Charters* (glossary) as follows: "Tol, duty on imports. Theam, the right of compelling the person in whose hands stolen or lost property was found to vouch to warranty, that is, to name the person from whom he received it." On the other hand, the terms, in conjunction with infangenthef, are often used as a mere jingle which has no particular meaning; and taken together, tol and theam may be said to mean the ordinary rights conferred on towns—that is, a vague concession.



tantiam thelonei per dominia sua propria, ubi poterat dare eam; quia in villa Sancti Ædmundi non poterat, quod suum non erat.

Audientes hæc Lundonienses, communi consilio decreverunt, quod nulus ex eis veniret ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi, et duobus annis absentaverunt se, unde magnum detrimentum habuerunt nundinæ nostræ, et oblatio sacristæ minorata fuit in magna parte. Tandem, episcopo Lundonensi et aliis pluribus interloquentibus, ita convenit inter nos et eos, quod ipsi venirent ad nundinas, et aliqui ex eis darent theloneum, sed statim eisdem redderetur, ut sub tali velamento utrimque libertas servaretur.

Sed processu temporis, cum fecisset abbas concordiam cum militibus suis, et quasi in pace dormisset, ecce iterum “Philistiim super te, Samson!” Ecce Londonienses, una voce comminantes, quod domos lapideas, quas abbas eodem anno ædificaverat, ad terram prosternerent, vel contra, namum de hominibus Sancti Ædmundi in centuplum acciperent, nisi abbas citius emendaret injuriam eis illatam a præ-

had given to the Londoners quittance from toll throughout his own demesnes, where he had the right to give it; for in the city of St. Edmund’s he could not give it, for it was not his to give.

When the Londoners heard this, they decreed with common assent that none of them should come to the fair of St. Edmund’s, and for two years they did absent themselves, whence our fair suffered great loss, and the offerings in our sacristry were greatly diminished. Eventually, when the bishop of London and many others had mediated, an agreement was reached between them and us whereby they should come to the fair, and some of them should pay toll, but this should be at once returned to them, that by such a device the privilege of both parties might be maintained.

But as time went on, when the abbot had come to an agreement with his knights, and as it were, rested in peace, lo! again, “The Philistines be upon thee, Samson!”<sup>114</sup> For the Londoners, with one voice, threatened to level with the earth the stone houses, which the abbot had built in the same year, or to take distress a hundredfold from the men of St. Edmund, if the abbot not at once make reparation to them

<sup>130</sup>Jud. xvi., 9.

fectis villæ Sancti Ædmundi, qui xv. denarios acceperant a caretis civium Londoniensium, quæ, venientes de Gernemue, allecia portantes, transitum per nos fecerunt. Et dicebant cives Lundonienses fuisse quietos de theloneo in omni foro, et semper et ubique, per totam Angliam, a tempore quo Roma primo fundata fuit, et civitatem Lundoniæ, eodem tempore fundatam, talem debere habere libertatem per totam Angliam, et ratione civitatis privilegiatæ, quæ olim metropolis fuit et caput regni, et ratione antiquitatis.

for the wrong which they had suffered from the bailiffs of the town of St. Edmund's. For they had taken fifteen pence from the carts of the citizens of London, which were coming from Yarmouth and carrying herrings, and which passed through our town. And the citizens of London said that they had been quit of toll in every market, and always and in every place, throughout all England, from the time when the city of Rome was first founded, at which time the city of London was also founded. They said that they ought to have this privilege throughout all England, both on the ground that their city was a privileged city, which had been the metropolis and capital of the kingdom, and on the score of the antiquity of the city.

Abbas vero competentes indutias quæsiuit inde, usque ad reditum domini regis in Angliam, ut eum super hoc consuleret; et, habito consilio cum jurisdiscretis, replegiavit calumniatoribus illos xv. denarios, reservata utrique parti quæstione de jure suo.

The abbot, however, asked for a truce on this dispute for a reasonable time, until the return of the king to England, that he might consult with him on this matter; and taking the advice of men skilled in the law, he handed back to the complainants those fifteen pence as a pledge, without prejudice to the question of the right of either party.

*How there was a dispute  
with the burghers as to the  
dues from the town.  
A.D. 1192.*

Decimo anno  
abbatiæ S. ab-  
batis, de com-  
muni consilio

In the tenth year of the abbacy of abbot Samson, by common counsel of our chapter, we made complaint to the abbot in his court and said that the re-

capituli nostri, conquesti sumus abbat in curia sua, dicentes redditus et exitus omnium bonarum villarum et burgorum Angliæ crescere et augmentari, in commodum possidentium et emendationem dominorum, præter villam istam, quæ xl. libras dare solet, et nunquam ad plus extenditur; et burghenses villæ esse in causa hujusmodi rei, qui tantas et tot purpresturas tenent in foro, de sopis et seldis, et stalagiis, sine assensu conventus, et ex solo dono præfectorum villæ, qui annuales firmarii et quasi servientes sacristæ fuerunt, pro beneplacito ejus removendi.

Burgenses vero summoniti responderunt, se esse in assisa regis, nec de tenementis, quæ illi et patres eorum tenuerunt, bene et in pace, uno anno et uno die, sine calumnia, se velle respondere contra libertatem villæ et cartas suas; et dixerunt talem fuisse consuetudinem antiquam, ut præfecti darent, inconsulto conventu, loca soparum et seldarum in foro per aliquem redditum præfecturæ annuatim reddendum. Nos autem reclamantes volumus, ut abbas dissaisiaret eos de talibus tenementis, unde warantum nullum habuerunt.

ceipts from all the goods of the towns and boroughs of England were increased, and had grown to the advantage of the possessors and the greater profit of their lords, save in the case of this town, which had been wont to pay forty pounds and had never had its dues increased. And we said that the burghers of the city were responsible for this, since they held so many and such large stands in the market-place, shops and sheds and stalls, without the assent of the monastery, and at the sole gift of the bailiffs of the town, who were annual holders of their offices, and as it were servants of the sacristan, being removable at his good pleasure.

But when the burghers were summoned, they answered that they were under the jurisdiction of the king, and that they ought not to make reply, contrary to the liberty of the town and their charters, concerning that which they had held and their fathers well and in peace, for one year and a day without dispute. And they said that it was the old custom that the bailiffs should, without consulting the monastery, give to them places for shops and sheds in the market-place, in return for some annual payment to the bailiwick. But we disputed this, and wished the abbot to dispossess them of such things as they held without having any

warrant for them.

Abbas vero veniens ad consilium nostrum, tanquam unus ex nobis, secreto nobis dixit, se velle nobis rectum tenere pro posse suo; sed ordine iusticiario se debere procedere, nec sine iudicio curiæ posse dissaisiare liberos homines suos de terris vel redditibus suis, quos per plures annos tenuerunt, sive iuste, sive injuste: quod si faceret, dicebat se cadere in misericordiam regis per assisam regni.

Then the abbot came to our council, as if he had been one of ourselves, and privately informed us that he wished, so far as he could, to do right to us; but that he had to proceed in a judicial manner, and that he could not, without the judgment of the court, dispossess his free men of their lands and revenues, which they had, whether rightly or wrongly, held for many years. He added that if he were to do this, he would be liable to punishment at the discretion of the king and at the assizes of the kingdom.

Burgenses ergo, ineuntes consilium, optulerunt conventui redditum c. solidorum pro bono pacis, et ut tenerent tenementa sua, sicut solebant. Nos vero hoc nolimus concedere, malentes ponere loquelam in respectum, sperantes forsitan, tempore alterius abbatis, vel omnia recuperare, vel locum nundinarum mutare; et ita res cepit dilationem per plures annos.

The burghers, therefore, took counsel and offered the monastery a revenue of a hundred shillings for the sake of peace, and that they might hold that which they held as they had been accustomed. But we would not grant this, preferring to postpone the matter, and perchance hoping that in the time of another abbot, either we might recover all, or change the place of the fair; and so the matter for many years advanced no further.

*Concerning the charter  
granted to the town by the  
abbot.*

*A.D. 1194.*

Cum autem redisset abbas de Allemannia, optulerunt ei burgenses lx. marcas, et

But when the abbot had returned from Germany, the burghers offered him sixty marks, and sought his confirmation of the liberties of the town, under the same form of words as that in whi-

petierunt confirmationem suam de libertatibus villæ, sub eadem forma verborum, sicut prædecessores ejus Anselmus et Ordinus et Hugo eis confirmaverant; quod et abbas Samson benigne annuit eis. Nobis autem murmurantibus et grunnientibus, facta est eis carta, sicut eis promiserat: et quia pudor esset ei et confusio, si non posset implere quod promiserat, nolimus ei contradicere, nec ad iracundiam provocare. Burgenses autem, ex quo habuerunt cartam abbatis S. et conventus, confidebant plenius, quod nunquam tempore abbatis S. amitterent tenementa sua nec libertates suas; unde nunquam postea, sicut prius, voluerunt prænominatum redditum centum solidorum dare nec offerre.

Abbas autem, hoc tandem advertens, convenit burgenses super hoc, dicens quod, nisi facerent pacem cum conventu, prohiberet seldas eorum ædificari ad nundinas Sancti Ædmundi. Illi vero responderunt, se velle dare singulis annis cappam sericam, vel aliquod aliud ornamentum ad pretium centum solidorum, sicut prius promiserunt; sed tamen hoc pacto, ut quieti essent imperpetuum de decimis denariorum, quos sacrista acriter ab eis

ch his predecessors Anselm and Ordinus and Hugh had confirmed them to them. And this also the abbot graciously conceded.<sup>115</sup> But while we murmured and grumbled, a charter was made for them, as he had promised to them; and as it would have been a source of shame and confusion to him if he had been unable to do that which he had promised, we would not oppose him, or provoke him to anger. But the burghers, from the time when they had the charter of abbot Samson and of the monastery, were full of confidence that they would never lose their holdings and liberties in the time of abbot Samson; and, therefore, never afterwards would they, as they had done before, give or offer the said revenue of a hundred shillings.

The abbot, however, at length turned his attention to this, and assembling the burghers together about the matter, said that if they would not make their peace with the monastery, he would forbid their sheds to be put up at the fair of St. Edmund's. Then they answered that they would give every year a silken cope, or some other ornament to the value of a hundred shillings, as they had before promised. But they offered this on condition

<sup>115</sup> Samson's charter is to be found in the *Monasticon* (Rokewode, p. 137).

exigebat.

that they should be quit for ever from the tenths on their money which the sacristan sternly exacted from them.

Abbas autem et sacrista hoc contradi-  
xerunt, et ideo posita est iterum loque-  
la in respectum. Nos vero illos c. soli-  
dos huc usque amisimus, secundum  
quod vulgariter solet dici: “Qui non  
vult capere quando potest, non capiet  
quando volet.”

The abbot and the sacristan opposed  
this offer, and so the dispute was again  
left unsettled. But we have lost tho-  
se hundred shillings from that day to  
this, according as is said in the proverb,  
“He that will not when he may, when  
he will he shall have nay.”

*How the monastery was  
troubled with incompetent  
cellarers.*

Celerarii cele-  
rarii plures  
pluribus suc-  
cedebant, et  
quilibet eorum in fine anni magno  
debito deprimebatur. Dabantur ce-  
lerario in auxilium xx. libræ de Mil-  
denhal, nec sufficiebant. Assignatæ  
sunt postea quinquaginta libræ celera-  
rio singulis annis de eodem manerio;  
et adhuc dicebat celerarius hoc non  
sufficere.

Cellarers succeeded each other in rap-  
id succession, and each one of them  
at the end of the year was oppressed  
with great debt. The twenty pounds  
from Mildenhall were given to assist  
the cellarer, and proved insufficient.  
Afterwards there were assigned to him  
forty pounds a year from the same ma-  
nerio, and still the cellarer said that this  
was not enough.

Volens ergo abbas indemnitati et utili-  
tati tam suæ quam nostræ providere,  
sciens in omni defectu nostro ad eum,  
tanquam ad patrem monasterii, esse  
recurrendum, quendam clericum de  
mensa sua, magistrum Ranulfum no-  
mine, celerario nostro associavit, ut ei  
tanquam testis et socius assisteret, et  
in expensis et in receiptis.

Accordingly the abbot, wishing to pro-  
vide for his own safety and comfort  
and for ours, as he knew that in the  
case of any deficiency we must appeal  
to him, as the father of the monaste-  
ry, associated with our cellarer one of  
the clerks of his table, master Ranulf  
by name, that he might assist him as  
a witness and companion both in the  
paying out and in the receiving of mo-

ney.

Et ecce! multi multa loquuntur. Denscunt murmurationes, fabricantur mendacia, consuuntur detractioes detractioibus, nec est angulus in domate, qui venenoso non resonet sibilo. Dicit aliquis alicui: "Quid est quod factum est? quis vidit talia? nunquam tale dedecus factum est conventui. Ecce! abbas constituit clericum super monachum; ecce! clericum constituit magistrum et custodem super celarium, ut nichil boni possit facere sine eo. Monachos suos vilipendit abbas, monachos suspectos habet, clericos consulit, clericos diligit. 'Quomodo obscuratum est aurum, mutatus est color optimus.'"

And behold! there was much diversity of opinion. Murmurs rose; lies were invented; slanders are joined to slanders, nor is there a spot in the house which is not resounding with poisonous hisings. One says to another, "What is this which has been done? Who has seen such things? Never was such a disgrace inflicted on a monastery. See! the abbot has made a clerk superior to a monk. See! he has made a clerk master and guardian over the cellarer, that he may be able to do no good without him. The abbot little regards his monks; he suspects them: he consults the clerks; he loves clerks. How is the gold become dim! how is the most fine gold changed!"<sup>116</sup>

Dixit item amicus amico: "Facti sumus in opprobrium vicinis nostris. Omnes nos monachi vel infideles, vel improvidi reputamur; clerico creditur, non monacho: magis confidit abbas de clerico quam de monacho. Numquid clericus ille magis fidelis est, vel magis sapiens, quam aliquis monachus?" Item dixit socius socio: "Celerarius et subcelerarius nonne sunt, vel esse possunt, tam fideles homines ut sacrista, vel ut camerarius? Consequens ergo est, ut iste abbas,

And friend said to friend, "We are become a reproach to our neighbours. All we monks are held to be either dishonest or extravagant; credit is given to a clerk, not to a monk; the abbot has more confidence in a clerk than in a monk. Why should this clerk be more faithful, or wiser, than some monk?" And one said to his companion, "Are not our cellarer and sub-cellarer, or cannot they be, as faithful men as the sacristan or as the chamberlain? The result is that this abbot or his suc-

<sup>132</sup>Lament. iv., 1.

vel successor ejus, clericum ponat cum sacrista, clericum cum camerario, clericum cum subsacristis, ad colligendam oblationem ad feretrum, et sic cum singulis officialibus, unde nos erimus in subsannationem et derisum omni populo.”

Ego autem talia audiens, solebam respondere: “Si ego essem celerarius, vellem utique, ut clericus mihi testis esset in omnibus agendis; quia si bene facerem, ipse testimonium perhiberet de bono; si vero in fine anni aliquo debito oppressus essem, credi possem et excusari per clericum illum.”

Unum autem ex fratribus nostris, virum utique discretum et litteratum, audivi quiddam dicentem, quod movit me et plures alios: “Non est,” inquit, “mirandum, si dominus abbas de nostris rebus custodiendis partes suas interponat, qui portionem abbatiæ, quæ eum contingit, sapienter regit et domui suæ sapienter disponit, cujus interest defectum nostrum supplere, si ex incuria vel inpotentia nostra contingat. Sed unum,” inquit, “restat periculum, post mortem S. abbatis futurum, quale nunquam nobis contigit diebus vitæ nostræ. Venient sine dubio bailivi regis et saisiabunt abbatiā in manu sua, scilicet baroniam quæ pertinet ad ab-

cessor will associate a clerk with the sacristan, and a clerk with the chamberlain, and a clerk with the subsacristans, to collect the offerings at the shrine, and so with all the officials, whereby we shall become a laughing-stock and a scorn to all people.”

But when I heard these things, I used to answer, “If I were cellarer, I should wish to have a clerk to be my witness in all that had to be done, and so if I did well, he would bear witness of the good, but if at the end of the year I were burdened with any debt, I should be able by means of the clerk to gain credence and be excused.”

I heard a certain one of our brothers, a man discreet and learned indeed, say a thing which moved me and many others. “It is not wonderful,” he declared, “if the lord abbot intervenes in matters connected with the safe conduct of our affairs. For he rules wisely the part of the abbey, which belongs to him, and he makes wise dispositions for his house; and it is his concern to supply that which is lacking to us, if a want arises owing to our carelessness or poverty. But,” he continued, “there is yet one possible danger which may arise after the death of abbot Samson, and such a danger has never been in all the days of our life. There is no doubt



batem, sicut olim factum est post mortem cæterorum abbatum; et sicut olim post mortem H. abbatis voluerunt ballivi regis constituere novos præfectos in villa Sancti Ædmundi, auctoritate<sup>†</sup> allegantes H. abbatem hoc fecisse, consimili ratione, processu temporis, ballivi regis ponent clericum suum ad custodiendum cellarium, ut per eum et ad præceptum ejus omnia fiant; et dicuntur se debere hoc facere, quia abbas Samson sic fecit; et ita poterunt commiseri et confundi res et redditus abbatis et conventus, quos abbas Robertus<sup>‡</sup> bonæ memoriæ requisito consilio distinxit, et ab invicem separavit." Cum hoc et consimilia verba audirem a viro magni consilii et provido, stupui et tacui, domnum abbatem de tali facto nec volens condemnare, nec volens excusare.

that the officers of the king will come and will take the abbey into his hand, that is, the barony which pertains to the abbot, as has been done hitherto, after the death of other abbots, and as was done before on the death of abbot Hugh, the officials of the king will desire to appoint new bailiffs in the town of St. Edmund, alleging as their authority that abbot Hugh did this. And for the same reason, in course of time, the officials of the king will appoint a clerk of theirs to watch over the cellar, that all things may be done through him and by his command, and they will say that this ought to be done, because abbot Samson did so. And in this way they will be able to mingle and to confound the affairs and revenues of the abbot and of the monastery, which abbot Robert,<sup>117</sup> of happy memory, after taking counsel, separated and divided from each other." And when I heard these and other like words from a man of great wisdom and prudence, I was overwhelmed and was silent, wishing not to condemn and wishing not to excuse the lord abbot in so great a

<sup>†</sup>So J.; Mr. Gage Rokewode read "auctoritatem." The meaning is the same in either case, "alleging in warrant," (or, "as their warrant") "that abbot Hugo had done this."

<sup>133</sup>Robert II. (1107–12). The charter of Henry I. confirming this division is to be found in the *Monasticon* (ed. 1846, III., 152, No. xiv).

<sup>‡</sup>Abbot Robert II., who died in 1107, a few weeks after he had been blessed by St. Anselm; see App., B. Mr. Rokewode follows Battely here in his mistaken belief that Robert survived till 1112; see his note on the passage.

matter.

*How the abbot resisted  
Hubert Walter when he  
claimed legatine authority  
over the abbey.  
About A.D. 1198.*

Hubertus Walteri<sup>†</sup> archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, et legatus apostolicæ sedis et iusticiarius Angliæ, cum multas ecclesias visitasset, et multa mutasset et innovasset jure legatiæ, rediens de matre sua carnali<sup>‡</sup> morante et moriente apud Derham,\* transmisit ad nos ij. clericos suos, portantes literas domini sui signatas, quibus continebatur, ut dictis et factis eorum fidem haberemus. Illi vero abbati et conventui proposuerunt interroganda, utrum vellemus recipere dominum suum legatum ad nos venientem, sicut debet recipi legatus, et recipitur ab aliis ecclesiis. Quod et si concederemus, in brevi veniret ad nos, una cum consilio abbatis et conventus de rebus

Hubert Walter, archbishop of Canterbury, and legate of the apostolic see and justiciar of England, after he had visited many churches, and had changed many things and introduced innovations by his legatine authority,<sup>118</sup> on his return from his carnal mother, who was dying at Dereham<sup>119</sup> where she dwelt, he sent to us two of his clerks, who bore sealed letters from their lord, in which it was announced that we should give credence to their sayings and acts. Then these clerks made enquiry of the abbot and monastery as to whether we would receive their lord, the legate, who was coming to us, in such a manner as a legate ought to be received, and as he had been received in other churches. And if we would grant this, then he would shortly come to us, to settle the business

<sup>†</sup> Hubert's father, Harvey Walter, was descended from Hubert, the first Norman settler, who received grants of land at the time of the Conquest in Norfolk and Suffolk. Theobald, the favourite brother of the archbishop, migrated to Ireland, assumed the name of Boteler, and became the ancestor of the great house of Ormond. (Hook's Archbishops of Canterbury.)

<sup>134</sup> Hubert Walter received the legation from Celestine III. in 1195. An account of his proceedings on the visitation of York, and the decrees which he issued there, are to be found in Hoveden (III., 293–7). Hoveden (III., 299) also relates the deposition of the abbot of Thorney by Hubert Walter at this time.

<sup>‡</sup> This was Maude, daughter of Theobald de Valoines, a sister of Bertha, the wife of Ranulf de Glanville. (Hook.)

\* At West Dereham in 1188, Hubert, being then Dean of York, founded a house of Præmonstratensian canons, for the benefit of his own and his parents' souls, and of those of Ranulf de Glanville and Bertha his wife, "qui nos nutreierun." Dugdale, vi. 899.

<sup>135</sup> West Dereham, in Norfolk, was the birthplace of Hubert Walter.

et negotiis ecclesiæ nostræ secundum Deum dispositurus; quod et si ei hoc nollemus concedere, clerici illi duo mandatum domini sui nobis plenius exprimerent.

Abbate vero convocante plures de conventu, tale consilium inivimus, ut clericis ad nos missis benigne responderemus, dicentes, nos velle dominum suum recipere, ut legatum, cum omni honore et reverentia, et mittere simul cum eis nuntios nostros, qui hoc domino legato ex parte nostra dicerent; et consultum habuimus ut, sicut prius feceramus episcopo Eliensi et aliis legatis, ei omnem honorem exhiberemus cum profectione, et campanis resonantibus, et cum ceteris solempnibus, eum reciperemus, donec veniretur ad scrutinium in capitulo forsitan faciendum: quod si vellet facere, tunc demum ei omnes unanimiter resisteremus in facie, Romam appellantes et cartis nostris innitentes.

Dixitque dominus abbas: "Si ad præsens voluerit legatus ad nos venire, ita faciemus sicut supradictum est; si vero adventum suum ad nos distulerit ad tempus, interim dominum papam consulemus, quærentes, quam vim habe-

and affairs of our church according to God, with the advice of the abbot and monastery. But if we would not grant this, those two clerks would explain to us more in detail the message of their lord.

Then the abbot summoned the majority of the monastery and we took counsel that we should give a favourable answer to the clerks who had been sent to us, saying that we would receive their lord, as legate, with all honour and respect, and that we should send with them our messengers, who should say the same to the lord legate on our behalf. And our idea was that, as we had previously done in the case of the bishop of Ely and other legates, we should show him all honour with a profection and the ringing of bells, and receive him with the other due ceremonies, until perchance he should come to hold a visitation in the chapter. And if he wished to do this, then at last we should all resist him in common to the face, appealing to Rome and trusting to our charters.

The lord abbot said also, "If the legate now wishes to come to us, let us act in this manner as has been said. But if he delay his coming to us for a while, let us again seek counsel of the lord pope, and ask what force the privileges of

re debeant privilegia ecclesiæ nostræ, ab eo et antecessoribus suis impetrata, contra archiepiscopum, qui super omnes privilegiatas ecclesias Angliæ a sede apostolica potestatem impetravit." Tale fuit consilium nostrum.

our church, which we have obtained from him and his predecessors, ought to have as against the archbishop, who has obtained power from the apostolic see over all the other privileged churches of England." Such then was our counsel.

Cum autem audisset archiepiscopus, quod vellemus recipere eum ut legatum, nuntios nostros gratanter recepit, et cum gratiarum actione. Et factus est domino abbati in omnibus negotiis suis benignus et propitius, et adventum suum ad nos quibusdam causis emergentibus distulit ad tempus. Omni ergo dilatione postposita, misit abbas domino papæ easdem literas, quas legatus miserat ei et conventui, in quibus continebatur quod ipse venturus esset ad nos auctoritate legatiæ suæ, et auctoritate domini papæ, in quibus scribebatur, quod et ei data fuit potestas super omnes exemptas ecclesias Angliæ, non obstantibus literis Eboracensi ecclesiæ vel alicui impetratis.

And when the archbishop heard that we would receive him as legate, he received our messengers graciously, and with giving of thanks. And he became kind and friendly to the lord abbot in all his affairs, and delayed his coming among us for a while on account of some urgent business. Therefore, without any delay the abbot sent to the lord pope the same letters which the legate had sent to the monastery, which announced that he would come to us by the authority of his legation and by the authority of the lord pope, and in which it was written that power had been given him over all the exempt churches of England, notwithstanding letters granted to the church of York and others.

Instante autem nuntio abbatis, scripsit

So at the instance of the messenger of the abbot, the lord pope wrote<sup>120</sup> to the lord of Canterbury and declared that our church, his spiritual daughter, was accountable to no legate, unless it might be to a legate *a latere*, sent by the lord pope, and forbade him to

dominus papa domino Cantuariensi,<sup>†</sup> asserens ecclesiam nostram spiritua-lem filiam suam nulli legato respon-dere, nisi legato a latere domini papæ misso, et prohibuit, ne in nos manum extenderet; et adjecit dominus papa de suo, prohibens etiam, ne in aliquam aliam ecclesiam exemptam potesta-tem exerceret. Rediit ad nos nuntius noster, et absconditum fuit hoc aliquot diebus. Significatum tamen hoc fuit domino Cantuariensi a familiaribus suis de curia domini papæ.

stretch forth his hand over us. And the lord pope added, on his own account, that he further forbade him to exercise power over any other exempt church. Our messenger returned to us and the matter was hidden for some days. But it was made known to the lord of Can-terbury by his friends in the court of the lord pope.

Cum autem in fine anni visitationem suam faceret legatus per Norfolch et Suthfolch, et venisset primo apud Co-lecestriam, misit legatus ad abbatem nuntium occulte, mandans ei, quod bene audivit dici, quod abbas impetrave-rat literas contra legatiam suam, et pe-tens, ut mitteret ei amicabilem literas illas. Et ita factum est. Habuit enim abbas duo paria literarum sub eadem forma. Abbas vero nec visitavit lega-

Now when at the end of the year the legate made his visitation in Norfolk and Suffolk, and had come first to Col-chester, he sent a secret messenger to the abbot, and informed him that he had heard it said many times that the abbot had obtained letters against his legation, and asked that he would send those letters to him in a friendly way. And so it was done, for the abbot had two copies of the letters in identical

<sup>136</sup>Innocent III., who became pope in 1198, confirmed the privileges of St. Edmund, especially those granted by Alexander and Urban (Rokewode, p. 137). Arnold (*Mem.*, I., 285, note) suggests that as no such letter as that described in the text can be found, Jocelin misunderstood the statement of Samson, and that he really refers to the letter addressed by Innocent to the abbot and convent of St. Edmund.

<sup>†</sup>No such letter is to be found in the Regesta of of Innocent III.'s correspondence in 1198 and 1199, printed in Migne's *Patrologie* (vol. ccxiv.). It seems probable that Jocelin misunderstood what he heard from Samson, and that the letter referred to was that of the 1st Dec. 1198 (Nº 457 of the Regesta), which the pope addressed, not to the archbishop, but to the abbot and convent of St. Edmund. This letter opens thus, "Cum ecclesia vestra ecclesiæ Romanæ sit filia specialis [note the resemblance of phrase], et ad eam nullo pertineat mediante, vos . . . ad apostolicam sedem tanquam ad caput vestrum in arduis ducitis recurrendum."

tum, nec per se, nec per interpositam personam, quamdiu fuit in episcopatu Norwicensi, ne putaretur velle facere finem cum legato de hospitio ei faciendo, sicut ceteri monachi et canonici fecerunt. Legatus autem turbatus et iratus, et timens excludi, si ad nos veniret, per Norwicum, per Acram, per Derham, transivit in Heli, Lundoniam tendens.

Abbate autem apparente, infra mensem, coram legato, inter Waltham et Lundoniam, in via regia, convenit eum quod noluit ei occurrere utpote justituario domini regis quando fuit in regione ista. Abbas autem respondit, eum non isse ut justitarium, sed ut legatum, facientem scrutinium in singulis ecclesiis, et allegavit rationem temporis, et quod passio Domini instabat, et oportebat eum interesse divinis obsequiis et claustralibus observantiis. Cum autem verba verbis, objectiones objectionibus opposuisset abbas, nec posset minis terri nec flecti, respondit legatus cum indignatione se bene scire quod disputator bonus esset, et illum esse meliorem clericum, quam legatus esset.

terms. But the abbot visited the legate neither in person nor through any intermediary, as long as he was in the bishopric of Norwich, lest he might be thought to desire to come to terms with the legate as to the matter of providing entertainment for him, as the other monks and canonical persons had done. The legate, for his part, was disturbed and angry, and fearing that he would be shut out if he should come to us, passed through Norwich, Acre, and Dereham to Ely, making his way towards London.

Then within a month, the abbot appeared before the legate between Waltham and London, in the king's highway, and the legate blamed him because he would not come to him as justiciar of the lord king, when he was in that district. But the abbot answered that he had been there not as justiciar, but as legate, making scrutiny in all churches, and brought forward as his excuse the season of the year, and that the Passion of the Lord drew near, at which time it was necessary for him to be engaged in divine services and in the observances of the cloister. And when the abbot met words with words and objections with objections, and could not be terrified or bent, the legate answered with anger that he well knew that he was skilled in argument,

and that he was a better clerk than the legate was.

Abbas ergo, nec tacenda timide præteriens, nec dicenda tumide loquens, in audientia plurium respondit se talem esse, quod nunquam sustinebit ecclesiæ suæ libertatem quassari, nec propter defectum scientiæ nec pecuniæ, etiamsi oporteret eum mori vel perpetuo exilio damnari. Finitis autem his et hujusmodi altercationibus, incepit legatus erubescere, abbate parcius loquente, et rogante, ut mitius ageret cum ecclesia Sancti Ædmundi, ratione natalis soli, quia quasi nativus Sancti Ædmundi et ejus nutritus<sup>†</sup> fuit. Erubuit quidem, quia virus, quod intus conceperat, inconsulte effuderat.

Therefore the abbot, without passing over in a cowardly manner things which ought not to be mentioned, or speaking arrogantly of those things which had to be said, in the audience of many men, answered that he was the type of man who would never allow the liberty of his church to be infringed, either owing to lack of knowledge or to lack of money, even if it were necessary for him to die or be condemned to perpetual banishment. And when an end was made of these and other like altercations, the legate began to blush when the abbot spoke softly and prayed that he would deal more mildly with the church of St. Edmund, for the sake of his native land, for he was as it were a son of St. Edmund and there brought up. He blushed, indeed, because he had thoughtlessly poured forth the poison which he had conceived within him.

A.D. 1199.

In crastino nuntiatum est archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, quod dominus Eboracensis veniret legatus in Angliam, et quod ipse suggesserat multa mala domino papæ de eo, dicens quod ipse gravaverat ecclesias

On the morrow, word was brought to the archbishop of Canterbury that the lord of York was coming to England as legate,<sup>121</sup> and that he had hinted many evil things to the lord pope concerning him, saying that he had oppressed the churches of England by taking on ac-

<sup>†</sup> Nutritius? Roke.

Angliæ causa visitationis suæ de triginta millibus marcis argenti acceptis. Misit ergo legatus ad abbatem clericos suos, rogans, ut scriberet cum ceteris abbatibus domino papæ, et excusaret eum. Quod concessit abbas, et testimonium perhibuit quod dominus Cantuariensis nec ad nostram ecclesiam venit, nec illam nec aliam gravavit ecclesiam, loquens secundum conscientiam suam. Et cum abbas tradidisset literas illas nunciis archiepiscopi, dixit coram omnibus, se non timere etiamsi voluerit archiepiscopus in his literis malignari; et responderunt clerici in periculo animæ suæ dominum suum nichil doli velle machinari, sed tantum velle excusari, et ita facti sunt amici archiepiscopus<sup>†</sup> et abbas.

*How the abbot contended  
with his knights as to  
service across the sea.  
A.D. 1198.*

Præcepit rex Ricardus omnibus episcopis et abbatibus Angliæ, ut de suis baroniis novem milites facerent decimum, et sine dilatione venirent ad eum in Normanniam, cum equis et armis, in auxilium

count of his visitation thirty thousand marks of silver. For that reason the legate sent his clerks to the abbot, asking that he would write with the other abbots to the lord pope and defend him. And then the abbot granted this, and gave witness that the lord of Canterbury had neither come to our church, nor oppressed that or any other church, speaking according to his knowledge. And when the abbot had handed over those letters to the messengers of the archbishop, he said before all men that he had no fear even if the archbishop wished to make an improper use of these letters. And the clerks answered on the peril of their master's soul, that their lord wished not to deal craftily, but only desired to excuse himself. And so the archbishop and the abbot were made friends.

King Richard sent orders to all the bishops and abbots of England that every nine knights should furnish a tenth,<sup>122</sup> and that these should come to him in Normandy without delay, with horses and arms, to help him against the king of France. It therefore was necessary for the abbot to

<sup>137</sup> After having tried in vain to obtain a decision in his favour from Celestine III., Geoffrey secured such a decision from Innocent (Hoveden, IV., 67). The report that he was to receive legatine authority was, however, unfounded.

<sup>†</sup> The sincere and faithful character of archbishop Hubert comes out in all this narrative, which is so far in full agreement with Gervase's laudatory biography in the *Actus Pontificum*.



contra regem Franciæ. Unde et abbatem oportuit respondere de iiij. militibus mittendis. Cumque summoneri fecisset omnes milites suos, et eos inde convenisset, responderunt, feudos suos, quod de Sancto Ædmondo tenuerunt, hoc non debere, nec se, nec patres eorum, unquam Angliam exisse, sed scutagium aliquando ad præsceptum regis dedisse.

Abbas vero in arcto positus hinc videns libertatem suorum militum periclitari, illinc timens ne amitteret saisinam baroniæ suæ pro defectu servitii regis, sicut contigerat episcopo Lundeniensi et multis baronibus Angliæ, statim transfretavit; et fatigatus multis laboribus et expensis et exeniis quamplurimis quæ regi dedit, in primis nulum potuit facere finem cum rege per denarios. Dicenti ergo, se non indigere auro nec argento, sed iiij<sup>or</sup> milites instanter exigenti, quatuor milites stipendiarios optulit abbas. Quos cum rex recepisset, apud castellum de Houmisit. Abbas autem in instanti eis xxvi. marcas dedit ad expensas xl. dierum.

be responsible for the sending of four knights. And when he had caused all his knights to be summoned, and had gathered them together on this matter, they answered that their fees, which they held of St. Edmund, were not liable to this, and that neither they, nor their fathers, had ever gone out of England, though they had sometimes paid scutage by command of the king.

Then the abbot was in a difficult position, as on the one hand he saw that the liberty of his knights was endangered, and on the other feared lest he might lose seisin of his barony for default of service to the king, as had happened to the bishop of London and to many barons of England. And he at once crossed the sea, and having wearied himself with many labours and expenses and with the many presents which he gave to the king, at first he was unable to come to terms with the king by means of a money payment. And so, when the king said that he needed neither gold nor silver, but instantly demanded the four knights, the abbot offered him four mercenary knights.

<sup>138</sup> Hoveden (IV., 40) appears to relate the same demand as is here mentioned by Jocelin. "In this year [1198] Richard asked, through Hubert Walter, that the men of the kingdom of England should find him three hundred knights or give him so much money as would enable him to hire three hundred knights to serve for one year, at the rate of three Angevin shillings for each knight per diem." All the rest assented to the demand, but Hugh Avalon, bishop of Lincoln, refused to do so.

<sup>139</sup> This castle was restored to Richard by the treaty of Issoudun (1196). The terms of the truce are to be found in Hoveden (IV., 3).

And the king received these and sent them to the castle of Eu.<sup>123</sup> And the abbot gave them thirty-six marks at once for their expenses for forty days.

In crastino autem venerunt quidam familiares regis, consulentes abbati, ut sibi caute provideret, dicentes werram posse durare per annum integrum, vel amplius, et expensas militum exrescere et multiplicari in perpetuum damnum ei et ecclesiæ suæ. Et ideo consulebant, ut antequam recederet de curia finem faceret cum rege, unde posset quietus esse de militibus prædictis post xl. dies. Abbas autem, sano usus consilio, centum libras regi dedit pro tali quietantia, et ita cum gratia domini rediit in Angliam, breve regis portans secum, ut milites sui distringerentur per feudos suos ad reddendum ei servitium regis, quod ipse fecerat pro eis.

But on the morrow there came certain friends of the king, and counselled the abbot that he should proceed cautiously, saying that the war might last for a full year or more, and the cost of the knights increase and multiply to the perpetual loss of him and his church. They therefore advised that before he left the court, he should come to terms with the king, so that he might be quit of the said knights after forty days. Then the abbot, taking good advice, gave a hundred pounds to the king for this quittance, and so returned to England in high favour with his lord. And he bore with him the king's writ that distraint should be levied on the fees of his knights to repay him for the service which he had made to the king on their behalf.

Milites vero summoniti allegabant paupertatem suam, et multa genera gravaminum, et obtulerunt domino suo duas marcas de quolibet scuto. Abbas autem, non immemor, quod ipse eos gravaverat eodem anno, et inplacitaverat de scutagio integre reddendo, volens eos conciliare in gratiam, gratanter accepit quod illi gratanter

When the knights were summoned, they alleged their poverty and many different grievances, and offered their lord two marks from each fee. And the abbot, not unmindful of the fact that he had himself burdened them in that same year, and had brought a suit against them to force them to pay a full scutage, wished to win back their

optulerunt.

Tunc temporis, licet multas expensas fecisset abbas ultra mare, non rediit vacua manu ad ecclesiam suam; ferens crucem auream et textum pretiosum ad pretium quaterviginti marcarum. Alia quoque vice cum redisset de ultra mare, sedens in capitulo dixit, quod si esset celerarius vel camerarius, aliquem questum faceret, qui suæ administrationi competeret; et cum esset abbas, aliquid acquirere deberet quod abbatem deceret. Hoc cum dixit, obtulit conventui casulam pretiosam et mitram auro intextam, et sandalia cum caligis sericis, et cambucam virgæ pastoralis argenteam et bene operatam. Simili modo, quotiens de ultra mare rediit aliquod ornamentum secum portavit.

*How the abbot took charge  
of the cellar, and how for  
that cause murmuring  
arose in the monastery.  
A.D. 1197.*

vationes et immutationes in ecclesia nostra, quæ sub silentio præteriri non debent. Cum non sufficerent celera-

favour, and graciously accepted that which they willingly offered to him.

At that time, though the abbot incurred great expenses over sea, he did not return empty-handed to his church, but brought with him a golden cross and a precious copy of the scriptures, which was worth twenty-four marks. And on another occasion, when he had returned from across the sea, sitting in his chapter he said that had he been cellarer or chamberlain he would have sought for something which would be helpful in the administration of his office. And he added that as he was abbot he ought to acquire something which was fitting for an abbot, and saying this he offered the monastery a costly chasuble and a mitre inlaid with gold, and sandals with silken buskins, and the head of a pastoral staff, made of silver and well worked. In the same way, as often as he returned from beyond the sea, he brought some ornament with him.

Anno gratiæ  
m<sup>o</sup> c. nona-  
gesimo septi-  
mo factæ sunt  
quædam inno-

In the year of grace one thousand one hundred and ninety-seven, certain changes and alterations were made in our church, which may not be passed over in silence. When our cellarer did not find his ancient revenues sufficient, abbot Samson ordered that fifty pounds should be given him in

rio nostro antiqui redditus sui, jussit abbas S. ut quinquaginta libræ de Mildenhala darentur de incremento annuatim celerario per manum prioris; non simul, sed particulatim per menses, ut singulis mensibus aliquid haberetur ad expendendum, et non totum simul effunderetur in una parte anni: et ita factum est uno anno.

Celerarius autem cum complicitibus suis inde conquestus est, dicens, quod si illam pecuniam haberet præ manibus, sibi provideret et se instauraret. Abbas vero petitioni suæ cessit, licet invitus. Intrante mense Augusti, jam expenderat celerarius totum, et insuper xx. sex libras debebat, et quinquaginta debiturus erat ante festum Sancti Michaelis.

Audiens hoc abbas moleste tulit, et ita locutus est in capitulo: "Sæpius comminatus sum, quod ego capiam celerariam nostram in manu mea propter defectum et improvidentiam vestram, qui singulis debito magno vos obligatis. Clericum meum cum celerario vestro posui in testimonium, ut res consultius ageretur; sed non est clericus vel monachus qui audeat mihi dicere causam debiti. Dicitur tamen, quod inmoderata convivia in hospitio prio-

annual increase from Mildenhall by the hand of the prior. This was not to be paid at one time, but in instalments every month, that in each month there might be something to spend, and that the whole might not be used up in one part of the year; and so it was done for one year.

But the cellarer and his assistants complained of this, and he said that if he had had that money in his hands, he would have provided for himself and gathered stock for himself. Then the abbot, against his will indeed, granted that request. And when the beginning of August came, the cellarer had already spent the whole amount, and moreover owed twenty-six pounds, and was bound to pay a debt of fifty pounds before Michaelmas.

And when the abbot heard this, he was wroth, and spoke thus in the chapter, "I have often threatened that I would take our cellar into my own hands owing to your incompetence and extravagance, since you bind yourselves with great debt. I placed my clerk with your cellarer as a witness, that the office might be managed with greater care. But there is no clerk or monk who dares tell me the cause of the debt. It is said, indeed, that the too elabo-

ris, per assensum prioris et celerarii, et superfluæ expensæ in domo hospitum per incuriam hospitarii, sint inde causa. Videtis," inquit, "magnum debitum quod instat; dicite mihi consilium, quomodo res emendari debeat."

rate feasts in the prior's house, which occur with the assent of the prior and of the cellarer, and the superfluous expense in the guest-house owing to the carelessness of the guest master, are the cause of it. You see," he went on, "the great debt which is pressing on us; tell me your opinion as to the way in which the matter should be remedied."

Multi claustrales hoc audientes, et quasi subridentes, gratum habebant quod dicebatur; dicentes, occulte, quia hoc verum est quod abbas dixerat. Retorquebat prior culpam in celerarium; celerarius vero in hospitarium; quilibet seipsum excusabat. Veritatem quidem sciebamur; sed tacebamus, quia timebamus. In crastino venit abbas, iterum dicens conventui: "Dicite mihi consilium vestrum, quomodo celeraria vestra consultius et melius regi possit?" Nec erat qui aliquid respondebat præter unum qui dixit, nullam omnino superfluitatem esse in refectorio, unde debitum vel gravamen deberet oriri. Tercio die dixit abbas eadem verba; et respondit unus: "Consilium istud a vobis debet emanare, tanquam a capite nostro."

Many of the cloistered monks, hearing this, and, as it were, laughing to themselves, were pleased with what was said, and said privately that what the abbot said was true. The prior cast the blame on the cellarer, and the cellarer on the guest-master, and the guest-master made excuse for himself. We, of course, knew the true reason, but were silent from fear. On the morrow the abbot came and again said to the monastery, "Give me your advice as to how your cellar may be more thoughtfully and better managed." And there was no one who would answer a word, save one who said that there was no waste at all in the refectory whence any debt or burden could arise. And on the third day the abbot said the same words, and one answered, "The advice ought to come from you, as from our head."

Et dixit abbas: "Cum nec consilium

Then the abbot said, "Since you will

vultis dicere, nec domum vestram scitis per vos regere, mihi incumbit tanquam patri et summo custodi dispositio monasterii. Accipio,” inquit, “in manu mea celerariam vestram et expensam hospitum, et procurationem interius et exterius.” Hiis dictis, deposuit celerarium et hospitiarium, et alios duos monachos substituit habentes nomina subcelerarii et hospitarii, clericum suum de mensa sua, magistrum G. eis associans, sine cuius assensu nichil in cibo vel potu, nec in expensis, nec in receptis ageretur. Antiqui emptores removebantur ab emptione in foro, et per clericum abbatis cibaria emebantur; et de bursa abbatis defectus nostri supplebantur. Hospites suscipiendi suscipiebantur et honorandi honorabantur; officiales et claustrales omnes pariter in refectorio reficiebantur, et undique superfluae expensae resecabantur.

Dixerunt autem quidam claustrales intra se: “Septem, utique septem, fuerunt qui bona nostra comederunt, de quorum comestionibus, si quis loquebatur, quasi reus laesae majestatis habebatur.” Dicebat alius, tendens ad si-

not give advice, and cannot rule your house for yourselves, the control of the monastery falls upon me as your father and chief guardian. I receive,” he went on, “into my own hand your cellar and the charge of the guests, and the task of getting supplies within and without.” And with these words, he deposed the cellarer and guest-master, and replaced them with two monks, with the titles of sub-cellarer and guest-master, and associated with them a clerk of his table, master G., without whose assent nothing was to be done in the matter of food and drink, or in expenditure or in receipts. The former buyers were removed from the work of buying in the market, and food was to be purchased by a clerk of the abbot, and our deficits were to be made good from the abbot’s treasury. Guests who ought to be received were received, and those who ought to be honoured were honoured. Officials and cloistered monks alike took their meals in the refectory, and on all sides superfluous expenses were cut down.

But some of the cloistered monks said among them selves, “There were seven, yes, seven, who devoured our goods, and if one had spoken of their devouring, he would have been regarded as one guilty of high treason.” Another said, as he stretched forth

dera palmas:<sup>†</sup> “Benedictus Deus qui dedit talem voluntatem abbati, ut talia corrigat.” Et dicebant plerique, quia bene est.

Alii dicebant non, talem emendationem honoris depressionem æstimantes, et discretionem abbatis feritatem lupi appellantes; revocabant nempe ad memoriam antiqua somnia, scilicet quod futurus abbas sæviret ut lupus.

Mirabantur milites, mirabatur populus super his quæ fiebant, et dicebat aliquis in plebe: “Mirum est quod monachi, tot et literati viri, sustinent res et redditus confundi et commisci cum rebus abbatis; quæ semper solebant distingui et ab invicem separari. Mirum est quod sibi non cavent de periculo futuro post mortem abbatis, si dominus rex invenerit eos in tali statu.”

Dixit quidam alius, abbatem solum sapientem esse in rebus exterioribus regendis, et eum debere regere totum, qui scit regere totum. Et erat qui di-

his hands to heaven, “Blessed be God, Who hath given such a desire to the abbot, that he should correct so great faults.” And many said that it was well done.

Others said that it was not well done, thinking so great a reformation derogatory to the honour of the house, and calling the discretion of the abbot the ravening of a wolf; and in truth they called to mind old dreams, to the effect that he who should become abbot would raven as a wolf.

The knights were astonished, the people marvelled, at these things which had been done, and one of the common sort said, “It is a strange thing that the monks, being so many and learned men, should allow their affairs and revenues to be confused and mingled with the affairs of the abbot, when they had always been wont to be separated and parted asunder. It is strange that they do not guard themselves against the danger which will come after the death of the abbot, if the lord king should find things in this state.”

A certain man again said that the abbot was the only one who was skilled in external affairs, and that he ought to rule all, who knew how to rule all. And

---

<sup>†</sup>Æn.i.i.93.

cebat: “Si saltem unus sapiens monachus esset in tanto conventu, qui domum sciret regere, abbas talia non fecisset.” Et ita facti sumus subsannatio et illusio his qui in circuitu nostro sunt.

one there was who said, “If there were but one wise monk in so great a monastery, who might know how to rule the house, the abbot would not have done such things.” And so we became a scorn and derision to those who were round about us.<sup>124</sup>

In tali tempestate contigit diem anniversarium Roberti abbatis<sup>†</sup> recitari in capitulo, et decretum fuit, ut Placebo et Dirige cantarentur sollempnius solito, scilicet cum magnis campanis pulsatis, sicut in anniversariis Ordingi et H. abbatis, propter nobile factum prædicti R. abbatis, qui distinxit res et redditus nostros a rebus et redditibus abbatis. Fiebat autem ista sollempnitas quorundam consilio, ut saltem sic moveretur cor domini abbatis, scilicet ad bene faciendum. Erat autem aliquis qui putabat hoc fieri in confusionem abbatis, qui dicebatur velle confundere et commiscere res et redditus nostros et suos, eo quod saisiaverat celerariam nostram in manu sua.

About this time it happened that the anniversary of abbot Robert<sup>125</sup> was to be celebrated in the chapter, and it was decreed that a Placebo and a Dirige should be sung more solemnly than was wont, that is, with ringing of the great bells, as on the anniversaries of abbots Ordning and Hugh. The cause of this was the noble deed of the said abbot Robert, who separated our goods and revenues from those of the abbot. But this solemnity was due to the counsel of some that so the heart of the lord abbot might be moved to do well. One there was, however, who thought that this was to be done to the shame of the abbot, who was accused of wishing to confound and intermingle his affairs and revenues and ours, in that he had taken our cellar into his own hand.

<sup>140</sup> Ps. xlv., 13.

<sup>†</sup> Abbot Robert died on the 16th September (see App. B.); but his anniversary seems to have been deferred to the 28th.

<sup>141</sup> Robert II. died on 16th September, 1112 (*Chron. Bur. Mem.*, III., 5). His festival, however, was kept on September 28th (*Arnold, Mem.*, I., 291, note). Rokewode (p. 139), quoting the *Liber Albus*, gives September 16th as his day, and for those of Ordning and Hugh, January 30th and November 14th respectively.



Abbas vero audiens insolitum sonitum campanarum, et bene sciens et advertens hoc contra consuetudinem fieri, causam facti sapienter dissimulavit et missam sollemniter cantavit. Die vero sequente Sancti Michaelis, volens in parte compescere murmurationes quorundam, illum qui prius fuit subcelerarius constituit celerarium, et quendam alium jussit nominari subcelerarium, remanente tamen prædicto clerico cum eis, et procurante omnia sicut prius. Cum autem clericus ille metas temperantiæ excederet, dicens, "Ego sum Bu.," id est, celerarius, cum metas temperantiæ in bibendo excessisset, et, inconsulto abbate, curiam celerarii teneret et vadia et plegios caperet, et redditus annuos reciperet et per manum suam expenderet, summus celerarius publice dicebatur a populo.

Cumque sæpius per curiam vagaretur et eum tanquam magistrum et summum procuratorem multi sequerentur pauperes et divites debitores, et calumniatores, diversi diversæ conditionis et pro diversis negotiis, stetit forte aliquis ex obedientiariis nostris in curia, et hæc videns, præ confusione et pudore lacrimatus est, cogitans hoc esse dedecus ecclesiæ nostræ, cogitans con-

Then when the abbot heard the unusual ringing of bells, and knew well and considered that this was contrary to custom, he wisely hid the cause of the action and sang mass solemnly. But on the following Michaelmas, since he wished to silence the murmurs of some men in part, he appointed him who had been sub-cellarer to the post of cellarer, and ordered another to be nominated as sub-cellarer, though the same clerk remained with them and procured all needful things as before. But when that clerk passed the bounds of moderation, saying, "I am Bu.,"—whereby he meant that the cellarer had passed the bounds of temperance in drinking,—and when, without consulting the abbot, he held the court of the cellarer and took sureties and pledges, and received the revenues for the year and spent them with his own hand, he was publicly called chief cellarer by the people.

And when the clerk often wandered through the court, and many poor and rich debtors followed him as if he had been master and chief agent, as well as claimants of divers sorts and on divers matters, perchance one of our officials stood in the court. He saw this, and wept for shame and confusion, thinking that this was a shame to our church, and thinking of the danger which

sequens periculum, cogitans clericum monacho preferri in præjudicium totius conventus. Procuravit ergo, quisquis fuit ille, per mediam personam, ut hæc domino abbati congrue et rationabiliter insinuarentur, factumque est ei intelligere quod huiusmodi arrogantia in clerico, quæ fiebat in dedecus et turpitudinem universitatis, posset esse causa magnæ turbationis et discordiæ in conventu. Abbas vero, cum hæc audisset, statim fecit mandari celerarium et prædictum clericum, iussitque ut celerarius de cetero se haberet ut celerarium in recipiendo denarios, in tenendo placita, et in omnibus aliis rebus, salvo tamen hoc, ut prædictus clericus ei assisteret, non a pari, sed ut testis et consiliarius.

*Concerning the will of  
Hamo Blund.*

Hamo Blundus, unus ex ditioribus hominibus istius villæ, agens in extremis, vix aliquid testamentum voluit facere; tandem fecit testamentum ad pretium trium marcarum, nullo audiente nisi fratre suo et uxore sua et capellano. Quod cum abbas recognovisset post mortem ejus, illos tres convenit, et acriter corripuit super hoc, quod frater ejus, qui hæres erat, et uxor ejus non

would result, and thinking that a clerk was preferred to a monk to the prejudice of the whole monastery. Accordingly he, whoever he was, procured by means of another, that this should be fitly and moderately pointed out to the lord abbot, and it came to pass that it was brought to the abbot's knowledge how arrogant the clerk was, and what he did to the shame and wrong of all; and that he was the cause of great disturbance and discord in the monastery. But when the abbot heard this, he at once ordered word to be sent to the cellarer and to the said clerk, and commanded that the cellarer should henceforth regard himself as cellarer in the receipt of money, and in holding pleas, and in all other matters, saving this only, that the said clerk should assist him, not on an equality, but as a witness and adviser.

Hamo Blund, one of the richest men of that town, being on his death-bed, was scarce willing to make any will. At length, however, he left three marks by will, no one hearing his wishes except his brother and his wife and a chaplain. And when the abbot held an inquest after his death, he summoned those three and sternly rebuked them because the brother, who was the heir, and the wife, would not permit any other to come to the sick man, desiring to gain all

sustinuerunt aliquem alium accedere ad infirmum, cupientes omnia capere: things.

dixitque abbas in audientia: "Ego fui episcopus ejus, et curam habui animæ ejus; ne mihi vertatur in periculum sacerdotis et confessoris ejus inscitia, quia infirmo viventi consulere non potui absens, quod mea interest faciam saltem tarde. Præcipio ut omnia debita ejus et katalla mobilia, quæ valent cc. marcas, sicut dicitur, reducantur in scriptum, et una portio detur hæredi, et alia uxori, et tertia pauperibus consanguineis suis et aliis pauperibus. Equum autem, qui ductus est ante feretrum defuncti et oblatus est Sancto Ædmondo, jubeo remitti et reddi: non decet enim ecclesiam nostram coinquinari munere ejus, qui decessit intestatus, et quem fama accusat quod ex consuetudine solebat pecuniam suam ad usuram dare. Per os Dei, si alicui de cætero tale quid contigerit diebus meis, non sepelietur in cimiterio." Hiis dictis, recesserunt cæteri confusi.

And the abbot said in full audience, "I was his bishop, and I had the care of his soul; that the ignorance of his priest and confessor may not be harmful, and because I was absent and could not advise the sick man while he yet lived, it is my concern that I should do so even when it is late. I command that all his money and moveable property, which is reported to be worth two hundred marks, shall be written down, and that one portion shall be given to the heir, and a second to his wife, and a third to his poor relations and to other poor men. But the horse, which was led before the coffin of the dead man, and which was offered to St. Edmund, I order to be sent back and returned. For it is not right that our church should be disgraced by the present of him who died intestate, and who is accused by report of having been wont often to lend his money upon usury. By the face of God, if what has now happened occur again in the case of any man in my time, he shall not be buried in the cemetery." And when he had so spoken, the others went away in confusion.

*How there were riots in the cemetery, and concerning that which was done in the matter.*

In crastino Natalis Domini fiebant in cimiterio conventicula, colluctationes, et concertationes inter servientes abbatis et burgenses de villa; perventumque fuit a verbis ad verbera, a colaphis ad vulnera, et ad effusionem sanguinis. Abbas vero, hæc audiens, convocatis clanculo quibusdam, qui ad spectaculum convenerant, sed a longe steterant, nomina malefactorum jussit in scriptum redigi, quos omnes summoneri fecit, ut starent coram eo in crastino Sancti Thomæ archiepiscopi in capella Sancti Dionisii responsuri; nec interim aliquem de burgensibus vocavit ad mensam suam, sicut prius solebat facere, primis quinque diebus in Natali.

Die ergo statuto, acceptis juramentis a sexdecim legalibus hominibus, et auditis eorum attestationibus, dixit abbas: "Constat quod isti malefactores inciderunt in canonem<sup>†</sup> data<sup>‡</sup> sententiæ; sed quia laici sunt hinc et inde, et

On the morrow of the Nativity of the Lord, meetings and sports<sup>126</sup> and bandying of words were held in the cemetery between the servants of the abbot and the burghers of the town; and from words it came to blows, from blows to wounds, and to bloodshed. But when the abbot knew of this, he privately called together some of those who had come to the spectacle, but who had taken no part in it, and commanded the names of all the offenders to be written down. And he caused all of them to be summoned to appear to make answer before him in the chapel of St. Denis on the morrow of the feast of St. Thomas the archbishop. And in the meantime he would not invite any of the burghers to his table, as he had been wont to do in the first five days of Christmastide.

So on the appointed day, when oath had been taken from sixteen legal men, and their evidence had been heard, the abbot said, "It is well known that those wrong-doers have broken the canon *Latae sententiæ*. But as there are lay-

<sup>142</sup> Rokewode (p. 139) says that these shows were probably miracle-plays, and notes from the text that Samson did occasionally entertain minstrels (cp. text, p. 67.)

<sup>†</sup> On Sacrilege, and the state of the law respecting it in the twelfth century, see Gratian's *Decretum*, Pars II., causa 17, quæst. 4.

<sup>‡</sup> *late?* (Roke.). Mr. Gage Rokewode's correction is evidently right. Among the glosses to the passage quoted in the preceding note from Gratian, there is one which says, that if certain acts had been condemned beforehand by the bishop on pain of excommunication, "tum dicerum quod statim excommunicatus est sacrilegus, non ratione sacrilegii, sed *ratione sententiæ dudum latae*."

non intelligunt quantum facinus sit tale sacrilegium facere, ut ceteri magis timeant, istos nominatim et publice excommunicabo, et, ne in aliqua parte derogetur justitiæ, a domesticis et servantibus meis incipiam.”

men in both parties, and they know not how great a crime is such notable sacrilege, that the others might fear the more I will excommunicate them by name and publicly, and that justice may not be in any wise lacking, I will begin with my domestics and servants.”

Sicque factum est, acceptis stolis et accensis candelis. Exierunt ergo omnes ab ecclesia, et, accepto consilio, omnes se exspoliaverunt, et omnino nudi præter femoralia prostraverunt se ante ostium ecclesiæ. Cumque venissent assessores abbatis, monachi et clerici, et dicerent lacrimabiliter, quod plusquam centum homines nudi ita jacerent, lacrimatus est et abbas. Rigorem tamen juris in verbo et vultu præferens, et pietatem animi dissimulans, a consiliariis suis voluit cogi, ut pœnitentes absolverentur, sciens quod misericordia superexaltanda est iudicio, et quod ecclesia omnes pœnitentes recipit. Verberati ergo omnes acriter et absoluti, juraverunt omnes, quod starent iudicio ecclesiæ de sacrilegio perpetrato.

Then this was done, when we had robed and lighted the candles. And all went out from the church, and having taken counsel, they all stripped themselves, and, naked except for their underclothes, prostrated themselves before the door of the church. And when the assessors of the abbot had come, monks and clerks, they told him in lamentable tones that more than a hundred men lay thus naked, and the abbot was grieved. Yet showing the rigour of the law in his word and face, and concealing the kindness of his heart, he wished to be compelled by his advisers to absolve the penitents, knowing that mercy should be exalted against judgment, and that the church should receive all penitents. Therefore all were heavily scourged and absolved, and all swore that they would abide by the judgment of the church for the sacrilege which had been done.

In crastino vero data est eis pœnitentia secundum instituta canonum, et sic

But next day a penance was assigned to them according to the provisions

omnes ad unitatem concordiae revocavit abbas, minas terribiles omnibus proponens qui in dicto vel in facto materiam discordiae praeberent. Conventicula autem et spectacula prohibuit publice fieri in cimiterio; et sic, omnibus ad bonum pacis reductis, burgenses cum domino suo abbate diebus sequentibus comederunt cum gaudio magno.

*How the monks were  
restored to Coventry.  
A.D. 1197.*

Facta est commissio<sup>†</sup> domini papae H. Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et domino Lincolnien- si, et S. abbati Sancti Ædmundi, de reformatione Conventrensis ecclesiae et de monachis restituendis, sine causae recognitione. Convocatis ergo partibus apud Oxneford, receperunt iudices literas precatórias a domino rege, ut negotium illud poneretur in respectum. Archiepiscopo et episcopo dissimulantibus et tacentibus, et quasi clericorum favorem venantibus, solus abbas aperte loquebatur, monachus pro monachis de Conventria, eorum

of the canons, and so the abbot received all in full peace, and threatened terrible things to all who in word or deed should produce cause for dispute. Then also he publicly forbade meetings and spectacles to be held in the cemetery, and so, when everything had been restored to peace, the burghers ate with the lord abbot on the days following with great joy.

A commission of the lord pope<sup>127</sup> was issued to Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, and the lord bishop of Lincoln, and to Samson, abbot of St. Edmund's, for the reformation of the church of Coventry and for the restoration of the monks, without hearing the case again. And so the parties to the suit met at Oxford, and the judges received letters from the lord king, asking that the matter might be postponed. Then the archbishop and the bishop dissembled and kept silence, and as it were sought the favour of the clerks. But the abbot alone spoke openly as a monk for the monks of Coventry, publicly favouring their

<sup>†</sup> Hugh de Nunant, bishop of Lichfield and Coventry (on whose career see Stubbs' preface to the Rolls ed. of Gervase of Canterbury), had a violent dislike for all monks, and whenever he could, put secular canons in their place. He had now turned out the monks at Coventry, and the natural result is a papal commission.

<sup>143</sup> An account of this commission is to be found in Gervase (i., 550), while in Hoveden (IV., 35-7), there is to be found the papal letter giving orders for their restoration. As to their expulsion by Hugh Nunant, see note to p. 86. In Richard of Devizes there is an amusing description of his hatred for monks (pp. 64-7).

causam publice fovens et defendens. Et eo procurante, eo tenus processum est illa die, quod quædam simplex saisina facta fuit uni ex monachis de Conventria cum uno libro. Sed dilata fuit corporalis institutio ad tempus, ut sic saltem petitioni domini regis satisfaceret abbas;

vero illo tempore quatuordecim monachos de Conventria, qui ibi conveniant, recepit in hospitio suo, et sedentibus monachis ad mensam ex una parte domus, et ex alia parte magistris scholarum,<sup>†</sup> qui summoniti fuerant, laudabatur abbas magnanimus et magnificus in expensis, nec unquam videbatur in vita sua magis lætus quam tunc temporis fuit, pro reverentia monastici ordinis reformandi.

A.D. 1198 January 13.

Instante festo sancti Hilarii, perrexit abbas cum magna hilaritate Conventreiam, nec victus labore nec expensis, et dicebat quod si oporteret eum feretro equitatorio portari, non remaneret. Veniente eo Conventreiam, et quinque diebus expectante archiepiscopum, omnes monachos præno-

case and defending them. And by his means, it advanced so far on that day that a certain simple seisin was made to one of the monks of Coventry to the value of one pound. But the restoration of the whole body was for a while delayed, that to this extent at least the abbot might meet the request of the lord king.

At that time fourteen monks of Coventry, who were present there, were entertained by the abbot in his lodging, and while the monks were seated at table in one part of the house, and the masters of the schools, who had been invited, the abbot was praised as being magnanimous and magnificent in his entertainment, nor was he ever in his life seen in better spirits than then, owing to his zeal for the reform of the monastic order.

And when the next feast of St. Hilary came, the abbot went with great gladness to Coventry, and was overcome neither by labour nor by his expenses, and he said that if he had to be borne in a horse litter, he still would not tarry. Then he came to Coventry, and for five days waited for the archbishop, and honourably maintained all the

<sup>†</sup>Not, apparently, Oxford teacher specially; but *scholastici*, or schoolmasters from the monasteries and collegiate churches which were within easy reach of Oxford. Samson has been a schoolmaster himself, and would be glad thus to show his respect for the calling.

minatos cum servientibus eorum honorifice secum tenuit, donec creatus fuit novus prior, et monachi sollemniter introducti essent. “Qui habet aures audiendi, audiat” factum memoriale.

*How the abbot endowed  
schools at Saint Edmund's.  
A.D. 1198.*

Postquam convenit inter abbatem S. et R. de Scalis super medietate advocationis ecclesie de Wetherdene, et idem R. recognovisset Sancto Ædmondo et abbati jus suum; abbas, nulla conventionem prius habita, nullo prius facto promisso, dedit illam ecclesie medietatem quæ eum contingebat magistro R. de Scalis fratri ejusdem militis, hac conditione, ut annuam pensionem trium marcarum per manum nostri sacristæ redderet magistro scholarum, quincunque legeret in villa Sancti Ædmondi.

Hoc autem fecit abbas memorandæ pietatis ductus affectu, et sicut prius emerat domos lapideas ad scholas regendas, ut pauperes clerici quieti essent a conductione domus, ita de cetero essent quieti ab omni exactione denariorum, quos magister scholarum, ex consuetudine, exigebat pro eruditione sua; Domino autem Deo volente,

said monks with their servants, until a new prior was created and the monks solemnly introduced into the church. He who has ears to hear, let him hear;<sup>128</sup> the deed is worthy of remembrance.

After these things an agreement was made between abbot Samson and Robert de Scales as to the half of the advowson of the church of Wetherden, and the same Robert acknowledged the right of St. Edmund and of the abbot. The abbot, when no agreement had been made beforehand, and no promise had been given, gave the half of that church which belonged to him to master Roger de Scales, brother of the same knight, on condition that he would render an annual pension of three marks by the hand of our sacristan to the master of the schools, who should read in the town of St. Edmund's.

The abbot was led to do this by motives of memorable generosity, and since he had already bought stone houses for the purposes of the school that the poor clerks might be quit from house rent, so hence forth they were free from all exaction of money, which the master of the schools had, according to custom, exacted for their education.

<sup>144</sup>Matt. xi., 15.



et abbate vivente, tota medietas prædictæ ecclesiæ, quæ valet, sicut dicitur, centum solidos, ad tales usus converteretur.

*Concerning improvements  
which the abbot made in  
the abbey.*

Cum abbas in villis suis per abbatiam multa et varia ædificia construxisset, et perhendingasset ad maneria sua sæpius et frequentius quam nobiscum domi, tandem quasi in se rediens, et quasi bonum in melius comutans, dixit se magis solito domi commoraturum, et ædificia infra curiam ad usus necessarios facturum, respectum habens ad interiora et exteriora, et sciens quia “præsentia domini proventus est agri.”<sup>†</sup>

Stabula ergo et officinas in curia circumcirca, quæ coopertæ erant arundine prius, novis tectis appositis, lateribus cooperiri iussit, procurante H. sacrista, ut sic omnis timor excluderetur et periculum ignis. Et ecce tempus acceptabile, dies desideratus! quod non sine gaudio scribo, qui curam hospitum habeo. Ecce! jubente abbate, re-

Then by the will of God and in the lifetime of the abbot, the whole half of that church, which was worth, so it is said, a hundred shillings, was turned to such uses.

Now when the abbot had built many different buildings in his townships throughout the abbacy, and had taken up his residence on them more often and more frequently than with us at home, at last he returned, as it were, to himself. And making good, as it were, better, he said that he would stay at home more than had been his wont, and that he would build houses which were needed, regarding things within and without, and knowing that the presence of the master is the profit of the field.

Accordingly he ordered that the stables and offices in and around the court, which had previously been covered with reeds, should be covered with new roofs, made of slates, by means of Hugh the sacristan,<sup>129</sup> that so all fear might be removed and all danger of fire. And behold the acceptable time, the day which had been

<sup>†</sup> Mr. Rokewode cites “Pallad[ius] *de Re Rustica*” I. i. tit. 6, but I have been unable to verify the reference.

<sup>129</sup> On the deposition of William Wardell, abbot Samson appointed his namesake the precentor as sacristan, as appears from *Jocelin* (text, pp. 46 and 48). Apparently the appointment was merely a temporary one. In the *Gesta Sacristarum* (*Mem. II.*, 291–2) Hugh is given as the successor of William Wardell, and an account of his acts is to be found there.

sonat curia ligonibus et machinis cæmentariis ad subvertendam domum hospitem, et jam fere tota est prostrata: de reædificatione cogitet Altissimus!

desired! Of this I cannot write without joy, for that I had the care of the guests. Behold! by order of the abbot, the court resounded with spades and with the tools of masons, that the guest-house might be overthrown, and now was almost entirely razed, since the Highest planned its restoration!

Lardearium novum sibi construxit abbas in curia, et vetus lardearium conventui ad opus camerarii dedit, quod indecenter sub dormitorio fuerat. Cappellæ sancti Andreæ et sanctæ Katerinæ et sanctæ Fidis noviter plumbo coopertæ sunt.<sup>†</sup> Multæ quoque emendationes infra ecclesiam et extra factæ sunt. Si non credis, aperi oculos tuos et vide.

The abbot built a new larder for himself in his court, and gave the old larder of the monastery for the use of the chamberlain, since it was unfittingly situated under the dormitory. The chapels of St. Andrew and St. Catherine and St. Faith were newly covered with lead. And many improvements were effected within and without the church. If you do not believe, open your eyes and behold!

Tempore quoque suo facta est elemosinaria nostra lapidea, quæ prius erat debilis et lignea, ubi quidam frater noster Walterus medicus, tunc temporis elemosinarius, multum apposuit, quod arte medicinali adquisivit.

And in his time also our stone almonry was constructed, which had before been out of repair and built of wood, and to the cost of this one of our brothers, Walter the physician, who was then almoner, contributed that which he had made from the practice of medicine.

Item videns abbas quod tabula argentea magni altaris, et multa alia preciosa ornamenta, alienata fuerant propter

Moreover, when the abbot saw that the silver table of the high altar, and many other precious ornaments, had

---

<sup>†</sup> The ground plan and ichnography of the great abbey church of Bury will form the subject of a special study in the second volume.

recuperationem de Mildenhala et redemptionem regis Ricardi, tabulam illam noluit reformare nec alia consimilia, quæ consimili casu possent evelli et distrahi; sed ad cristam faciendam pretiosissimam super feretrum gloriosi martyris Ædmundi studium suum convertit, ut ibi ornamentum suum poneretur unde nullo casu posset abstrahi, nec aliquis hominum manus auderet apponere. Quippe captivato rege Ricardo in Alemannia, non erat thesaurus in Anglia, qui non daretur vel redimeretur, sed feretrum Sancti Ædmundi remansit intactum.

been alienated for the recovery of Mildenhall and for the ransom of king Richard, he would not restore that table or other similar things, which for a like pur pose might be torn away and distrained. But he turned his attention to the construction of a most valuable crest over the shrine of the glorious martyr Edmund, that his ornament might be placed there, whence for no reason could it be taken away, and where no man would dare to lay hands upon it. Indeed, when king Richard was taken captive in Germany, there was no treasure in England which was not given or for which redemption was not made, yet the shrine of St. Edmund remained intact.

Venit tamen in questionem coram justitiariis ad scaccarium utrum feretrum Sancti Ædmundi saltem in parte excrustaretur ad redemptionem regis Ricardi, et abbas se erigens respondit: "Scitote pro vero, quod nunquam hoc fiet per me, nec est homo qui me ad hoc posset cogere, ut consentiam. Sed aperiam ostia ecclesiæ; intret qui velit, accedat qui audeat." Responderunt singuli justitiiarii cum juramentis: "Nec ego accedam, nec ego accedam. In remotos et absentes sævit Sanctus Ædmundus; multo magis in præsentis sæviet, qui tunicam suam ei auferre voluerint." His dictis, nec feretrum

For when there was a dispute before the justices in the exchequer court as to whether the shrine of St. Edmund should be partially dismantled for the ransom of the king, the abbot arose and said, "Know it for the truth that this shall never be done by me, nor is there any man who can compel me to assent to this. But I will open the doors of the church; let him enter who will, let him approach who dares." And all the justices answered with oaths, "I will not come near it," "I will not come near it." And they said, "St. Edmund is even more angered against those who are far away and absent, than he is wi-

fuit excrustatum, nec inde pretium datum. Cæteris ergo omissis, conversus est animus abbatis satis consulte et provide ad cristam feretri fabricandam. Et jam resonant laminæ aureæ et argenteæ inter malleum et incudem, et “tractant fabrilia fabri.”†

*How the abbot disputed  
with the king as to the  
wardship of the land of  
Adam de Cokefield.  
About A.D. 1198*

Adam de Cokefeld moriens filiam trium mensium reliquit

hæredem; wardamque dedit abbas de feudo suo, ubi volebat. Rex vero Ricardus, sollicitatus a quibusdam familiaribus suis, petiit anxie wardam et puellam ad opus cujusdam servientis sui; quandoque per literas, quandoque per nuntios. Abbas vero respondit se wardam dedisse, et carta sua confirmasse; mittensque nuntium suum regi tentavit prece et pretio, si quomodo posset iram ejus mitigare.

Et respondit rex cum magna indignatione, quod se vindicaret de superbo abbate, qui ei contradixit, nisi desisteret pro reverentia Sancti Ædmundi

th those who are present and would take away his cloak.” And when this had been said, the shrine was not stripped, nor was a ransom paid for it. And for this cause the abbot omitted other things, and turned his mind with forethought and providence to the making of a crest for the shrine. And now the plates of gold and silver resounded between the hammer and the anvil, and the smiths worked with their tools.

Adam de Cokefield died,<sup>130</sup> and left a daughter of three months as his heir, and the abbot gave the wardship of the fief to whomsoever he would. But king Richard, at the request of some of his friends, earnestly sought the wardship and the child for the advantage of a servant of his own, both by letters and by messengers. But the abbot replied that he had given the wardship, and had confirmed the gift under his charter; and sending a messenger to the king, tempted him with prayers and presents, that he might so calm his wrath.

Then the king answered with great anger that he would avenge himself on the proud abbot, who opposed him, if he were not ready to refrain from

† Hor. Ep. ii. 1, 116.

<sup>146</sup>add long note here

quem timuit. Redeunte ergo nuntio, abbas minas regis sapienter dissimulavit, et dixit: "Mittat rex si vult, et saisiet wardam; vim et potestatem habet faciendi voluntatem suam, et auferendi totam abbatiam. Ego nunquam flectar, ut hoc velim quod petit, nec per me hoc unquam fiet. Timendum enim est ne talia trahantur ad consequentiam in præjudicium successorum meorum; pro negotio isto nunquam regi pecuniam dabo. Videat Altissimus. Ego quicquid contigerit patienter sustinebo."

Cum ergo multi dicerent et crederent regem esse commotum versus abbatem, ecce! rex amicabiliter scripsit abbati, et mandavit ut de canibus suis aliquos ei daret. Abbas vero non immemor illius dicti sapientis,—

Munera (crede mihi) capiunt  
hominesque deosque;  
Placatur donis Jupiter ipse da-  
tis,<sup>†</sup>

canes, sicut rex mandaverat, insuper et equos et alia munera pretiosa, ei transmisit. Quæ cum rex gratanter suscepisset, probitatem abbatis et fidelitatem

his reverence for St. Edmund whom he feared. Therefore the messenger of the abbot returned, and the abbot wisely concealed the threats of the king, and said, "Let the king send if he will, and take possession of the wardship; he has force and power to perform his will, and to take away the whole abbacy. I will never bend to do readily that which he desires, and it shall never be done by my means. For there is fear that such an action might be drawn into a precedent to the hurt of my successors, and for this matter I will never give the king money. Let the Most High regard it. I will bear patiently whatever may befall."

Then when many said and believed that the king was moved against the abbot, lo! the king wrote in a friendly way to the abbot, and sent word that he should present to him some of his dogs. And the abbot was mindful of the saying of a wise man, "Presents, believe me, move both men and gods, and Jupiter himself may be appeased with gifts." So he sent the dogs for which the king asked to him, and in addition he sent also horses and other valuable gifts. And when the king had graciously received these, he commended the uprightness of the abbot and

---

<sup>†</sup>Ovid. Art. Amat. iii. 653.

ejus publice coram comitibus et baronibus suis magnifice commendavit, et annulum pretiosum, quem dominus papa Innocentius tertius per magnam caritatem ei donaverat, primum scilicet donum quod ei post consecrationem suam oblatum fuerat, abbati per nuntios suos misit in signum familiaritatis et amoris, et per breve suum de xeniis sibi transmissis gratias multiplices egit.

*How the customary dues of the town were changed.*

Multi mirabantur de consuetudinibus quæ immutabantur, domino Samsone abbate vel jubente vel permittente. A tempore<sup>†</sup> quo villa Sancti Ædmundi nomen et libertatem burgi accepit,<sup>‡</sup> solebant homines de singulis domibus dare celerario unum denarium in principio Augusti, ad metendum segetes nostras, qui census dicebatur *rep-selver*; et antequam villa fuit libera,

his fidelity to his trust publicly in the presence of his earls and barons, and sent to the abbot in token of his friendship and love a valuable ring, which the lord pope Innocent the Third had given him for his great affection to him, and which was the first gift which had been made to him after his coronation. And he sent many things by his writ to him for the presents which he had sent.

Many marvelled at the changes in the customary dues which took place with the orders or consent of the lord abbot Samson. From the time when the town of St. Edmund's received the name and liberty of a borough,<sup>131</sup> the men of every house had been wont to give to the cellarer one penny at the beginning of August for the reaping of our corn, which tax was called *rep-selver*. And before the town was free all were wont to reap as slaves, and on-

<sup>†</sup> From *A tempore to discordia concors* (p. 304) we possess an independent text; it may be seen at folio 123 of Harl. 1005.

<sup>‡</sup> In Appendix A. is an extract from Domesday Book, showing what was the state of things in the town of Bury at the time of the survey. What progress the town had made since then, to the end of the twelfth century, I have endeavoured to state as accurately as the materials will allow in the Introduction.

<sup>147</sup> The liberties of St. Edmund's originated from the abbots, and not from the crown, and it would seem that they were first granted in the time of Edward the Confessor. It was at this time also that the name of St. Edmund's was substituted for that of Beodricsworth. The condition of the town in the time of *Domesday* may be found in Rokewode, who translates the passage dealing with St. Edmund's (p. 148–9), and in the appendix to the *Memorials* (I., 339). Some account of the progress made by St. Edmund's in the interval between *Domesday* and the time of abbot Samson is to be found in the Introduction by Arnold to the *Memorials* (Vol. I.)

solebant omnes metere ut servi; sola hospitia militum et capellanorum et servientium curiæ quæta erant a tali censu. Processu temporis, pepercit celerarius quibusdam ditioribus villæ, nichil exigens ab eis;

alii burgenses, hoc videntes, publice dicebant, quod nemo qui haberet messuagium proprium deberet dare illum denarium, sed illi qui alienas domos conducebant. Postea, omnes communiter hanc libertatem petebant, convenientes inde dominum abbatem, et annum redditum pro tali exactione offerentes; abbas vero, attendens qualiter celerarius turpiter ibat per villam ad colligendum *rep-selver*, et qualiter faciebat capi vadia in domibus pauperum, quandoque tripodes, quandoque ostia, quandoque alia utensilia, et qualiter vetulæ exhibant, cum colis suis, minantes et exprobrantes celerario et suis, decrevit ut viginti solidi darentur singulis annis celerario ad *portmanemot* proximum, per manum præfecti, ante Augustum, a burgensibus qui attornaverunt redditum ad hoc solvendum.

Sicque factum est, et carta nostra confirmatum; data eis alia quietantia cuiusdam consuetudinis quæ dicitur *sor-*

ly the houses of the knights and chaplains and servants of the court were free from this tax. But as time passed, the cellarer spared some of the richer men of the town and exacted nothing from them.

When the other burghers saw this, they said publicly that no one who had a messuage of his own ought to pay that penny, but only those who rented the houses of others. Afterwards, all in common sought this freedom, coming to the lord abbot about it, and offering an annual payment in place of this exaction. Then the abbot learnt that the cellarer had gone through the town to collect *rep-selver* in a wrongful manner, and that he had caused sureties to be taken from the houses of the poor men, taking sometimes tripods, and at others doors, and other goods, and how the old women appeared with their distaffs, threatening and cursing the cellarer and his men. And he decreed that twenty shillings should be given to the cellarer every year at the next portman-moot, by the hand of the bailiff, before August, by the burghers who should give money to pay this.

And this was done, and confirmed by our charter. And they were given quit-tance from a certain customary due

*peni*, pro iiij. solidis ad eundem terminum reddendis. Solebat enim celerarius accipere unum denarium per annum, de qualibet vacca hominum ville pro exitu et pastura; nisi forte essent vel vaccæ capellanorum, vel servientium curiæ, quas vaccas solebat imparcare, et circa hoc multum laborare.

Post autem, cum abbas de hoc loqueretur in capitulo, indignabatur conventus et moleste tulit, unde et Benedictus supprior in capitulo respondens pro omnibus dixit: "Ille, ille abbas Ordingus, qui illic jacet, non faceret tale quid pro quingentis marcis argenti." Abbas vero inde iratus rem distulit ad tempus.

*Concerning a dispute  
between the cellarer and  
the sacristan.*

H. sacristam de pertinentiis officiorum suorum, ita quod sacrista volebat accommodare celerario ergastulum villæ ad includendum latrones, qui capiebantur in feudo celerarii. Unde celerarius æpius vexabatur, et, latronibus evadentibus, vituperabatur pro defectu justitiæ.

which is called sor-penny, in return for four-shillings to be paid at the same time. For the cellarer had been wont to receive one penny a year for each cow, belonging to the men of the city, which went out to pasture, unless the cows were those of the chaplains or servants of the court, and these cows he used to put in the pound, and about this he used to have much trouble.

But later on, when the abbot spoke of this in the chapter, the monastery was indignant and angry, and so Benedict the sub-prior made answer for all in the chapter, and said, "He, that abbot Ording, who lies there, would not have done such a thing for five hundred marks of silver." But the abbot was angry at this, and postponed the matter for a time.

Also a dispute arose between Roger the cellarer and Hugh the sacristan concerning the perquisites of their offices, so that the sacristan would not lend to the cellarer the prison in the town for the imprisonment of robbers, who were taken in the fee of the cellarer. Wherefore the cellarer was often vexed, and when the robbers escaped, was blamed for the failure of justice.



Contigit autem, quod quidam libere tenens de celerario, extra portam manens, Ketel nomine, latrocinio calumniatus et duello victus, suspensus erat. Dolebat autem conventus propter opprobria burgensium, dicentium quod, si esset homo ille manens infra burgum, non pervenisset ad duellum, sed iuramentis vicinorum suorum se adquietasset, sicut libertas est eorum qui manent infra burgum.

But it happened that a certain free tenant of the cellarer who remained without the gate, a man called Ketel, being accused of robbery and defeated in a trial by battle, was hanged. And the monastery was grieved at the abusive words of the burghers, who said that if the man had lived within the gate, the matter would not have come to trial by battle, but that he would have been acquitted by the oaths of his neighbours, as was the privilege of those who dwelt within the borough.

Videntes ergo hoc abbas et sanior pars conventus, et attendentes quod homines, tam extra burgam quam infra, nostri sunt, et omnes debent eadem libertate frui infra *bannamleucam*,<sup>†</sup> præter lancettos<sup>‡</sup> de Herdewic et pares eorum, consulte providerunt quomodo posset hoc fieri.

And when the abbot and the more reasonable section of the monastery saw this, and observed that the men, both without and within the borough are our men, and that all should enjoy the same liberty within the jurisdiction of the abbey,<sup>132</sup> except the villeins adscript to the soil<sup>133</sup> at Hardwick and their like, provided with care that this should be so.

Volens itaque abbas officia sacristiæ

Then the abbot being anxious to defi-

<sup>†</sup>Ducange defines *bannaleuca* (*bannum leugæ*, *bannileuca*, *banleuca*) as a certain territory by the boundaries of which the jurisdiction and immunities of any place, whether a town or monastery, were limited. *Bannum* is here used in the sense of jurisdiction, or of the ground within which such jurisdiction is exercised. And because the amount of territory so enfranchised was usually reckoned at a league either way, the phrase *banna leuca*, or *banlieue*, came into use.

<sup>148</sup>This amounted to the distance of one mile's radius by the charter of Edward the Confessor (*Mon.*, III., 138, No. vii., ed. 1846), and by a bull of Alexander III. (Rokewode, p. 149).

<sup>‡</sup>"Colonorum species apud Anglos præstationibus et operis obnoxia"; Ducange. Spelman says lancettus is a corruption of *land-seta*, with which compare *cot-seta*, a cottier. It was a tenure by low and menial services.

<sup>149</sup>Lancetti. As to their duties, see Rokewode, p. 150.

et celerarii certis articulis, determinare, et contentiones sedare, quasi fovendo partem sacristæ, præcepit, ut servientes præfecti villæ et servientes celerarii intrarent simul feudum celerarii ad capiendos latrones et malefactores, et præfectus dimidium lucri haberet pro incarceratione et custodia et labore suo, et curia celerarii veniret ad *portmanne-mot*, et ibi communi consilio judicarentur judicandi. Statutum est etiam, ut homines celerarii venirent ad domum thelonei cum aliis, et ibi renovarent pleggios suos, et scriberentur in rolla præfecti, et ibi darent præfecto denarium, qui dicitur *borth-selver*, et celerarius haberet dimidiam partem; sed nunc nihil omnino inde capit celerarius.

ne with definite conditions the offices of the cellarer and of the sacristan, and to calm disputes, as though he favoured the side of the sacristan, gave orders that the servants of the bailiff of the town and the servants of the cellarer should enter together the fee of the cellarer to take robbers and malefactors. And he ordered that the bailiff should have half the pay due for the imprisonment and guarding of the men and for the labour required, and that the court of the cellarer should go to the portman-moot, and that there cases which had to be adjudged should be adjudged with common assent. And it was also resolved that the men of the cellarer should go to the toll-house with the rest, and there renew their sureties, and that they should be inscribed in the roll of the bailiff, and pay a penny to the bailiff there, which payment is called *borth-selver*, and that the cellarer should have half of it. Now, however, the cellarer receives nothing on this account.

Hoc autem totum fuit factum, ut omnes æquali libertate gauderent. Dicunt tamen adhuc burgenses, quod suburbani non deberent esse quieti de theloneo in foro, nisi fuerint in gilda mercatorum. Præfectus autem, abbate dissimulante, placita et forisfacturas sibi

All this was done that all might enjoy equal liberty. But the burghers still say that those who dwell without the town ought not to be free from market toll, unless they are members of the gild merchant. And the bailiff, with the assent of the abbot, claims the pleas and

vendicat de feudo celerarii his diebus.

*Concerning the customs  
and dues of the cellarer.*

Antiquæ consuetudines celerarii, quas vidimus, tales fuerunt; celerarius habebat messuagium et horrea sua juxta fontem Scuruni, ubi sollemniter curiam suam solebat tenere de latronibus et omnibus placitis et querelis, et ibi solebat ponere homines suos in plegios et inrollare, et renovare singulis annis, et inde lucrum capere sicut præfectus capiebat ad *portmane-mot*. Quod messuagium, cum horto adjacente, quem nunc infirmarius tenet, fuit mansio Beodrici, qui fuit antiquitus dominus istius villæ, unde et villa dicta fuit Beodrichesworth, cujus campi dominici nunc sunt in dominico celerarii. Quod autem nunc vocatur *averland*, fuit terra rusticorum ejus. Erat autem summa tenementi ejus et suorum tricesies triginta acræ terræ, quæ adhuc sunt campi istius villæ, quorum servitium, cum villa fuit facta libera, dividebatur in duas partes, ut sacrista sive præfectus acciperet liberum census, scilicet de qualibet acra duos denarios; celerarius haberet araturas et

forfeitures of the fee of the cellarer to this day.

The old customs of the cellarer, which we have seen, were as follows:—The cellarer had a messuage and barns near Scurun's well. There he was wont to hold his court solemnly for the trial of robbers and all other pleas and disputes. There he used to place his men in pledge and enrol them, and to renew the pledges every year, and to take for this such money as the bailiff took at the portman-moot. This messuage, with the garden adjoining it, which a tenant holds now, was the manor of Beodric,<sup>150</sup> who was formerly lord of that town, and the town was therefore formerly called Beodrichesworth, and his demesne lands are now in the demesne of the cellarer. That which is now called averland was the land of his villeins. The total amount of his holding and those of his men was thirty times thirty acres of land, and these are still the fields of the town. The service from this, when the town was made free, was divided into two parts, so that the sacristan or bailiff might receive a free tax of twopence from each acre. The cellarer

<sup>150</sup>Beodricsworth means the "estate of Beodric." The name itself means "a table chieftain," according to Arnold (*Mem.*, I., iv., note). Abbo (*Mem.*, I., 19) calls the place "a royal township," which may be explained by the statement of Hermannus (*Mem.* I., 33) that Beodric was of the royal house of East Anglia, and that the township was granted to him by a king of the same name.

alia servitia, scilicet araturam unius rodæ pro qualibet acra sine cibo (quæ consuetudo adhuc observatur);

was to have the ploughing and other services, that is, the ploughing of one rood for every acre without giving of food, and this custom is still observed.

haberet et faldas ubi omnes homines villæ, præter senescaldum qui propriam faldam habet, tenentur ponere oves suas (quæ consuetudo adhuc observatur); haberet et *aver-peni*, scilicet pro singulis triginta acris ij. denarios; quæ consuetudo mutata fuit ante mortem H. abbatis, Gilberto de Aluedena existente celerario.

He was also to have the folds where all the men of the town, with the exception of the steward, who has his own fold, were bound to place their sheep, and this custom is still observed. And he was to have also ave-penny, that is twopence for every thirty acres, but this custom was changed before the death of abbot Hugh, when Gilbert de Elveden was cellarer.

Solebant autem homines villæ, jubente celerario, ire apud Laginghehe<sup>†</sup> et reportare avragium de anguillis de Sutareia, et sæpe vacui redire et ita vexari sine aliquo emolumento celerarii; unde convenit inter eos, ut singulæ triginta acræ de cetero darent unum denarium per annum, et homines remanerent domi. Terræ autem illæ, nunc tempore, in tot partes divisæ sunt, quod vix scitur a quo ille census dari debet; ita quod vidi celerarium in uno anno capere xxvii. denarios, sed vix nunc potest habere x. denarios et obolum.

The men of the town, by order of the cellarer, were wont to go to Lakenheath, and to bring back a catch of eels from Southrey,<sup>151</sup> and often they returned empty-handed, so that they were burdened without profit to the cellarer, wherefore it was agreed among them that henceforth every thirty acres of land should pay one penny a year, and the men remain at home. That land, however, is now so divided that it is hard to tell what rent should be paid from it, with the result that I have seen the cellarer in one year take twenty-seven pence, while now he can hardly take tenpence halfpenny.

<sup>†</sup> Alter textus (J'), qui hunc locum exhibet (vide Proleg., §16), habet *Lakingheth*.

<sup>151</sup> For the grant of fish by Elfgiva, wife of Canute, see *Monasticon* (ed. 1846, III., 137, No. v). Cp. Rokwode (pp. 150–1).

Item celerarius solebat habere potestatem in viis extra villam, ita quod nulli licuit fodere cretam vel argillam sine licentia ejus. Solebat etiam summonere fullones villæ, ut ei accomoderent pannos ad sal suum ducendum. Alioquin ipse prohiberet eis usum aquarum, et caperet telas quas ibi inveniret; quæ consuetudines adhuc observantur. Item quicumque emit a celerario bladum vel aliud, solebat esse quietus de theloneo ad portam villæ quando exiret, unde celerarius rem suam carius vendebat, quod adhuc observatur. Item celerarius solet accipere theloneum de lino, tempore rotationis, scilicet unam bottam de qualibet cerna. Item solus celerarius debet, vel solebat habere, liberum taurum in campis hujus villæ; nunc habent plures. Item quando aliquis delegabat terram burgagii in elemosinam conventui, et hoc assignabatur celerario vel alio officiali, terra illa solebat de cetero esse quieta de *haggovele*, et maxime celerario propter dignitatem officii, quia secundus pater est in monasterio, vel propter reverentiam conventus, quia favorabilis debet esse conditio eorum qui victum nostrum procurant; sed talem consuetudinem dicit abbas esse injustam, ubi sacrista amittit servitium suum.

Again, the cellarer used to have authority in the roads without the town, so that no one was permitted to dig for chalk or clay without a licence from him. And he used to summon the fullers of the town, that they should give cloth for his chalk. Otherwise, he would prohibit them the use of water, and would take the webs which he found there, and these customs still maintain. And also whoever bought of the cellarer corn or anything, used to be free from toll at the gate when he went out, for which cause the cellarer sold his goods at a higher price, and this custom still remains. Also the cellarer was wont to take toll from flax, when it was carried about, at the rate of one bundle from each load. And the cellarer alone ought, and used, to have a free bull in the fields of this town; now more men have free bulls. And whenever any one gave his land held in burgage in frank almon to the monastery, and this was handed over to the cellarer or to another official, that land was wont to be quit from *haggovele*, and especially when it was assigned to the cellarer, on account of the importance of his office, for that he is the second father in the monastery, and for respect to the monastery, since the state of those who procure our food ought to be good. This custom the abbot regards as unjust, since the

sacristan loses his service.

Item celerarius solebat warentizare servientibus curiæ, ut essent a scotto et tallagio quieti; sed nunc non est ita, quia burgenses dicunt, quod servientes curiæ debent esse quieti in eo quod sunt servientes, sed non in hoc quod tenent burgagium in villa, et quia ipsi vel uxores eorum faciunt publicas emptiones et venditiones in foro. Item celerarius libere solebat capere omnia sterquilinia ad opus suum, in omni vico, nisi ante ostia eorum qui habebant *averland*; illis enim solis licebat fimum colligere et habere. Ista consuetudo paulatim defecit tempore Hugonis abbatis, usque quod Dionisius et Rogerus de Hehingham fuerunt celerarii, qui, volentes antiquam consuetudinem revocare, ceperunt redas burgensium fimo oneratas, et eas exonerari fecerunt; sed reclamante multitudine burgensium et prævalente, quilibet in tenemento suo fimum colligit, et pauperes suum vendunt, quando et cui voluerint.

Item celerarius in foro istius villæ tale privilegium solet habere, quod ipse vel emptores sui primam emptionem habebunt de omni cibo ad opus conventus, si abbas domi non fuerit. Empiores abbatis vel celerarii, qui prius ve-

The cellarer was also wont to warrant the servants of the court, that they should be free from scot and tallage, but now this is not the case, for the burghers say that the servants of the court ought to be quit indeed as far as they are servants, but not in so far as they hold land in burgage in the town, and in so far as they or their wives buy or sell publicly in the market. The cellarer was wont to take all the manure in every street for his use, except such as was before the doors of those who had *averland*; for they alone might collect and have it. That custom rather fell into abeyance in the time of abbot Hugh, until Dennis and Roger de Hengham were cellarers. They, wishing to revive the ancient custom, seized the manure carts of the burghers, and caused them to be unloaded. But as a number of burghers then resisted successfully, every one now collects the manure which is on his holding, and the poor sell theirs when and to whom they will.

The cellarer had also this right in the market of the town, that he and his agents should buy first in the case of all food for the use of the monastery, if the abbot were not at home. The buyers of the abbot or of the cellarer,

nient in foro, prius ement, sive isti sine illis, sive illi sine istis. Si autem hinc et inde præsentes fuerint, deferendum est emptoribus abbatis. Item tempore quo venditur allec, ement emptores semper abbatis centenarium de allec minus quam ceteri, uno obolo; similiter celerarius et sui emptores. Item si summa de pisce vel alio cibo venerit in curiam primo vel in forum venerit, et summa ilia non fuerit discargiata de equo vel de carecta, celerarius vel emptores sui summam integram ement et secum ducent sine theloneo. Abbas autein Samson præcepit emptoribus suis, ut cederent celerario et suis, quia, sicut ipse dixit, maluit ut ipse esset in defectu quam suus conventus. Emptores ergo, honore se invicem prævenientes si aliquid emendum invenerint quod non sufficiat ambabus partibus, rem pariter emunt et a pari dividunt, et sic capitis ad membra, patris ad filios, remanet discordia concors.<sup>†</sup>

whichever should come first to the market, was to buy first, either the former without the latter, or the latter without the former; in case they both came at the same time, the preference was given to the abbot's agents. At the time when herrings were sold, the abbot's agents were always to buy a hundred herrings for a penny less than other men, and the cellarer and his agents had the same right. If a load of fish or other food should come first to the court or should come into the market, and the load had not been taken from the horse or from the cart, then the cellarer and his agents might buy and take for themselves the whole load without toll. Abbot Samson, however, ordered his agents that they should give place to the cellarer and his agents, because, as he himself said, he would rather that he lost than his monastery. Accordingly, the agents, in honour preferring one another,<sup>136</sup> when anything came to be sold which was not enough for both parties, bought the thing jointly and divided it equally, and so discord became concord between the head and the members, and between the father and his sons.

<sup>152</sup> Rom. xii., 10.

<sup>†</sup> There seems to be an allusion to Lucan, *Phars.* i. 98; *mansit concordia discors*.

*How the author was  
blamed for praising the  
abbot too much.*

Poeta dixit,  
“summa pet-  
tit livor;”<sup>†</sup> hæc  
idcirco repeto

quia, cum aliquis præsens scriptum  
inspiceret, et tot bene acta legeret,  
adulatorem abbatis me nominavit, et  
venatorem favoris et gratiæ, dicens,  
quod quædam suppressi tacitus, quæ  
tacenda non essent. Cumque interro-  
garem quæ et qualia, respondit: “Non-  
ne vides, quod abbas dat eschaetas  
terrarum de dominicis terris conven-  
tus, et puellas hæredes terrarum, et  
viduas, tam in villa Sancti Ædmun-  
di quam extra, pro beneplacito suo?  
Nonne vides, qualiter abbas abstrahit  
sibi loquelas et placita calumnian-  
tium, per breve regis, terras que sunt  
de feudo conventus, et maxime illas  
loquelas unde lucrum surgit; et illas  
unde lucrum non sequitur, illas re-  
mittit celerario vel sacristæ aut aliis  
officialibus?”

Quibus respondi, ut scivi, forte bene,  
forte male, dicens, quod quilibet do-  
minus feudi, cui sit homagium, debet  
de jure habere eschaetam, cum even-  
rit in feudo, unde ipse accepit homa-

The poet has said that envy aims at  
the highest, and so I relate that when a  
certain person saw the present writing,  
and read of so many good actions, he  
called me a flatterer of the abbot, and  
said that I was hunting after grace and  
favour, telling me that I had passed  
over in silence some things which ou-  
ght not to have been left unmentioned.  
And when I asked him what things,  
and what sort of things these were, he  
answered, “Have you not seen that  
the abbot gives the escheated lands in  
the demesnes of the monastery, and  
heiresses of lands being minors, and  
widows both within and without the  
town of St. Edmund’s, to whomsoever  
he will? Have you not seen that the  
abbot has attracted to himself suits  
and pleas of those who by the royal  
writ claim lands which are of the fee  
of the monastery, and more especially  
suits in which there is money to be  
gained; and that he passes on those  
suits in which there is no profit to the  
cellarer or the sacristan or the other  
officials?”

And to this I answered as best I knew  
how, and perhaps well, perhaps ill,  
saying that every lord of a fief, to  
whom homage is due, ought to have  
the escheat by law, when there is one

---

<sup>†</sup> ante § 25.



gium; et consimili ratione, generale auxilium burgensium et wardas puorum et donationes viduarum et puellarum in illis feudis unde accepit homagium, quæ omnia soli abbati convenire videntur, nisi forte vacaverit abbatia. In villa tamen Sancti Ædmundi consuetudo extitit ratione burgi, ut proximus consanguineus habeat wardam pueri cum hæreditate, usque ad annos discretionis.

in the fief, whence he receives homage; and for a similar reason, ought to have a general aid from the burghers and the wardship of boys, and marriage rights over widows and girls, in those fees whence he has homage; and all these things seemed to belong to the abbot alone, unless by chance the abbacy should be vacant. In the town of St. Edmund's, however, as it is a borough, there is a custom that the wardship of a boy, until he comes to years of discretion, and his inheritance, vests with the nearest relative.

Item de loquelis et placitis respondi, me nunquam vidisse abbatem sibi usurpasse placita nostra, nisi pro defectu iustitiæ nostræ; sed tamen pecuniam aliquando accepisse ut, sua auctoritate interveniente, loquelæ et placita debitum sortirentur finem. Vidi etiam aliquando placita, quæ ad nos spectant, tractari in curia abbatis; quia non erat aliquis, qui in principio litis ex parte conventus forum allegaret.<sup>†</sup>

And as to suits and pleas, I answered that I had never seen the abbot usurp to himself our pleas, unless on account of a failure of justice on our part; but yet that he had sometimes received money that, by the intervention of his authority, suits and pleas might come to a right conclusion. And I have sometimes seen pleas, which belonged to us, conducted in the abbot's court, since there was no one who at the beginning of the case would claim the trial for the monastery.

*How there was a fire near  
the shrine of Saint Edmund.  
A.D. 1198.*

Anno gratiæ  
m<sup>o</sup> c. nonagesimo viij<sup>o</sup>. voluit gloriosus

In the year of grace one thousand one hundred and ninety-eight, the glorious martyr Edmund willed to terrify our monastery, and to teach us that his bo-

<sup>†</sup>*forum allegaret*: lit. "might allege the court"; i.e., allege that the jurisdiction over the matter in litigation lay with the convent and not with the abbot.

martyr Ædmundus terrere conventum nostrum et docere, ut corpus ejus reverentius et diligentius custodiretur. Erat quidam ligneus tabulatus inter feretrum et magnum altare, super quem duo cerei, quos solebant custodes feretri reclutare, et cereum cereo superponere, et indecenter conjungere. Erant sub tabulato illo multa reposita indecenter, linum et filum et cera, et utensilia varia, immo quicquid veniebat in manus custodum, ibi reponebatur ostio et parietibus ferreis existentibus.

Cum ergo dormirent custodes nocte sanctæ Aleldrethæ, cecidit, ut credimus, pars cerei reclutati jam combusti super prædictum tabulatum pannis opertum, et cœpit omnia proxima quæ supra et subtus erant accendere, ita quod parietes ferrei omnino igne candescerent. Et ecce furor Domini, sed non sine misericordia, juxta illud, “cum iratus fueris, misericordiæ recordaberis.” Eadem enim hora cecidit horologium ante horas matutinas, surgensque magister vestiarii, hoc percipiens et intuens, cucurrit quantocius et, percussa tabula tanquam pro mortuo, sublimi voce clamavit dicens

dy should be more reverently and carefully guarded. There was a certain wooden floor between the shrine and the high altar, on which were two candles, which the guardians of the shrine used to relight. And they were wont to put one candle on another, and to stick them together carelessly. And under this floor many things were lying together in an untidy manner, such as flax and thread and wax and vessels of different sorts, in fact the keepers of the shrine used to put there whatever came into their hands, behind the door with iron sides which the place had.

On the night of St. Etheldreda's day then the keepers were asleep, and part of a candle, which had been relit, fell, as we believe, while it was still burning, on the same floor which was covered with rags. And it caught all things which were near it, and those above and underneath went on fire, so that the iron walls were all white hot. And lo! the anger of the Lord was kindled, but not without mercy, as it is written, In wrath remember mercy.<sup>137</sup> For in the same hour the clock struck before the hour of matins, and the master of the vestry arose and perceived and knew of the fire. Then

---

<sup>153</sup>Hab. iii., 2.

feretrum esse combustum.

he ran at once, and sounding the gong, as if for a dead man, he cried with a loud voice and said that the shrine was on fire.

Nos autem omnes accurrentes flammam invenimus incredibiliter sævientem, et totum feretrum amplectentem, et non longe a trabibus ecclesiæ ascendentem. Juvenes ergo nostri propter aquam currentes, quidam ad puteum, quidam ad horologium, quidam cucullis suis impetum ignis cum magna difficultate extinxerunt, et sanctuaria quædam prius diripuerunt. Cumque frigida aqua super frontem feretri fundetur, ceciderunt lapides et quasi in pulverem redacti sunt. Clavi autem, quibus laminæ argenteæ configebantur feretro, exiliebant a ligno subtus combusto ad spissitudinem digiti mei, et pendebant laminæ sine clavis una ex altera.

Then we all ran up and found the fire raging with incredible fierceness, and surrounding the whole shrine, and almost reaching the beams of the church. Then the young men ran for water, some to the well and some to the clock, and some used their hoods, and with great labour put out the fire. But first they stripped some of the altars. Then, when cold water had been poured on the front of the shrine, the stones fell and were reduced as it were to dust. And the nails with which the silver plates were fastened to the shrine came out of the wood, which had been burnt to the depth of my finger, and the plates hung one from another without nails.

Aurea quidem majestas in fronte feretri cum quibusdam lapidibus remansit firma et intacta, et pulcrior post ignem quam ante, quia tota aurea fuit.

Yet the golden image of the saint at the front of the shrine, and some stones, remained firm and unharmed, and the image was more beautiful after the fire than it had been before, because it was of pure gold.

Contigit etiam, volente Altissimo, tunc temporis magnam trabem, quæ solebat esse ultra altare, sublatam esse, ut nova sculptura repararetur.

Now it happened by the will of the Most High, that at this time the great beam, which had been over the altar, had been taken away that it might be

Contigit et crucem, et Mariolam, et Johannem, et loculum cum camisia sancti Ædmundi, et philateria cuin reliquiis, quæ ab eadem trabe pendere solebant, et alia sanctuaria quæ super trabem steterant, omnia prius sublata esse; alioquin omnia combusta essent, ut credimus, sicut pannus depictus combustus fuit, qui in loco trabis pendebat. Sed quid fieret si cortinata esset ecclesia?

Cum ergo securi essemus quod ignis in nullo loco perforasset feretrum, rimas et foramina, si qua essent, attentissime investigantes, et omnia frigida esse percipientes, mitigatus est in parte dolor noster: et ecce! clamaverunt quidam ex fratribus nostris cum magno ejulatu ciphum sancti Ædmundi esse combustum. Cumque plures hinc et inde quærerent lapides et laminas inter carbones et cineres, extraxerunt ciphum omnino inviolatum, jacente<sup>†</sup> in medio magnorum carbonum, qui jam extincti erant, et invenerunt eundem involutum panno lineo, sed semiusto. Pixis vero quercina, in qua ciphus de more ponebatur, combusta erat in pulverem, et solas ligaturæ fer-

newly carved. It happened also that the cross, and the little Mary, and the John, and the chest with the garment of St. Edmund, and the case containing the relics, which had formerly hung from the same beam, and other holy things which had stood on the beam, had all been carried away beforehand. Otherwise, we believe that they would all have been burnt, as a painted cloth was burnt, which was hanging in the place of the beam. But what would have happened if the church had been hung with curtains?

So when we were sure that the fire had nowhere entered the shrine, after carefully looking at the cracks and chinks, wherever they were, and after seeing that all was cold, our sorrow was greatly lessened. And lo! some of our brothers cried with much wailing that the cup of St. Edmund was consumed. And when many sought the stones and metal plates in all directions among the ashes and cinders, they brought forth the cup quite unharmed. It was lying in the midst of a heap of ashes, which were now cool, and it was found covered with a linen cloth, which, however, was half-burned. The oak chest, also, in which the cup was usually placed, had been

---

<sup>†</sup>lege, *jacentem*.

reæ et sera ferrea inventa sunt. Viso itaque miraculo, omnes lacrimati sumus præ gaudio.

Majorem ergo partem frontis feretri excrustatam videntes, et turpitudinem combustionis abhorrentes, de communi consilio, accersito clam aurifabro, laminas conjungi fecimus et feretro apponi, sine omni dilatione, propter scandalum; vestigia quoque combustionis, vel cera, vel alio modo cooperiri fecimus.

Sed teste evangelista, "Nichil opertum quod non revelabitur." Venientes summo mane peregrini oblaturi, nichil tale quid perceperunt: quidam tamen circumcirca intuentes quærebant, ubi fuit ignis quem circa feretrum fuisse jam audierant. Cumque ergo omnino celari non potuit, responsum est quærentibus, candelam cecidisse et manutergia tria combusta esse, etc. ad ignis calorem lapides quosdam in fronte feretri deperisse. Fingeat tamen fama mendax caput sancti esse combustum: quidam dicebant capillos tantum esse combustos; sed cognita postmodum veritate, obstructum est

burnt to ashes, and only the iron fastenings and the iron lock were found. Then when we saw this miracle, we all wept for joy.

Then when we saw that the greater part of the front of the shrine had been ruined, and were angered at the wickedness of the cause of the fire, with common assent a goldsmith was privately summoned, and we caused him to make plates and fix on the shrine without any delay, that the scandal might be avoided, and we caused the signs of the fire to be covered up with wax or in some other way.

But the gospel bears witness, There is nothing hid which shall not be revealed.<sup>138</sup> Very early in the morning there came strangers bearing gifts, and noticed nothing of the fire. Yet some of them looking round, asked where the fire round the shrine had been, of which they had already heard. And so when it was impossible to conceal it altogether, we answered those who asked that a candle had fallen and burnt three napkins, and that owing to the heat of the fire some stones on the front of the shrine had been destroyed. Yet lying rumour pretended that the head of the saint had been burnt; some said that only the hair had been

---

<sup>154</sup>Luke xii., 2.

os loquentium iniqua.<sup>†</sup>

Hæc omnia facta sunt, providente Domino, ut loca circa feretrum sancti sui honestius custodirentur, et ut propositum domini abbatis citius et sine dilatione debitum finem sortiretur; scilicet, ut ipsum ieretrum cum corpore sancti martyris securius et gloriosius in loco eminentiore poneretur; quia antequam hoc prædictum infortunium accidit, jam crista feretri usque ad medietatem facta fuit, et lapides marmorei ad elevandum et sustinendum feretrum, ex parte magna, parati et politi fuerant.

*How the abbot attributed  
the fire to the greed of the  
monks.*

his rumoribus; qui domum rediens, et in capitulum veniens, hæc et consimilia et etiam majora pericula dixit posse evenire propter peccata nostra, et maxime propter murmurationes nostras de cibo et potu; culpam quodammodo in universitatem conventus retorquens, potius quam in avaritiam

consumed; but in the end the truth was known, and the mouth of them that spoke lies was stopped.<sup>139</sup>

Now all this was done, by the providence of the Lord, that the places round the shrine of His saint might be more honestly cared for, and that that which the lord abbot proposed might the more quickly come and without delay come to a fitting conclusion. For he proposed that the shrine, with the body of the glorious martyr, should be placed more securely and splendidly in a more prominent position. And, before this same misfortune befell, the crest of the shrine was half finished, and the marble stones for raising and supporting the shrine had been largely prepared and polished.

Valde dolebat dominus abbas qui absens erat, auditis

The lord abbot, who was absent, was greatly grieved when he heard these rumours. And on his return home, he came into the chapter and said that these and other like perils would result from our sins, and especially because of our murmuring about our food and drink. And he turned the blame to some degree rather on the whole monastery than on the avarice and carelessness of the guardians of the shrine.

<sup>†</sup> Another copy of §§75, 76, down to this point, is in Bod. 297, p. 423.  
<sup>155</sup> Ps. lxxiii., 11.

et negligentiam custodum feretri.

Ut ergo nos prudenter induceret ad hoc, ut abstinentiam faceremus de pittanceis nostris, saltem uno anno, et, ad frontem feretri reparandam de puro auro, redditus de pitanceria apponeremus, ipse primus dedit exemplum largitatis, et totum thesaurum suum quem habebat de auro, scilicet xv. anulos aureos, valentes, ut creditur, sexaginta marcas, coram nobis ad reparationem feretri dedit. Nos autem pitancieriam nostram esse dandam ad tale opus, omnes concessimus; sed mutatum est consilium per sacristam dicentem, sanctum Ædmundum bene posse reparare feretrum suum sine tali auxilio.

*Concerning the dream that a certain great person had, and how the abbot interpreted the same.*

Tunc temporis venit aliquis magni nominis, nescio quis, qui visionem suam narravit abbati, unde ipse multum movebatur, et eam in pleno capitulo asperrima narravit prolatione; et exposuit hoc modo: "Verum est," inquit, "quod quidam vir magnus per visionem vidit, scilicet quod sanctus martyr Ædmundus videbatur extra feretrum suum jacere, et gemendo dicere se pannis suis exspoliatum et macilentum esse fame et siti, et suum cimiterium et atria ecclesiæ

Therefore, that he might skilfully lead us to abstain from our pittances, at least for one year, and that we might appropriate the revenues of the pittancy to the restoration of the shrine with pure gold, he gave the first example of generosity himself. For in our presence, he gave the whole treasure in gold, which he had, that is, fifteen golden rings of the value, it is believed, of sixty marks, towards the restoration of the shrine. And we all granted that our pittances should be given for this purpose, until our decision was changed by the sacristan, who said that St. Edmund was well able without such assistance to repair his own shrine.

At this time some great person, I know not who it was, came and told a vision of his to the abbot, whereby the abbot was much moved, and related it in full chapter with a very bitter speech. And he told it in this way: "That is a true vision," he said, "which a certain great man has seen. For he beheld the holy martyr Edmund lying without his shrine, and saying with groans that he was robbed of his garments and wasted with hunger and thirst, and that his cemetery and the halls of his church are carelessly guarded."

suæ negligenter custodiri.”

Et hoc somnium exposuit abbas coram omnibus, retorquens culpam in nos hoc modo: “Sanctus Ædmundus nudum se asserit, quia pannos vestros veteres subtrahitis nudis pauperibus, et inviti datis quod dare debetis, et de cibo et de potu similiter. Desidia et negligentia sacristæ et sociorum ejus patens<sup>†</sup> ex recenti infortunio combustionis, quæ fuit inter feretram et altare.”

*How the monks interpreted the dream in a different way, and how they angered the abbot on that account.*

His dictis con-  
stristabatur  
conventus, et  
post capitulum  
conveniebant plures fratres in  
unum et interpretabantur somnium  
hoc modo: “Nos,” inquit, “sumus  
nuda membra sancti Ædmundi, et  
conventus est nudum corpus ejus;  
quia nos spoliati sumus antiquis con-  
suetudinibus et libertatibus nostris.  
Abbas omnia habet, cameriam, sa-  
cristiam, cellariam; et nos perimus  
fame et siti, qui victum nostrum non  
habemus, nisi per clericum abbatis et  
per ejus administrationem. Si custo-  
des feretri negligentes fuerint, abbas  
sibi imputet; quia tales ipse consti-

---

<sup>†</sup>legem patent.

And the abbot interpreted this dream in the presence of all, turning the blame on us in this way: “St. Edmund declares that he is naked because you withheld your old clothes from the naked poor, and give unwillingly that which you ought to give, and do the same in the matter of food and drink. The idleness, the neglect of the sacristan and his fellows, is very clear from the recent disaster of the fire which has occurred between the shrine and the altar.”

At these words the monastery was grieved, and after the chapter many of the brothers met together and interpreted the dream in this way: “We are the naked limbs of St. Edmund,” they said, “and the monastery is his naked body. For we have been despoiled of our ancient customary dues and liberties. The abbot has all things; the chamberlainship, the sacristy, the cellar. And we perish with hunger and thirst, when we cannot have our food save by means of a clerk of the abbot and through his ministration. If the guardians of the shrine were negligent, the abbot may put it down to himself, for he it was who appoin-



tuit." Hoc modo multi loquebantur in conventu.

Cum autem hæc interpretatio ostensa esset abbati in foresta de Herlaua, in redeundo de Lundoniis, valde iratus est et commotus, et respondens ait: "Volunt ipsi retorquere somnium illud in me; per os Dei! quam cito domum rediero, reddam eis consuetudines quas suas dicunt, et removebo clericum meum a celerario, et eos eis relinquam; et videbo sapientiam eorum in fine anni. Hoc anno residebam domi, et feci cellariam eorum servari sine debito; et tales michi reddunt gratiarum actiones!"

Rediens ergo domum abbas, habens in proposito transferre sanctum martyrem, humiliavit se coram Deo et hominibus, cogitans, ut se in omnibus emendaret, et pacem cum omnibus, et maxime cum conventu suo, reformaret. Sedens ergo in capitulo, celerarium et subcelerarium per communem assensum nostrum eligi præcepit; et clericum suum removit, dicens quod, quicquid fecerat, propter commodum nostrum id fecerat, teste Deo et sanctis ejus, et se multis modis excusavit.

ted such men." And in this way many spoke in the monastery.

But when this interpretation was made known to the abbot, as he was in the forest of Harlow on his way back from London, he was very wroth and greatly moved, and he answered and said, "They would turn that dream against me. By the face of God! as soon as I shall reach home, I will restore to them what they call their customary dues, and I will take my clerk away from the cellarer, and I will leave them to their own devices. And at the end of the year I shall see how wise they are. For this year I have stayed at home, and I have caused their cellar to be supplied without debt. And they show such gratitude towards me!"

And so when he returned home, and was intending to translate the holy martyr, he humbled himself before God and men, thinking that he would amend his way in all things, and make peace with all men, and especially with his monastery. Then as he sat in the chapter, he ordered a cellarer and subcellarer to be chosen by our common assent; and he removed his clerk, saying that whatever he had done, he had done for our welfare, calling to witness God and His saints, and excusing himself in many ways.

Concerning the translation  
of the body of Saint  
Edmund.  
A.D. 1198 Nov. 20.

Audite, cœli,  
quæ loquar,  
audiat terra  
factum Sam-  
sonis abbatis. Igitur,<sup>†</sup> appropinquante  
festo sancti Ædmundi, politi sunt la-  
pides marmorei, et parata sunt omnia  
ad elevationem feretri. Celebrato igi-  
tur die festi, sexta feria, sequente die  
dominica, indictum est triduanum  
jejunium populo; et ostensa est eis  
publice causa jejunii. Abbas autem  
prædixit conventui, ut se præpararent  
ad transferendum feretrum et consi-  
stendum super magnum altare, donec  
machina cementaria perficeretur; et  
tempus et modum præfixit ad tale  
opus.

Cum ergo venissemus illa nocte ad ho-  
ras matutinas, stetit magnum feretrum  
super altare, vacuum intus, ornatum  
coriis albis cervinis, sursum et deor-  
sum et circumcirca, quæ affigebantur  
ligno clavis argenteis, et panellus unus  
stetit deorsum juxta columnam eccle-  
siæ, et sanctum corpus adhuc jacebat,  
ubi jacere solebat. Percantatis laudi-

Hear, O Heaven,<sup>140</sup> the things which  
I speak; give ear, O earth, to the deed  
of abbot Samson. For, when the feast  
of St. Edmund drew nigh, the marble  
stones were polished, and all things  
were made ready for the elevation of  
the shrine. Accordingly, the feast was  
celebrated on a Friday, and on the fol-  
lowing Sunday a three days' fast was  
proclaimed to the people, and the cau-  
se for that fast was publicly announ-  
ced. Moreover, the abbot preached to  
the people that they should prepare  
themselves for the transference of the  
shrine and for placing it upon the hi-  
gh altar, until the masons should have  
completed their preparations. And he  
appointed a time and method for so  
great a work.

Therefore, when we had on that night  
come to the time of matins, the great  
shrine stood upon the altar empty  
within, adorned with white doe-skins,  
and one panel stood below against a  
pillar of the church, and the holy body  
lay still where it was wont to lie.<sup>141</sup>  
Then hymns of praise were sung, and  
we all went to take our discipline. Af-

<sup>156</sup> Isai. i., 2.

<sup>†</sup> The passage from this point, down to *pericula cautum* (p. 314), is extracted in Bod. 240, a text of the fourteenth century, p. 660. Another copy is in Bod. 297, p. 424.

<sup>157</sup> That is, where it had lain since its translation by abbot Baldwin in 1095, for an account of which see Hermannus (*Mem.*, I., 84–9). The various translations of the relics of the saint are noticed in the table of dates to be found at the end of these notes.

bus, omnes accessimus ad disciplinas suscipiendas. Quo facto, vestiti sunt in albis dominus abbas et quidam cum eo, et accedentes reverenter, sicut decebat, festinabant detegere loculum.

Erat autem pannus lineus exterius, qui loculum et omnia cætera includebat, qui quibusdam ligamentis suis desuper ligatus inventus fuit; postea quidam pannus sericus, et postea alter lineus pannus, et postea tertius, et ita tandem discoopertus est locus stans super ligneum alveolum, ne ipse locus possit lædi a lapide marmoreo.

Jacuit super pectus martyris, affixus loculo exterius, angelus aureus ad longitudinem pedis humani, habens ensem aureum in una manu, et vexillum in altera; et subter erat foramen in operculo, ubi antiqui custodes martyris solebant manus imponere ad tangendum sanctum corpus. Et erat versus superscriptus imagini:

Martyris ecce zoma servat  
Michaelis agalma.

Erantque annuli ferrei ad duo capita loculi, sicut solebat fieri in cista Noren-

ter that, the lord abbot and some with him were clothed in white raiment, and approaching with reverence, as was right, hastened to uncover the coffin.

Now there was a linen cloth outside, which covered the coffin and all the other things, and which was found to be fastened with some strings of its own. Next there was a silken cloth, and then another linen cloth, and then a third, and so at last the coffin was uncovered and stood upon a wooden stand, that the coffin might not be harmed by the marble stone.

Above the breast of the martyr, and on the outside of the coffin, there lay a golden angel of the length of a man's foot, having a golden sword in one hand and a standard in the other. And beneath it was a hole in the coffin's cover, where the former guardians of the martyr were wont to put in their hands to touch the holy body. And there was this verse written over the image:

Lo! the image of St. Michael keeps the martyr's corpse.

And there were iron rings at the two ends of the coffin, as there used to be

si.<sup>†</sup>

Sublevantes ergo loculum cum corpore, portabant usque ad altare, et apposui manum meam peccatricem in auxilium ad portandum, licet abbas præcepisset, ne aliquis accederet, nisi vocatus; et inclusus est loculus in feretro, panello apposito et conjuncto.

Putabamus omnes, quod abbas vellet loculum ostendere populo in octavis festi et reportare sanctum corpus coram omnibus; sed male seducti sumus, sicut sequentia docebunt. Feria quarta, canente conventu completorium, locutus est abbas cum sacrista et Waltero medico, et initum est consilium, ut duodecim fratres vocarentur, qui fortes essent ad portandos panellos feretri, et prudentes essent ad conjungendos eos et disjungendos. Dixitque abbas se habere in votis videre patrum suum, et se velle sibi associari sacristam et Walterum medicum ad inspectionem eam; et nominati sunt duo capellani abbatis, et duo custodes feretri, et duo magistri de vestiario; et alii sex, sacrista Hugo, Walterus medicus, Augustinus, Willelmus de Dice, Robertus, Ricardus.

in Danish chests.

Therefore raising the coffin with the body, they bore it to the altar, and I gave my sinful hand to help in the carrying, though the abbot had ordered that no one should approach unless he were summoned. And the coffin was enclosed in the shrine, the panel being put in place and shut up.

Now we all thought that the abbot would show the coffin to the people in the octave of the feast, and would have the holy body translated in the presence of all men; but we were quite deceived, as that which followed proved. On the Wednesday, while the monastery was chanting compline, the abbot spoke with the sacristan and Walter the physician, and having taken counsel, summoned twelve brothers, who were strong to bear the panels of the shrine, and were skilled in fastening and unfastening them. And the abbot said that he had prayed to see his patron saint, and that he wished that the sacristan and Walter the physician should be joined with him in making the inspection. And the two chaplains of the abbot were named, and the two guardians of the shrine, and the two masters of the vestry, and

---

<sup>†</sup> Ducange gives “Norrensis” as an occasional equivalent for “Northmannus.” Does “cista Norensis” then mean “a Norwegian chest”?

six others, the sacristan Hugh, Walter the physician, Augustine, William de Diss, Robert and Richard.

Dormiente ergo conventu, vestiti sunt illi duodecim albis, et extrahentes loculum de feretro portaverunt illum, et ponentes super tabulam juxta antiquum locum feretri, paraverunt se ad disjungendum operculum, quod conjunctum et confixum erat loculo sexdecim clavis ferreis longissimis. Quod cum difficultate fecissent, jussi sunt omnes longius abire, præter duos socios prænominatos.

Eratque loculus ita repletus sancto corpore, et in longitudine et in latitudine, quod vix posset acus interponi inter caput et lignum, vel inter pedes et lignum: et jacebat caput unitum corpori, aliquantum levatum parvo cervicali.

Abbas ergo intuens cominus, invenit post pannum sericum velantem totum corpus, et postea pannum lineum miri candoris; et super caput pannum parvum lineum, et postea alium parvum pannum sericum effabilem, tanquam hoc esset velum alicujus sanctimonialis feminae. Et postea invenerunt corpus involutum lineo panno; et tunc demum patue-

So while the monastery slept, those twelve dressed in white, drew the coffin from the shrine, and bore it and placed it on a table near the old place of the shrine. And they prepared themselves to remove the cover, which was joined and fastened to the coffin with sixteen very long iron nails. And when they had with difficulty done this, all were ordered to stand afar off, save the two associates above mentioned.

Now the coffin was filled with the holy body, and that both in respect of its length and of its breadth, so that it was hardly possible for a needle to be placed between the head and the wood, or between the feet and the wood. And the head lay joined to the body, being a little raised by a small pillow.

And so the abbot looking near, found after this a silken cloth which covered the whole body, and then a linen cloth of wonderful whiteness; and over the head a little linen cloth, and another small and skilfully made silken cloth, as it were the veil of some holy woman. And then they found the body wrapped in a linen cloth, and so at last all the lines of the holy body were clearly

runt omnia lineamenta sancti corporis. traceable.

Hie restitit abbas, dicens se non esse ausum ultra procedere, ut sanctam carnem nudam videret. Accipiens ergo caput inter manus suas, gemendo ait: "Gloriose martyr, sancte Ædmunde, benedicta sit illa hora qua natus fuisti. Gloriose martyr, ne veritas michi in perditionem audaciam meam, quod te tango, peccator et miser: tu scis devotionem et intencionem meam." Et procedens tetigit oculos et nasum valde grossum, et valde eminentem, et postea tetigit pectus et brachia, et sublevans manum sinistram digitos tetigit, et digitos suos posuit inter digitos sanctos. Et procedens invenit pedes rigide erectos tanquam hominis hodie mortui, et digitos pedum tetigit, et tangendo numeravit.

Here the abbot stopped, saying that he dared not go further, and behold the naked body of the saint. Therefore, he held his head between his hands, and said with a groan, "Glorious martyr, holy Edmund, blessed be that hour in the which you were born. Glorious martyr, turn not my daring to my hurt, in that I, who am a sinner and wretched, touch you. You know my devotion and my intention." And then he touched the eyes and nose, the latter being thick and very large, and afterwards touched the breast and arms, and raising the left hand touched the fingers and placed his own fingers between those of the saint. And going further, he found the feet standing upright as though they had been the feet of a man but lately dead, and he touched the toes, and counted them as he touched them.

Datumque est consilium, ut cæteri fratres vocarentur et miracula viderent, et venerunt sex vocati et sex alii fratres cum illis qui se intruserunt sine assensu abbatis, et videbant sanctum corpus; scilicet, Walterus de Sancto Albano, et Hugo infirmarius, et Gilbertus frater prioris, et Ricardus de Hehingham, et Jocellus celerarius, et Tursta-

And then counsel was taken that other brothers should be summoned and behold these miraculous things, and six came upon summons, and six other brothers who forced their way in without the assent of the abbot, and these saw the holy body. Their names were Walter de St. Alban's, Hugh the farmer, Gilbert the prior's brother, Ri-

nus Parvus, qui solus manum apposuit et pedes sancti tetigit et genua. Et, ut esset copia testium, disponente Altissimo, unus ex nostris fratribus Johannes de Dice sedens supra testitudinem<sup>†</sup> ecclesiæ, cum servientibus de vestiario, omnia ista evidenter videbat.

His factis, affigebatur operculum loculo eisdem clavis et totidem, et simili modo, ut prius, cooperto martyre eisdem pannis et eodem ordine, sicut prius inventus fuit. Et postea collocatus est locus in solito loco, et positus est super loculum, juxta angelum, furculus quidam sericus, in quo reposita fuit schedula Anglice scripta, continens quasdam salutationes Ailwini monachi, ut creditur, quæ schedula prius tuit inventa juxta angelum aureum quando locus detegebatur.

chard de Hengham, Jocell the cellarer, and Thurstan the Little; and the last alone put forth his hand and touched the feet and knees of the saint. And, that there might be abundance of witnesses, by the disposition of the Highest, one of our brothers, John de Diss, sat on the roof of the church with the servants of the vestry, and saw all these things plainly.

After these things had been done, the cover was fastened on the coffin with the same nails as before, and with the same number and in the same manner, and the martyr was covered with the same cloths and those in the same order, as he had first been found. And then the coffin was placed in its accustomed place, and on the coffin, near the angel, there was placed a certain silken bag, in which a document, written in English, was put setting forth certain salutations of Aylwin the monk,<sup>142</sup> as it is said, and this document was before found near the golden angel when the coffin was uncovered.

---

<sup>†</sup>Testudinem?

<sup>158</sup> He was chief keeper of the shrine, in the days before the substitution of monks for secular clergy. On the news of the invasion of Sweyn (1010) he removed the relics to London, where they remained for three years. At a subsequent date he became a monk at the monastery of St. Edmund. An account of him is to be found in Hermannus (*Mem.*, I., 35–42), and in Samson's work, *De Miraculis Sancti Aedmundi* (*Mem.*, I., 116–132). Rokewode (pp. 153–4) quotes a passage on Aylwin from Lydgate's metrical life of the saint.

Et iubente abbate, statim scriptum fuit et aliud breve, et in eodem furulo reconditum, sub hac forma verborum: "Anno ab incarnatione Domini m<sup>o</sup> c. nonagesimo octavo, abbas Samson, tractus devotione, corpus sancti Ædmundi vidit et tetigit, nocte proxima post festum sanctæ Katerinæ, his testibus—" et subscripta sunt nomina decem et octo monachorum.

Involuerunt autem fratres totum loculum panno lineo satis apto, et posuerunt desuper pannum sericum pretiosum et novum, quem Hubertus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis eodem anno obtulerat, et quendam pannum lineum duplicatum ad longitudinem loculi posuerunt proximum lapidi, ne loculus vel alveolus ejus posset lædi a lapide. Et postea portati sunt panelli et decenter conjuncti in feretro.

Cum autem veniret conventus ad matutinas cantandas, et ista perciperet, doluerunt omnes qui hæc non viderant, intra se dicentes: "quod male seducti sumus." Cantatis autem horis matutinis, convocavit abbas conventum ante magnum altare, et

And by order of the abbot another little writing was also made, and hidden in the same bag, and the words of this second writing were as follows. "In the year of the incarnation of the Lord one thousand one hundred and ninety eight, abbot Samson, being led by devotion, saw and touched the body of St. Edmund, on the night next after the feast of St. Catherine, in the presence of these witnesses,"—and there were written below the names of the eighteen monks.

Then the brothers wrapped the whole coffin in a sufficiently large linen cloth, and placed above it a valuable new silken cloth, which Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, had sent as an offering in the same year, and they placed a certain double linen cloth of the same length as the coffin next the stone, that neither the coffin nor the wooden platform on which it rested might be injured by the stone. After this the panels were brought up and fitly joined together in the shrine.

And when the monastery came to chant matins, and saw these things, all who had not seen the body were grieved, and said among themselves, "We have been grossly deceived." But when the hours of matins had been chanted, the abbot called the mona-



ostendens eis breviter rem gestam, allegabat quod non debuit nec potuit omnes vocare ad talia. Quibus auditis, cum lacrimis “Te Deum laudamus” cantavimus, et ad campanas in choro resonandas properavimus.

stery before the high altar, and having briefly explained to them that which had been done, declared that it was neither right nor possible to summon them all to such events. And on hearing this, we sang, “Te Deum laudamus” with tears, and hastened to ring the bells in the choir.

Quarto die sequente, custodes feretri, et custodem sancti Botulfi, deposuit abbas; novos substituens et leges eis proponens, ut sanctuaria honestius et diligentius custodirent. Magnumque altare, quod prius concavum erat, ubi sæpius quædam indecenter reponebantur, et spatium illud quod erat inter feretrum et altare, solidari fecit lapide et cemento, ne aliquid ignis periculum fieri possit per negligentiam custodum, sicut prius, juxta dictum sapientis dicentis:

“Felix, quem faciunt  
aliena pericula cau-  
tum.”†

Four days later the abbot deposed the guardians of the shrine, and the guardian of the shrine of St. Botolph,<sup>143</sup> and he appointed new guardians for whom he laid down rules, that they might take more honest and diligent care of the sanctuaries. And the great altar, up to this time, was concave, and on it things were often placed with little reverence. This space and that which was between the shrine and the altar, he caused to be filled up with stone and cement, that there might be no danger of fire possible for the negligence of the guardians, as had been the case before, according to that which a wise man says, Happy is he whom the perils of others make cautious.

<sup>159</sup>The relics of St. Botolph, “the kindly priest,” were translated, together with other relics, at the time of the translation of the body of St. Edmund by abbot Baldwin in 1095. (Hermannus, *Mem.* I., 88.) Nothing authentic is really known of him, but the supposed date of his death is 655.

† Erasmus, in the *Adagia*, gives this line as a “vulgo jactatus versus.”

*How king John visited the  
abbey soon after his  
accession.  
A.D. 1199.*

Cum abbas  
emisset favo-  
rem et gratiam  
regis Ricardi  
donis et denariis, ita quod omnia  
negotia sua crederet posse perficere  
pro suo desiderio, mortuus est rex  
Ricardus, et abbas perdidit opera<sup>†</sup> et  
impensam. Rex autem Johannes post  
coronationem suam, omissis omnibus  
aliis negotiis suis, statim venit ad sanc-  
tum Ædmundum voto et devotione  
tractus. Nos vero credebamus quod  
oblaturus esset aliquid magnum; pan-  
num quidem sericum unum obtulit,  
quem servientes ejus a nostro sacrista  
mutuo acceperant, nec adhuc pretium  
reddiderunt.

Hospitium vero sancti Ædmundi su-  
scepit, magnis celebratum expensis, et  
recedens nichil omnino honoris vel be-  
neficii sancto contulit, præter xiiij. ster-  
lingos, quos ad missam suam obtulit,  
die qua recessit a nobis.

When the abbot had purchased the  
favour and grace of king Richard with  
gifts and money, so that he believed  
that he could carry through all his  
affairs according to his desire, king  
Richard died, and the abbot lost his  
labour and expenditure. But king Jo-  
hn after his coronation, laying aside  
all his other work, at once came to St.  
Edmund's,<sup>144</sup> being led to do so by his  
vow and devotion. And we thought  
that he would have made some great  
offering, but he offered a silken cloth,  
which his servants borrowed from our  
sacristan and have not yet paid for.

He enjoyed the hospitality of St. Ed-  
mund, which involved great expenses,  
and when he left he gave nothing at all  
honourable or beneficial to the saint,  
except thirteen pence sterling, which  
he paid for a mass for himself, on the  
day on which he departed from us.

---

<sup>†</sup>operam?

<sup>160</sup> The visit of John to St. Edmund's is mentioned by Diceto (II., 166). Rokewode (p. 154) notes a second visit of John, when he acted with greater generosity, making an annual grant of ten marks. Even on this occasion, however, the gift was only in return for the giving back of a previous gift which he had made of a valuable ring, and which was to be returned to him for his life.

*Concerning the dispute  
between the porter and the  
monks.*

Eo tempore conquesti sunt quidam obediuntarii nostri, dicentes in capitulo, Radulfum janitorem, servientem nostrum, stare in causis et querelis contra eos in damnum ecclesiæ et in præjudicium conventus. Præceptumque fuit a priore, de communi assensu, ut castigaretur secundum consuetudinem nostram, qua solent castigari servientes nostri, scilicet per subtractionem stipendiorum suorum.

Præceptum est ergo, ut celerarius subtraheret ei, non conredium quod de jure pertinebat ad officium suum, secundum attestationem cartæ suæ, sed quasdam adjectiones et gratias quas celerarii et subcelerarii ei fecerant, inconsulto conventu. Radulfus vero prædictus, assumtis secum quibusdam de mensa abbatis, conquestus est abbati redeunti de Lundoniis, quod prior et conventus dissaisiaverant eum de conredio suo, quo saisiatus fuit quando abbas venit primo ad abbatiam. Dixerunt etiam abbati, quod hoc factum fuit sine eo, et ad dedecus suum, et irrationabiliter, eo inconsulto et causa incognita.

At that time some of our officials complained and said in the chapter that Ralph the porter, our servant, appeared in cases and suits against them to the injury of the church and to the prejudice of the monastery. The prior commanded, with the common assent of the monastery, that he should be punished according to our custom by which our servants were wont to be punished, that is by the confiscation of their incomes.

Therefore orders were given that the cellarer should withdraw from him, not the salary which of right pertained to his office, according to the witness of his charter, but certain additions and grants which the cellarer and subcellarer had made to him, without the assent of the monastery. But the same Ralph, taking with him certain of those of the table of the abbot, complained to the abbot on his return from London, that the prior and the monastery had deprived him of his salary, of which he was possessed when the abbot first came into the abbacy. And they told the abbot that this was done without him, and to his shame, and unreasonably, when he was not consulted and the case was not tried.

Abbas vero credidit, et aliter quam decebat, vel solebat, motus est, Radulfum constanter excusans et innocentem esse protestans, veniensque in capitulum, et inde conquerens, dixit tale quid factum esse in præiudicio, eo inconsulto. Responsumque est ab uno, cæteris omnibus conclamantibus, hoc esse factum per priorem, et assensum totius capituli.

Abbas vero inde confusus, et dicens, “filios enutrivit et exaltavi, ipsi vero spreverunt me,” nichil dissimulans, sicut deceret propter pacem multitudinis, sed potius potentiam suam ostendens, nec vinci se sustinens, publice præcepit celerario, ut omnia sublata Radulfo plene et integre redderet, nec biberet aliquid nisi aquam, donec omnia redderet.

Jocellus vero celerarius, hoc audiens, elegit magis illa die bibere aquam, quam reddere conredium Radulfo contra voluntatem conventus; quod cum abbas scivisset, in crastino prohibuit celerario et esum et potum donec

Then the abbot believed this, and was moved more than was right or usual with him, and constantly excusing Ralph and protesting that he was innocent, came into the chapter. And making complaint on this matter, he said that what was done, was done to his prejudice, since he was not consulted. Then one answered, all the rest supporting him, that this had been done by the prior and with the assent of the whole chapter.

Thereupon the abbot was confused, and said, “I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me.”<sup>145</sup> And passing over nothing, as he should have done for the peace of the multitude, but rather showing his power, and not allowing himself to be overcome, he publicly commanded the cellarer that he should fully and completely restore all things which had been taken away to the said Ralph, and that he should drink nothing but water until he had restored all things.

But when Jocell the cellarer heard this, he chose rather to drink water on that day, than to return Ralph his salary contrary to the will of the monastery. And when the abbot learnt this, on the morrow he forbade the cellarer to eat

---

<sup>145</sup> Isai. i., 2.

omnia redderet. His dictis, statim recessit abbas de villa, et absentavit se octo diebus.

*How disturbances arose in the monastery, and of the end to which they came.*

Eo die, quo recesserat abbas, surrexit celarius in capitulo, et præceptum abbatis ostendens, tenensque claves suas in manu, dixit, se malle deponi de bailia sua, quam aliquid facere contra conventum. Factusque est tumultus magnus in conventu, qualem nunquam prius vidi; dixeruntque præceptum abbatis non esse tenendum. Seniores vero et sapientiores de conventu, discrete tacentes, tandem pronuntiaverunt obediendum esse abbati in omnibus, nisi in manifestis contra Deum, et assensum præbuerunt, ut hanc turpitudinem ad tempus sustineremus propter bonum pacis, ne deterius contingeret.

Cumque prior incepisset cantare “Verba mea” pro defunctis, sicut consuetudo est, restiterunt novitii et cum eis fere media pars conventus, et sublimi voce reclamaverunt et contradixerunt. Et prævaluit tamen senior pars conventus, licet pauci essent numero in respectu cæteræ multitudinis.

or drink until he had made complete restitution. And having spoken thus, the abbot at once left the town, and absented himself for eight days.

On the day of the abbot's departure, the cellarer arose in the chapter, and showing the command of the abbot, and holding his keys in his hand, said that he would rather be deposed from his office than do anything against the monastery. And there arose a great disturbance in the monastery, such as I never saw before; and they said that the command of the abbot ought not to be observed. But the older and wiser men of the monastery, who wisely kept silence, at last declared that obedience was due to the abbot in all things, unless they were clearly against God, and they agreed in declaring that we must bear with this evil doing for a time and for the sake of peace, lest worst should befall us.

And when the prior had begun to chant the Verba Mea<sup>146</sup> for the dead, as was the custom, the novices resisted, and with them almost half the monastery, and with a loud voice they disputed and opposed him. Yet the older half of the monastery prevailed, though they were few in number as

---

<sup>146</sup>Ps. v., 1.

compared with the multitude on the other side.

Abbas vero absens per internuntios quosdam minis terruit, quosdam blanditiis attraxit, et majores de conventu, tanquam timerent tunicæ suæ, a consilio universitatis separavit, ut adimpleretur illud evangelium, “omne regnum in se divisum desolabitur.” Et dixit abbas, se nequaquam venturum inter nos propter conspirationes et iuramenta quæ, ut aiebat, feceramus in eum, cniplulis nostris occidendum.

Now the abbot, being absent, frightened some by his threatening messages, and won over some with his graciousness, and he caused the chief men to abandon the views of the whole body, as though they feared his garments. And so the gospel was fulfilled, “Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation.”<sup>147</sup> And the abbot said that he would in nowise come among us, owing to our conspiracies and the oaths which, as he said, we had taken against him, that we would kill him with our knives.

Rediens ergo domum sedensque in talamo suo, uni ex fratribus nostris, qui ei magis suspectus erat, mandavit ut ad eum veniret, et quia ad eum venire noluit, timens capi et ligari, excommunicatus est, et postea tota die compeditus, residens usque mane in domo infirmorum. Tres vero alios innodavit abbas leviori sententia, ut cæteri timerent.

Then he returned home and sat in his chamber. And he sent word to one of our brothers, who was greatly suspected by him, that he should come to him, and because he would not come, as fearing that he would be taken and bound, he was excommunicated, and for a whole day afterwards he was placed in bonds and remained until morning in the infirmary. The abbot bound three others with a smaller sentence, that the rest might fear.

In crastino initum est consilium, ut mandaretur abbas, et humiliaremur coram eo, verbo et gestu, quo animus

Next day counsel was taken to summon the abbot and to humble ourselves before him in word and gesture,

---

<sup>163</sup> Matt. xii., 25.

eius mitigari posset; factumque est ita. Ipse vero satis humiliter respondens, semper tamen justitiam suam allegans, et in nos culpam retorquens, cum vidit nos velle vinci, ipse victus est. Et perfusus lacrimis iuravit se nunquam doluisse aliqua de causa, sicut in hoc casu, tum propter se, tum propter nos, et maxime propter notam infamiæ, quæ jam publicaverat dissensionem nostram, dicendo monachos sancti Æmundi velle interficere suum abbatem.

whereby his mind might be calmed, and so it was done. Then he answered with some humility, but always justifying himself and blaming us, and when he saw that we were ready to be conquered, he was overcome. And with many tears, he swore that he had never been so grieved for anything as for this matter, both for his own sake and for ours, and especially for the evil report, which had already spread abroad our dissension, and which said that the monks of St. Edmund wished to slay their abbot.

Cumque narrasset abbas, qualiter absentasset se ex industria, donec ira sua deferbuisset, repetens dictum philosophi, "In te vindicassem nisi iratus fuisset,"<sup>†</sup> lacrimans surrexit, et omnes et singulos recepit in osculo pacis. Ploravit ille; ploravimus et nos. Absoluti sunt illico fratres qui excommunicati fuerant, et sic "cessavit tempestas, et facta est tranquillitas magna."

Then when the abbot had also told how he absented himself of intent until his anger should have cooled, and repeated the word of the philosopher, I would not have taken vengeance on you, unless I had been angry, he arose with tears and received all and every one of us with the kiss of peace. He wept, and we wept with him. Forthwith the excommunicated brothers were absolved, and thus the storm ceased and there was a great calm.<sup>148</sup>

Occulte tamen præcepit abbas, ut solitum conredium integre daretur Radulfo janitori, sicut prius; quam rem dissimulavimus, tandem comperien-

Yet the abbot secretly ordered that the accustomed salary should be given to Ralph the porter as before and in full. This we passed over, at last realising

<sup>†</sup> Cic. Tusc. iv. 36. Seneca, *De Ira*, i. 15: "Inde est quod Socrates servo ait, *Cæderem te nisi irascerer*." Lactantius (see Lipsius' note on the passage in Seneca) ascribes the saying to Archytas of Tarentum.

<sup>164</sup> Mark iv., 39.

tes, quod non est dominus qui dominari non velit, et periculosa est pugna quæ contra fortiorem initur et contra potentiolem arripitur.

*Concerning the knights of  
Saint Edmund and their  
fiefs.*

*A.D. 1200.*

bus sancti Ædmundi et de feudis eorum, unde antecessores eorum fuerunt feffati.

Albericus de Ver tenet quinque milites et dimidium; scilicet, in Lodenes et in Brom, unum militem; in Mendham et Prestun, j. militem; in Rede, j. militem; et in Cokefeld, dimidium; et in Livermere, duos milites.

Willielmus de Hastings tenet v. milites; scilicet, in Lidgate et in Blunham et in Herlinghe, tres milites; et in Tibebeham et in Gersinghe, duos.

Comes Rogerus tenet tres milites, in Nortune et Brisingeham.

Robertus filius Rogeri tenet j. mil. in Marlesford.

Allexander de Kirkebi tenet j. mil. in Kirkebi.

that there is no lord who does not wish to rule, and that it is a dangerous battle to strive against the stronger and to undertake a contest with the more powerful.

In the year of grace one thousand and two hundred, an account of the knights of St. Edmund and of their fiefs was made, of which their ancestors had keen possessed.

Alberic de Vere holds five knights and half a knight; that is, in Loddon, and in Brome, one knight; in Mendham and Preston, one knight; in Rede, one knight; and in Cokefield, half a knight; and in Livermere, two knights.

William de Hastings holds five knights; namely, in Lidgate and in Blunham and in Harling the fees of three knights, and in Tibenham and Gissing, two.

Earl Roger holds three knights in Nortune and Brisingeham.

Robert FitzRoger holds the fee of one knight in Marlesford.

Alexander de Kirkby holds the fee of one knight in Kirkby.



Rogerus de Hou tenet duos milites, in Michlesfela et in Topescroft.	Roger de Eu holds the fees of two knights in Mickfield and in Topescroft.
Arnaldus de Charneles et parcenarii eius j. militem, in Acle et in Quidenham, et in Turstune et Tutestun.	Arnald de Charneles and his partners, one knight in Oakley and in Quiddenham, and in Thurston and Stuston.
Oseburtus de Wachesham j. militem, in Marlingeford et in Wrtham.	Osbert de Wachesham, one knight in Marlingford and Wortham.
Willielmus de Totestoches j. militem, in Randestune.	William de Tostock, one knight in Randeston.
Gilbertus filius Radulfi tres milites; scilicet, in Teveltham et in Hepeword, j. militem; in Reidun et in Gersinge, j. militem; et in Saxham, j. militem.	Gilbert FitzRalph, three knights; namely, in Thelnetham and Hepworth one knight; in Reydon, in Blithing, and in Gissing one knight, and in Saxham one knight.
Radulfus de Bucheham dimidium militem, in antiquum Bucheham.	Radulf de Bukenham, half a knight in Old Bukenham.
Willielmus de Berdewella duos milites, in Berningham, et in Berdewelle, et in Hunterestune, et in Stantun.	William de Berdewell, two knights in Barningham, and in Berdewell, and in Hunston, and in Stanton.
Robertas de Langetot tenet tres milites, in Stowe, et in Asfeld, et in Trostune, et in parvo Waltham in Estsexia.	Robert de Langetot holds three knights, in Stowlangtoft and in Ashfield, in Troston, and in Little Waltham in Essex.
Adam de Kokefeld duos milites; scilicet, in Lavtnei et in Honus, j. militem, et Leleseia.	Adam de Cokefield, two knights, namely, in Lavenham and in Onehouse one knight, and in Lilesey.
Robertus filius Walteri j. militem, in magno Facheham, et in Sapestun.	Robert FitzWalter, one knight in Great Fakenham and in Sapeston.

Will. Blundus j. militem, in Torp.	William Blund, one knight in Thorp.
Gilbertus Peccatum duos milites; scilicet, in Waude et in Geddinge, j. mil.; in Falesham, et Eustuna, et in Grotena, j. militem.	Gilbert de Peche, two knights, namely in Waude and in Gedding one knight, and in Falsham and Euston and Groton one knight.
Gilbertus de sancto Claro duos milites, in Bradefelda et in Watlesfelda.	Gilbert de St. Clare, two knights in Bradfield and Wattisfield.
Galfridus de Welfetham et Gilbertus de Manetuna j. mil., in Weletham et in Manetuna.	Geoffrey de Whelnetham and Gilbert de Manston, one knight in Whelnetham and in Manston.
Hubertus de Hanesti dimidium militem, in Brighingeham.	Hubert de Ansty, half a knight in Bridginghoe.
Gervasius de Roinghe j. mil., in Clipeleie et in Roinghe.	Gervase de Rothing, one knight in Chiple and in Rothing.
Robertus de Halstede j. militem in Halsted, et dimidium in Broclei.	Robert de Halstede, one knight in Halstede and half a knight in Brockley.
Rejnaldus de Brocleie unum militem, in Broclei.	Reginald de Brockley, one knight in Brockley.
Simon de Pateshala dimidium militem, in Whatefeld.	Simon de Patteshall, half a knight in Whatefield.
Petrus filius Alani dimidium militem, in Broclei.	Peter FitzAlan, half a knight in Brockley.
Radulfus de Presseni dimidium militem, in Stanesfeld.	Ralph de Pressenei, half a knight in Stanningfield.
Ricardus de Ikeworda duos milites, in Ikeworda et in Wanford.	Richard de Ickworth, two knights in Ickworth and in Wangford.

Robertus de Horning dimidium mil., in Horning.	Robert de Horning, half a knight in Horningsherth.
Walterus de Saxham j. militem, in Asfelde et in Saxham.	Walter de Saxham, one knight in Ash- field and Saxham.
Willielmus de Wridewell dimidium militem, in Whelfetham.	William de Wordwell, half a knight in Whelnetham.
Normannus de Risebi dimidium mili- tem, in Risebi.	Norman de Risby, half a knight in Ri- sby.
Petrus de Liveremere et Alanus de Fle- metun j. militem, in Liveremere et in Ametuna.	Peter de Livermere and Alan de Fle- metun, one knight in Livermere and Ampton.
Rogerus de Muriaus j. militem, in Torp.	Roger de Muriaux, one knight in Thorp.
Hugo de Illeghe, in Illeghe, et in Pre- stuna, et in Bradefeld, ij. milites.	Hugh de Eleigh, two knights in Eleigh and Preston and Bradfield.
Stephanus de Brochedis unum quater, in Brochedis.	Stephen de Brockdish, a fourth of one knight in Brockdish.
Adam de Berningham j. quater, in Ber- ningham.	Adam de Barningham, a fourth of one knight in Barningham.
Willielmus de Wridewell, in parvo Li- veremere, et in Wridewell, j. quater.	William de Wordwell, a fourth of one knight in Livermere and Wordwell.
<i>Concerning the manors of Geoffrey Ruffus, and the cellar.</i>	Galfridus Ruf- fus monachus noster, licet nimis secula- riter se gereret, utilis fuit nobis in
	Geoffrey Ruffus, our monk, though he lived in rather too secular a manner, was of use to us in the custody of four manors, Barton, Pakenham, Rougham, and Bradfield, where there had often

custodia <sup>iii</sup><sup>or</sup> maneriorum, Bertuna, Pakeham, Rucham, Bradefeld, ubi prius defectus sæpe solebat esse de firmis. Audiens abbas infamiam continentiae ejus, diu dissimulavit, forte quia Galfridus utilis videbatur universitati. Tandem, cognita veritate, subito fecit capi cistas ejus, positas in vestiario, et omnia instauramenta maneriorum districte custodiri, et eundem Galfridum posuit in claustrum. Inventa fuit vis magna auri et argenti, ad valentiam cc. marcarum, quod totum dixit abbas esse apponendum ad fabricandum frontem feretri sancti Ædmundi.

Instante festo sancti Michaelis, decretum est in capitulo, ut duo fratres, non unus solus, succederent ad custodiendum maneria, quorum unus erat R. de Hehingham, qui publice promisit se velle et se bene posse custodire simul maneria et cellariam, et assensum præbuit abbas, sed conventu invito; et depositus est Jocellus de cellaria, qui bene et provide instauraverat officium suum, et duobus annis rexerat cellariam, sine debito, contra consuetudinem aliorum celerariorum, et factus est subcelerarius. In fine autem anni, reddens R. celerarius rationem de receptis et expensis, protestatus est se accepisse lx. marcas de instauramentis maneriorum ad supplendum defec-

in former times been a deficiency in rent. But when the abbot heard ill reports of his morals, for a long while he concealed the matter, perchance because Geoffrey was clearly useful to the whole community. At last, when the truth was known, he suddenly caused his chests to be taken and placed in the vestry, and all the stock of the manors to be strictly guarded, and placed the said Geoffrey in the cloister. There was found a great store of gold and silver to the value of two hundred marks, and all of this the abbot decreed should be devoted to the building of the front of the shrine of St. Edmund.

And when Michaelmas came it was decided in the chapter that two brothers, and not one alone, should succeed to the custody of the manors. Of these one was Roger de Hengham, who publicly promised that he would as well as he could take charge both of the manors and the cellar, and the abbot assented to this, though the monastery was unwilling. Jocell, the cellarer, was then deposed. He had well and providently managed his office, and had controlled the cellar for two years, without contracting debt, contrary to the custom of the other cellarers. And he was made subcellarer. But at the end of the year Roger rendered an account of his receipts and expenses, and de-

tum celerarii.

Inito ergo consilio, substitutus est prædictus Jocellus ad cellariam, et concessa sunt ei Mildenhala et Chebenhala et Sutwalda, et commissa sunt cætera maneria Rogero et Albino, et divisa sunt a cellaria, ne vel maneria distruerentur per cellariam, vel cellaria distrueretur per maneria.

*Concerning that which  
occurred on the death of  
Adam de Cokefield.*

Mortuo Adam de Cokefeld, potuit abbas accepisse ccc. marcas pro warda unicæ filiæ ejusdem Adæ; sed quia avus puellæ tulerat eam furtim, nec abbas potuit habere saisinam puellæ, nisi per auxilium archiepiscopi, abbas concessit wardam illam H. archiepiscopo Cantuariensi, acceptis c. libris.

Archiepiscopus, acceptis quingentis marcis, concessit Thomæ de Burgo, fratri camerarii Regis, wardam illam, et data fuit ei puella cum jure suo per manum abbatis. Thomas ergo statim petiit saisinam trium maneriorum quæ in manu nostra habuimus post

clared that he had received sixty marks from the stock of the manors to supplement the deficit of the cellarer.

Therefore, when counsel had been taken, the said Jocell was replaced at the cellar, and Mildenhall, and Chebenhall, and Southwold, and other manors were entrusted to Roger and Albinus, and were separated from the cellar, that neither the manors might be destroyed for the sake of the cellar, nor the cellar destroyed for the sake of the manors.

When Adam de Cokefield was dead,<sup>149</sup> the abbot could have taken three hundred marks for the wardship of the only daughter of Adam; but as the grandfather of the maid had secretly removed her, and the abbot could not obtain possession of her person, save with the held of the archbishop, he granted that wardship to Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, on receipt of a hundred pounds.

The archbishop, when he had received five hundred marks, granted that wardship to Thomas de Burgh, brother of the chamberlain of the king, and the maiden was given to him with her right by the hand of the abbot. Thomas then at once sought seisin

<sup>149</sup>Cp. note to p. 153.

mortem Adæ; Kokefeld, Semere, et Grotona; credentes, quod omnia possemus retinere in dominico nostro, vel saltem duo, Semere et Grotona; tum quia Robertus de Cokefeld, in extremis agens, dixerat publice, se nichil in illis ij. maneriis jure hæreditario posse vindicare, tum quia Adam filius ejus in plena curia reassignaverat nobis illa duo maneria, et cartam suam inde fecit, qua continetur, quod ille tenet ilia ij. maneria per gratiam conventus, solummodo in vita sua.

Thomas ergo, quærens inde breve de recognitione, fecit summoneri milites, ut venirent apud Theochesberie, coram Rege juraturi. Carta nostra lecta in publico nullam vim habuit, quia tota curia erat contra nos. Juramento facto, dixerunt milites se nescire de cartis nostris, nec de privatis conventionibus; sed se credere dixerunt, quod Adam et pater ejus et avus a centum annis retro tenuerant maneria in feudum firmum, unusquisque post alium, diebus quibus fuerunt vivi et mortui; et sic dissaisiati sumus per judicium curiæ post multos labores et multas expensas factas, salvis tamen antiquis firmis annuatim reddendis.

of three manors, which had been in our hand after the death of Adam, Cokefield, Semere, and Groton. We thought that we could retain them all in our demesne, or at least two of them,—Semere and Groton, both because Robert de Cokefield on his deathbed had publicly declared that he claimed no hereditary right in those two manors, and because his son Adam in full court had acknowledged our right to those two manors, and had given his charter on the point, wherein it was laid down that he held those two manors, by the grace of the monastery, for his life only.

When Thomas, then, sought a writ of recognition on the matter, he caused the knights to be summoned to come to make oath before the king at Tewkesbury. Our charters read in public had no weight, for the whole court was against us. And when oath had been made, the knights said that they knew nothing of our charters, or of private agreements; but they said that they believed that Adam and his father and grandfather for a hundred years back had held the manors in fee-farm, and each after the other, on the days when they were alive and dead. So we were disseised by the judgment of the court after undergoing many labours and many expenses, though the old annual

payments of rent were preserved.

*How the abbot received the  
abbot of Cluny.  
A.D. 1200.*

Videbatur dominus abbas “decipi quadam specie recti,”<sup>†</sup> quia scilicet scriptura dicit, “honorem meum alteri non dabo.” Abbat Cluniacensi venienti ad nos, et a nobis sicut decuit suscepto, cedere noluit abbas noster, nec in capitulo, nec ad processionem factam die dominico, quin sederet et staret medius inter abbatem Cluniacensem et abbatem Certesiensem; unde diversi diversa sentiebant et multi multa locuti sunt.

*How Robert the prior died,  
and of the discussion as to  
his successor.*

Languescente Roberto priore et adhuc vivente, dictæ sunt multæ sententiæ de substituendo priore. Narravit ergo aliquis, quod dominus abbas, sedens in choro et omnes fratres intuens, a primo usque ad ultimum, non invenit aliquem, super quem requiesceret spiritus<sup>‡</sup> ejus ad faciendum priorem, nisi Herebertum capellanum ejus. His et consimilibus voluntas domini abbatis pluribus clar-

The lord abbot seemed to be deceived by some appearance of right, because the scripture truly says, I will not give my glory to another.<sup>150</sup> For when abbot of Cluny<sup>151</sup> came to us, and was received by us as was fitting, our abbot would not give place to him, either in the chapter or in the procession which took place on the Sunday, but sat and stood between the abbot of Cluny and the abbot of Chertsey. And upon this there were different opinions, and many said many things.

While Robert the prior was ill and still lived, there was much talk as to the appointment of a new prior. Then one said that the lord abbot, sitting in the choir and beholding all the brothers, from the first to the last, had not found anyone on whom his spirit might rest to make him prior, save Heribert his chaplain. By these and other like things the will of the abbot was made clear to many. And on hearing this, another answered that this was incredible; he asserted that the abbot,

<sup>†</sup> Hor. de Art. Poet. 25.

<sup>166</sup> Isai. xlii, 8.

<sup>167</sup> An account of the visit of the abbot of Cluny is to be found in Diceto (II., 173). The abbot was Hugh, who had been abbot of Reading. Rokewode (p. 155) mentions that this case was quoted to prove that the English Benedictine abbots owed no allegiance to Cluny.

<sup>‡</sup> Num. xi. 26.

uit. Audiens hæc aliquis respondit, hoc esse incredibile; asserens quod abbas, homo industrius et sapiens, nunquam tali homini, et juveni et fere imberbi novicio xij. annorum, qui non nisi iiiij<sup>or</sup> annis claustralis fuit, nec probatus in regimine animarum, nec in scientiæ doctrina,—“tali,” inquit, “nunquam dabit prioratum.”

Mortuo autem priore, morabatur abbas apud Londonias; et dixit quidam: “Nondum transiit mensis quod abbas fecit Herebertum capellanum subsacristam, et quando bailiam illam ei commisit in capella sancti Nigasii, promittendo, quod, si posset aliquo modo eum priorem facere, curam omnimodam ad hoc adhiberet.” Audiens hoc aliquis, volens placere abbati et priori futuro, plures sollicitavit in precibus, senes cum junioribus, ut, data opportunitate, Herebertum nominarent, saltem cum aliquibus aliis, ad prioratum; et juravit quod per hoc possent placere abbati, quia talis fuit voluntas ejus.

Erant autem multi, tam de senioribus quam de junioribus, qui eundem Herebertum hominem amabilem et affabilem asserebant, et dignum magno honore. Erant et alii, pauci quidem numero, sed consilio laudabi-

a man diligent and provident, would never give the office of prior to such a man, who was a youth and almost a beardless novice twelve years before, who had only been a cloistered monk for four years, and who was not proved in the rule of souls.

Then when the prior was dead, the abbot was in London, and one said, “A month has not yet passed since the abbot made Heribert chaplain and subsacristan, and when he gave that post to him in the chapel of St. Nicasius, he did so with a promise that if it were in any way possible to make him prior, he would devote all his care to doing so.” Another heard this, and wishing to please the abbot and him who was to be prior, made request to many, both old and young, that when opportunity was given they would nominate Heribert, at least in conjunction with others, for the office of prior. And he swore that in this way they would please the abbot, for such was his will.

And there were, indeed, many both among the older and among the younger men, who asserted that the same Heribert was an amiable and affable man, and worthy of great honour. And there were others also, few indeed in



liores et de saniore parte conventus, qui magistrum Hermerum supprior, hominem maturum, literatum et eloquentem, in animarum regimine peritum et expertum, qui tunc temporis xiiij. annis claustrum disciplinate rexerat, supprior probatus, et notus,—hunc, inquam, volebant præferre ad prioratum, juxta illud sapientis, “experto crede magistro.” Sed latenter grunniebat multitudo in contrarium; dicens illum esse hominem iracundum, impatientem, inquietum, turbulentum et anxium, litigiosum et turbatorem pacis, illudentes ei et dicentes quia “sapientia viri in ejus patientia dignoscitur.”†

Item dixit aliquis: “Hoc unum, tanquam scandalum, valde timendum est, ne supprior‡ removeatur, clerici literati habitum religionis de cetero dedignentur suscipere penes nos, si forte contingat aliquam statuam mutam erigi, et truncum ligneum præferri in tali conventu;” et adjecit idem frater, dicens quod talis deberet esse prior nostri conventus, ut, si quid majoris oriretur quæstionis de ecclesiasticis vel sæcularibus negotiis, abbate absente,

number, but more praised in counsel and from the wiser section of the monastery, who wished for master Hermer, the subprior, a mature man, learned and eloquent, skilled and experienced in the rule of souls, who had then ruled the cloister with success for fourteen years, an approved subprior and one known. They wished, I say, that he might be preferred to the post of prior, according to the word of wisdom, Trust an experienced master. But the multitude secretly murmured to the contrary, saying that he was a man of ill temper, impatient, restless, turbulent, nervous, litigious, a disturber of the peace. And they mocked him, saying that “the wisdom of a man appears in his patience.”

One also said, “There is this one thing which, as it is a scandal, as it a scandal, must be greatly feared, that the sub-prior being removed, learned clerks may not condescend to receive the garb of religion among us, if perchance it happen that some dumb idol be raised up, and a wooden log preferred in so great a monastery.” And the same brother added that such a man should be prior of our monastery that, if any matter connected with some great question of ecclesiastical or secular busi-

---

† Prov. xix. 11.

‡ si excidisse videtur ante *supprior*.

ad priorem quasi ad maiorem et discretiorem posset referri.

Hæc et consimilia audiens, quidam fratrum ait: “Quid est quod verba tot et talia multiplicatis? Cum abbas domum venerit, voluntatem suam inde faciet: forte quæret consilium singulorum et sigillatim et cum magna solemnitate; sed in fine operis sui, per allegationes et per rationes verisimiles et circumlocutiones verborum, tandem descendet ad voluntatem suam implendam; et sicut ipse præcogitavit, futurum est negotium.”

*How Heribert was elected prior.*

multa proposuit et satis eloquenter, qualis deberet esse prior substituendus; et respondit Johannes tertius prior, coram omnibus, suppriorem dignum esse et idoneum. Sed statim reclamavit multitudo, dicens: “Homo pacis, homo pacis detur nobis.” Responderunt duo ex nobis tantæ multitudini, dicentes talem esse substituendum, qui novit regere animas, et discernere “inter lepram et lepram,”

ness arose, while the abbot was absent, it might be referred to the prior as to one who was the highest and most discreet member.

When he heard these and other like sayings, one of the brothers said, “Why is it that you multiply so many and such words? When the abbot shall come home, he will do what he wills on this matter. Perchance he will seek counsel from all of us and that privately and with much solemnity; but eventually, by arguments and plausible reasonings and twisting words, he will at last reach the fulfilment of his will. And as he has beforehand decided, so will the matter go.”

Reverso ergo abbate, in capitulo sedente,

Then the abbot returned and as he sat in the chapter, he put forward many things with sufficient eloquence as to the type of man who ought to be made prior. And John the third prior answered, in the presence of all, that the supprior was worthy, and a suitable person. But at once the multitude cried out, saying, “Give us a man of peace, a man of peace.” And two of us answered so great a multitude, and said that such a man ought to be appointed as knew how to rule souls, and to discern between leprosy and leprosy;<sup>152</sup> and this speech was very displeasing sin-

---

<sup>168</sup> Deut. xvii., 8.

quod verbum valde displicebat, quia videbatur fovere partem supprioris.

Abbas autem tumultum audiens, dixit se velle, post capitulum, consilium singulorum audire, ut sic consulte procederet in negotio, et in crastino, secundum sese<sup>†</sup> esse operaturum. Interim dixit aliquis, quod abbas talem sollemnitatem faceret, ut supprior removeretur caute a prioratu; tanquam hoc fieret per consilium conventus, et non per voluntatem abbatis, et ipse abbas haberetur excusatus; et hac arte obstrueretur os loquentium iniqua.<sup>‡</sup>

In crastino, sedente abbate in capitulo, lacrimatus est valde: dicens, se totam noctem duxisse insomnem præ anxietate et timore, si aliquem nominaret qui Deo non placeret; iuravitque in periculo animæ suæ, se nominaturum quatuor ex nobis, qui secundum opinionem suam magis essent utiles et idonei, ut unum ex illis *iiij*<sup>or</sup> eligere-mus. Nominavit ergo abbas in primis sacristam, de quo constabat ei quod impotens et insufficiens erat, sicut ipse sacrista testatus est cum iuramen-

ce it seemed to favour the party of the subprior.

But the abbot, hearing this tumult, said that he would, after chapter, hear the advice of all men, that so he might proceed wisely in the matter, and on the morrow would settle the affair as he would. And meanwhile one said that the abbot was proceeding with this ceremony that he might cautiously prevent the subprior from obtaining the office of prior, but as if this had been done by the advice of the monastery, and not by the will of the abbot, and that the abbot himself might be held as excused. By this art the mouth of them that speak lies should be stopped.

When the morrow came, the abbot sat in the chapter and wept bitterly. And he said that he had not slept all that night, owing to his anxiety and fear lest he might nominate someone who should not be pleasing to God; and he swore on the peril of his soul that he would nominate four of us, who according to his opinion were the most fitted and suitable, that we might choose one of the four. Then the abbot named first the sacristan, of whom he knew well that he was a weak and incompe-

---

<sup>†</sup>*res se?* Roke. Sed *secundum sese* potest significare *secundum voluntatem suam*, scilicet consilio prius habito cum aliis.

<sup>‡</sup>Ps. lxii. 12.

to. Statim, coram omnibus, nominavit etiam Johannem tertium priorem, suum consanguineum, et Mauricium capellanum suum et Herebertum prænominatum, omnes quidem juvenes, quasi xl. annorum vel infra, et omnes mediocris scientiæ, et ad regimen animarum potius docendi quam docit, dociles tamen.

Hos tres abbas nominavit et prætulit, postposito suppriori, et postpositis aliis pluribus senioribus, prioribus, maturioribus, literatis, et antiquitus magistris scholarum, et omnibus aliis. Morabatur autem abbas in loquendo, et commendando personam Johannis in multis, sed tamen allegando in contrarium, dicens, quod parentum multitudo hujus provinciæ collo ejus incumberet, si prior esset.

Et etiam cum vellet abbas (possetque) idem allegare de Mauricio, ut sic artificiose perveniret ad faciendam mentionem de Hereberto, interim interruptus est sermo ejus, dicente uno ex prioribus conventus: "Domine cantor, tuum est habere primam vocem: nomina dominum Herebertum." At ille, "Bonus homo est," inquit. Audito nomine Hereberti, abbas loquenda

tent man, as the sacristan himself witnessed with an oath. And at once before us all he named John the third prior, his relative, and Maurice his chaplain, and the said Heribert, all of whom were full young, about forty years old or less, and all of moderate intelligence, and men who needed to learn, rather than to teach, the rule of souls, though they were ready to learn.

The abbot nominated these three and put them forward, and he passed over the subprior and many other of the senior monks, who were older, more experienced, learned, and who included those who had formerly been masters of schools, and all the others. Then the abbot spoke at length and highly commended the person of John, but yet put forward also the opposite opinion, saying that the number of his relatives in this district would be a weight round his neck if he were made prior.

And as the abbot was ready to say the same of Maurice, as he could do, and thus craftily proceed to the mention of Heribert, his speech was interrupted, one of the older men of the monastery saying, "Master precentor, it is yours to speak first; nominate lord Herebert." Then the precentor said, "He is a good man." And when he heard the name of Heribert, the abbot ceased

suppressit, et conversus ad cantorem, dixit: "Herebertum recipiam libenter, si vultis."

His dictis, clamavit totus conventus, "Bonus homo est: bonus homo est et amabilis;" et hoc idem attestati sunt plures ex prioribus; statimque cantor et socius quidam cum eo, et alii duo ex alia parte cum omni festinatione surrexerunt, et Herebertum statuerunt in medio.

Herebertus vero in primis humiliter veniam cepit, dicens se insufficientem esse ad tantam dignitatem, et maxime, sicut dixit, quod non esset tam perfectæ scientiæ, quod sciret facere sermonem in capitulo, sicut deceret priorem. Obstupuerunt plures qui talia viderunt, et præ confusione obmutuerunt.

Abbas vero in consolatum ejus et quasi in præjudicium literatorum multa respondit, dicens quod bene posset recordari et ruminare alienos sermones, sicut et alii faciebant; colores rethoricos et phaleras verborum et exquisitas sententias in sermone damnabat, dicens quod in multis ecclesiis fit sermo in conventu Gallice vel potius Anglice, ut morum fieret ædificatio, non literaturæ ostensio. Quibus dictis, ivit prior jam receptus ad pedes abbatis,

speaking, and turning to the precentor said, "I will readily receive Heribert, if it is your wish."

At these words the whole monastery cried out, "He is a good man; he is a good man and lovable." And many of the older men witnessed this same thing, and at once the precentor and some friend with him, and two others from the other side, rose with all haste and placed Heribert in the midst.

But Heribert at first humbly begged to be excused, saying that he was unable to support so great an office, and especially, as he said, because he was not so well instructed as to be able to preach in the chapter, as the prior ought to do. Many were amazed when they saw such things, and were dumb with confusion.

But the abbot said much to console him, and as it were, in prejudice of learned men, saying that he was well able to remember and consider the sermons of others, as others did. And he condemned rhetorical colouring and elaborate verbiage, and neatly turned sentences in a sermon, saying that in many churches the sermon is delivered in French, or rather in English, for the securing of the improvement of manners, and not as a literary exerci-

et deosculatus est eos. Abbas autem cum lacrimis suscepit eum, et propria manu posuit eum in sede prioris, et præcepit omnibus ut debitam reverentiam et obedientiam ei deferrent sicut priori.

*How the author reflected  
on the choice of Heribert.*

Facto capitulo, sedebam ego hospitarius in porticu aulæ hospitem, stupidus et revolvens in animo quæ videram et audieram; et subtiliter cogitare cœpi ob quam causam et propter quas meritum gratias, homo talis ad tantam dignitatem deberet promoveri. Et animadvertere incepti, quod homo est stature decentis, et personalis apparentiæ; homo pulcher facie et amabilis aspectu; semper hilaris, vultu risibilis tam mane quam sero, benignus omnibus; homo compositus in gestu, in incessu gravis, verbo facetus, dulcem vocem habens in cantando et facundam in legendo; juvenis, fortis, et sanus in corpore, et expeditus ad laborandum pro necessitate ecclesiæ; pro loco, pro tempore, nunc laicis, nunc clericis, nunc ecclesiasticis, nunc sæcularibus viris sciens se conformare; liberalis et socialis et facilis ad castigandum, non invidus, non suspiciosus, non avarus, non tædiosus, non de-

se. And when he had so spoken, the newly received prior went to the feet of the abbot, and kissed them. But the abbot received him with tears, and placed him with his own hand in the prior's stall, and commanded all that they should show him due reverence and obedience as their prior.

When the chapter was ended, I was sitting as guest-master in the porch of the guest-house, and I was amazed and revolved in my mind that which I had seen and heard. And I began to think subtly for what reason and for what special merits, such a man deserved to be promoted to so great a position. And I began to reflect that he was a man of comely stature and personal appearance, that he was a handsome man and had a kindly face; that he was always cheerful, and showed a smiling face early and late, and friendly to all men; that he was quiet in his manner, sober in his walk, polite in speech, with a sweet voice for chanting and good for reading. I reflected that he was young, strong, and sound in health, and fitted to labour for the needs of the church; that he knew how to suit himself to place and time, at one moment to laymen, at another to clerks, at another to the regular clergy, and at another to the secular men; that he was liberal, sociable, and facile; that

sidiosus; sobrius et volubilis linguæ in Gallico idiomate, utpote Normanus natione; homo mediocris intelligentiæ, quem si litteræ facerent insanire,<sup>†</sup> homo perfectæ probitatis dici posset.

he was not spiteful in punishing, nor suspicious, nor greedy, nor tiring, nor lazy. I reflected that he was sober, and a fluent speaker in the French tongue, as he was a Norman by birth; that he was a man of fair intelligence, who, if learning would not drive him mad, at least could be called a man of absolute probity.

Cum hæc adverterem, dixi in animo meo, talem hominem esse gratiosum, sed “nichil omni parte beatum,”<sup>‡</sup> et lacrimatus sum præ gaudio, dicens “quia visitavit nos Dominus: sicut Domino placuit, ita factum est.” Sed subito dixit mihi alia cogitatio mea, “parcius lauda novem hominem, quia honores mutant mores, vel potius monstrant. Attende prius quos et quales consiliarios habebit, et quibus credet, quia quilibet ad suum naturaliter trahit consimile. Exitus acta probabit, et ideo lauda parcius.”<sup>†</sup>

And when I thought on these things, I said in my heart, that such a man would be popular, but that nothing is altogether blessed. And I wept for joy, saying that the Lord hath visited us, and as it pleased the Lord, so it had come to pass. But suddenly another thought came to me, “Praise a new man sparingly, for honours change manners, or rather make them known. Wait and see first whom and what manner of men he has as his advisers, and whom he trusts, for everything naturally draws towards its like. The event will prove that which has been done, and therefore I will praise with caution.”

*How the unlearned  
brothers mocked those that  
were learned.*

Eodem die  
convenerunt  
quidam illi-  
terati fratres,

On the same day some unlearned brothers, both officials and cloistered monks, assembled and sharpened their tongues<sup>153</sup> like a sword that they might

<sup>†</sup> ante, p. 219.

<sup>‡</sup> ante, p. 221.

<sup>†</sup> Ovid. Her. ii. 85.

tam officiales quam claustrales, et exacuerunt linguas suas, ut sagittarent in occultis literatos, et repetentes dicta abbatis quæ eodem die dixerat, quasi in præiudicium literatorum, dixerunt ad invicem: “Accipiant modo philosophi nostri philosophias suas; modo patet quid prodest philosophia eorum! Tantum declinaverunt boni clerici nostri in claustro, quod omnes declinati sunt. Tantum sermocinaverunt in capitulo, quod omnes repulsi sunt. Tantum locuti sunt de discretionem inter lepram et lepram, quod tanquam leprosi dejecti sunt. Tantum declinaverunt *musa, musæ*, quod omnes musardi reputati sunt.”

Hæc et consimilia protulerunt quidam in derisionem et opprobrium aliorum, suæque imperitiæ consulentes; scientiam literarum reprobaverunt, et literatis detraxerunt, multum lætantes et magna sperantes quæ forte nunquam evenient, quia—

Fallitur augurio spes bona sæpe suo.<sup>†</sup>

*How the abbot was not perfect.*

Sapiens dixit, “nemo ex omni parte bea-

ght privily shoot at the learned. And repeating the words of the abbot which he had on the same day spoken, as if in prejudice of the learned, they said amongst them selves, “Now let our philosophers take to their philosophy; now one can see clearly how their philosophy profits them! Our good clerks have declined so often in the cloister that they are all declined. They have sermonised so much in the chapter, that they are all rejected. They have spoken so often about distinguishing between leprosy and leprosy, that they are now put forth as lepers. They have declined *musa, musæ* so often, that they are all reckoned as fools.”

These and like words did some put forth in mockery of others and to their shame, and were pleased with their own folly. They abused knowledge of letters, and disparaged those who were learned, rejoicing greatly and hoping great things which perchance will never come to pass, for, Hope of good is oftentimes falsified.

A wise man has said that no one is altogether blessed, and so abbot Samson was not. This indeed I will say, that, in

<sup>169</sup> Ps. lxi. 4, Vulgate.

<sup>†</sup> Ov. Her. xvii. 234.



tus;” nec ergo abbas Samson. Hoc idcirco dixerim, quia, iudicio meo, non est commendandus abbas in facto quod fecit, quando cartam fieri et dari iussit cuidam servienti suo, de sergancia Johannis Ruffi habenda, post mortem ejusdem Johannis: decem marcæ, ut dicebatur, oculos sapientis excæcaverunt.

Unde et magistro Dionisio monacho dicenti, tale factum inauditum esse, respondit abbas, “Non desinam facere voluntatem meam magis pro te, quam pro juvencello illo.” Consimile fecit abbas de sergencia Adæ de infirmario, acceptis c. solidis. De tali facto dici potest, “modicum fermenti totam massam corrumpit.”

*Concerning the fishponds  
of Babwell.*

Item est et alia malæ operationis macula quam lacrimis poenitentiae abluet, Domino volente, ne tantam summam bonorum unus deturpet excessus. Stagnum vivarii de Babbewella, ad novum molendinum, in tantum levavit, quod ex retentione aquarum non est homo, dives vel pauper, habens terram juxta aquam a porta villæ usque ad portam orientis, quin amiserit

my opinion, he is not to be commended in that which he did when he ordered a charter to be drawn up and to be given to a certain servant of his, that he might have the sergeanty of John Ruffus, after the death of the said John. Ten marks, as has been said, blinded the eyes of the wise.

Master Dennis, also, our monk, speaking of this matter, said that it was a thing unheard of, and the abbot answered, “I will not cease to do my will for you, any more than I would do for that boy there.” And the abbot did the same thing in the case of the sergeanty of Adam the farmer, and received a hundred shillings. Of such an act one may say that a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump.<sup>154</sup>

There is also another ill deed, a stain which, by the will of God, he may wash away with the tears of penitence, lest one excess counterbalance so great a sum of good actions. He raised the dam of the fish pond at Babwell, near the new mill, to such a height that owing to the holding back of the waters there was no man, rich or poor, who had land near the water from the gate of the town to the eastern gate, who did not lose his garden and

<sup>170</sup>Gal. v., 9.

hortum suum et pomeria sua. Pastura celerarii, ex alia parte ripæ, perdita est, terras etiam arabiles vicinorum deteriores factæ sunt. Pratum celerarii periit, pomerium infirmarii submersum est ex abundantia aquæ, et omnes vicini inde conqueruntur. Convenit eum quandoque celerarius in pleno capitulo super damno tanto, qui cito commotus respondit, vivarium suum non esse perdendum propter pratum nostrum.

orchards. The pasture of the cellarer, on one part of the bank was lost, and the arable land of the persons near was made worse. The meadow of the cellarer, and the orchard of the farmer, were swallowed up in the abundance of water, and all the neighbours complained of the thing. And when the cellarer complained to him in full chapter about so great a loss, he at once answered with anger that his fishpond should not suffer for the benefit of our meadow.

*Whether it is better to have  
an abbot from one's own  
house.*

Decanus Londoniensis ita scribit in chronicis suis.<sup>†</sup>

“Rex” Henricus secundus, “habito tractatu” do vacantibus abbatibus “cum archiepiscopo et cum episcopis, sic in abbatibus substituendis canonum observavit censuram, ut emendicatis aliunde suffragiis uteretur; arbitrans forsitan, quod si de corpore proprio, locis in singulis crearentur pastores,” contracta prius familiaritas vitiis repromitteret impunitatem; conversatio

The dean of London<sup>155</sup> writes as follows in his chronicles:—“King Henry the Second, having a discussion as to the vacant abbacies with the archbishop and bishops, so observed the rule of the canons in the matter of appointing abbots, as to make use of votes obtained from other houses. Perhaps he thought that if pastors were everywhere created by their own body, the familiarity which had been contracted before election would lead to impunity for vices; equality glosses over faults; and there will be too much slackness

<sup>171</sup> Ralph de Diceto, who was for over fifty years archdeacon of Middlesex and dean of St. Paul's. His name, de Diceto, presents considerable difficulty, and in the opinion of Stubbs (Introduction to the Rolls Series edition), it was an assumed name. Ralph died about 1203. The quotation in the text is from the *Imagines Historiarum* (I. 401–2; cp. note, p. 402), and deals with the conduct of Henry II. in the matter of filling up vacancies. Diceto says that the reason for Henry's conduct was a fear lest otherwise the royal power over elections and abbeys might be diminished.

<sup>†</sup> Diceto, *Ymag. Hist.*; Rolls ed. The motive which he ascribes to Henry is quite different from that assigned by Jocelin; it is merely a fear lest “regiæ dignitatis actoritas vacillaret.”

par indulgentiis crimina sollevaret; in the cloisters.”  
remissio nimia vagaretur in claustris.

Dixit quidam alius: “Non videtur pastor eligendus de propria domo, sed potius de aliena; quia si aliunde sumatur, semper credet, secundum quantitatem conventus quem regendum susceperit, plures esse industrios, quorum consilium appetat, si bonus est; quorum probitatem timebit, si malus est. Domesticus vero singulorum imperitiam, impotentiam, insufficienciam, plenius cognoscens, securius serviet, mutans quadrata rotundis.”<sup>†</sup> Monachi Ramesiæ hac ratione ducti, cum libere possent aliquem eligere de seipsis si vellent, bis abbatem elegerunt de alienis domibus, diebus istis.

*How there was a quarrel  
with the monks of Ely.*

Anno gratiæ  
M<sup>o</sup> cc<sup>o</sup> j<sup>o</sup>, venit abbas de  
Flaviaco apud nos, qui per assensum abbatis, et per prædicationem suam, fecit mutari publicas emptiones et venditiones, quæ fiebant in foro dominicis diebus, et statutum est illas fieri secunda feria. Consimiliter ope-

Another has said, “It does not seem right that a pastor should be chosen from his own house, but rather from another. For if he be taken from another house, he will ever believe, according to size of the monastery which he has undertaken to rule, that many are wise, and will seek their counsel, if he be a good man, and if he be an evil man, he will fear their virtue. But a member of the house knows fully the ignorance, weakness and incompetence of all, and he will raven with the greater security, mingling square with round.” The monks of Ramsey, acting on these grounds, when they had full power to choose whomsoever they would of their own number, twice elected an abbot from foreign houses, in our own times.

In the year of grace one thousand two hundred and one, the abbot of Flaix<sup>156</sup> came to us, who with the assent of the abbot, and by his own preaching, caused public buyings and sellings which had taken place on Sundays in the market place to be abandoned, and it was decreed that they should be held on Mondays. The same abbot did the

---

<sup>†</sup>Hor. Ep. i. 1, 100.

ratus abbas ille in multis civitatibus et burgis Angliæ.<sup>†</sup>

Eodem anno levaverunt monachi de Heli forum venale apud Lachinghehe, habentes inde assensum et cartam regis. Nos vero, inprimis, cum amicis et vicinis nostris pacifice agentes, nuntios misimus ad capitulum de Eli, et prius domino Heliensi literas quoque precatorias, ut ab incepto desisterent, adjicientes quod xv. marcas datas pro carta regis impetrata amicabilem solveremus pro bono pacis, et occasione mutuae dilectionis observandæ. Quid multa? Noluerunt desistere; et erant verba hinc et inde comminatoria, “et pila minantia pilis.”<sup>†</sup>

like in many cities and boroughs of England.

And in the same year, the monks of Ely set up a market for buying and selling at Lakenheath, for which they had the assent and charter of the king. But we, at first, with our friends and neighbours, labouring peacefully, sent messengers to the chapter of Ely, and also at first letters to the lord of Ely, praying that they would desist from that which had been begun. And we added that we would in a friendly manner pay the fifteen marks which had been given for the charter obtained from the king, for the sake of peace, and for the securing of the maintenance of mutual affection. What more need be said? They would not desist, and threatening words went to and fro, and spears

---

<sup>†</sup> Hoveden (Chron. iv. 123, 167, Rolls ed.) gives many particulars of the extraordinary career of Eustace, abbot of Flay. Under 1201 he says, “Eodem anno Eustacius abbas de Flay rediit in Angliam, et prædicans in ea verbum mini de civitate in civitatem . . . prohibuit ne quis forum rerum vealium in diebus Dominicis exerceret.” He adds (p. 172) that the effect of his preaching was transient.

<sup>172</sup> Hoveden (IV., 123–4) gives an account of the mission of Eustace, abbot of St. Germer de Flaix:—“In the same year (A.D. 1200) Eustace, abbot of Flaix, one of the followers of the said Fulk (de Neuilly) came to England from Normandy to preach the word of the Lord; and he performed miracles while he yet lived.” Hoveden goes on to relate the blessing of a fountain at Wye, and the cure of a demoniac woman; the striking of a rock at Romney, whence water came. He insisted on Sunday observance in London (cp. text), and urged the importance of almsgiving. But having roused much opposition in England “among the ministers of Satan,” he soon returned to Normandy. Hoveden (IV., 167–9) gives a copy of the letter which Eustace alleged that he had received from heaven, and relates several other miracles (IV., 169–172). The results of his preaching were not permanent, and the practice of holding markets on Sundays was resumed (Hoveden, IV., 172).

<sup>†</sup> Lucan i. 7.

threatened spears.

A.D. 1202.

Nos vero adquisivimus

breve de recognitione, utrum mercatum illud levatum fuerit in præjudicium nostrum, et in detrimentum mercati villæ Sancti Ædmundi. Et factum est juramentum, et protestatum est, hoc factum fuisse in detrimentum nostrum. Quod cum mandatum esset regi, rex fecit inquiri per registrum suum cujusmodi cartam dedisset monachis de Eli, et compertum est quod dederat eis prædictum mercatum sub tali conditione, si non foret ad detrimentum vicinorum mercatorum.

Rex vero, promissis xl. marculis, fecit nobis cartam suam, ut nullum mercatum de cætero fieret infra libertatem Sancti Ædmundi, nisi per assensum abbatis. Et scripsit G.<sup>†</sup> filio Petri, justitiano, ut mercatum de Lacheneth tolleretur. Justiciarius hoc idem scripsit vicecomiti de Sutfolch.

Vicecomes, sciens quod non potuit intrare libertates Sancti Ædmundi, nec aliquam potestatem ibi exercere, mandavit hoc abbati per breve suum, ut hoc ipsum exequeretur juxta formam

But we received a writ of recognition as to whether that market had been established to the prejudice of ourselves and to the injury of the market town of St. Edmund's. And oath was made, and it was protested that this was done to our injury. And when it was told to the king, the king caused inquest to be made by his registrar as to the kind of charter which he had given to the monks of Ely, and it was found that he had given them the said market under this condition, that it should not be to the detriment of the neighbouring markets.

However, the king, when forty marks were promised to him, made us a charter that no market should henceforth be made within the liberty of St. Edmund, without the assent of the abbot. And he wrote to Geoffrey FitzPeter, the justiciar, that the market of Lakenheath should be destroyed. Then the justiciar wrote to the sheriff of Suffolk to the same effect.

And the sheriff, knowing that he was not able to enter the liberties of St. Edmund, nor to exercise any power there, sent this to the abbot by his writ, that this same thing might be carried out

---

<sup>†</sup>Galfrido.

regii mandati.

Propositus ergo hundredi, veniens illuc, ad diem mercati, cum testimonio liberorum hominum, ex parte regis prohibuit publice mercatum illud, ostendens literas regis et vicecomitis; sed affectus contumeliis et injuriis, infecto negotio, recessit. Abbas vero negotium differens ad tempus, Lundoniæ existens, et sapientes inde consulens, mandavit bailiis suis ut, acceptis hominibus Sancti Ædmundi cum equis et armis, mercatum tollerent, et ementes et vendentes, si quos invenirent, vinctos secum ducerent.

Media autem nocte exierunt fere secenti homines bene armati, tendentes versus Lachinheth. Cum autem exploratores nuntiarent eos venire, discurrerunt omnes huc et illuc qui in foro erant, nec inventus est unus. Prior autem Heliensis cum bailiis suis venerat nocte eadem illuc, suspicans adventum hominum nostrorum, ut pro posse suo vendentes et ementes defenderet; sed domum suam exire noluit: et cum bailivi nostri quæsiissent ab eo vadium et plegium standi ad rectum in curia Sancti Ædmundi de injuria illata, et dare noluisset, inito consilio, fur-

according to the command of the king.

So the bailiff of the hundred came thither on the market day with the witness of the free men, and publicly forbade that market in the name of the king, and exhibited the letters of the king and of the sheriff. But being assailed with abuse and injuries, he departed without performing his work. But the abbot put off the matter for a time, and when he was in London, consulted the wise men on the point. Then he sent word to his bailiffs that they should take the men of St. Edmund, with horses and arms, and destroy the market, and if they found any buying or selling, they should bring them in bonds with them.

So at midnight, there went out almost six hundred men, well armed, making their way towards Lakenheath. But when the spies told that they were coming, all those who were in the market dispersed hither and thither, and not one was found. On the same night, however, the prior of Ely came with his officials, as he suspected the coming of our men, that he might defend so far as he could those who were selling and buying, but would not leave his lodging. And when our bailiffs demanded from him surety and pledge that he would stand his trial in the

cas macelli et tabulas stallorum in foro everteruut, et secum asportaverunt, et omnia averia, oves et boves, universa insuper et pecora campi,<sup>†</sup> secum duxerunt, tendentes versus Ikilingheham.

court of St. Edmund for the injury which he had done, and he would not give it, having taken counsel, they overthrew the shambles of the butchers and the stalls in the market, and carried them away with them; and they took with them all the cattle, sheep, and oxen, yea, and all the beasts of the field, and made their way towards Icklingham.

Baillivi prioris sequentes petierunt averia sua per plegia usque in xv. dies. Et factum est sicut petierunt. Infra xv. dies venit breve, quo abbas summonitus est, ut veniret ad scaccarium responsurus de tali facto, et quod averia capta interim dimitterentur quieta. Episcopus enim Heliensis, homo eloquens et facundus, in propria persona conquestus est inde justiciario et magnatibus Angliæ, dicens inauditam superbiam factam fuisse in terra Sanctæ Ætheldrethæ tempore pacis, unde et multi commoti fuerunt adversus abbatem.

The bailiffs of the prior followed them, and asked for their cattle in pledge for fifteen days; and it was done as they asked. And within fifteen days there came a writ, in which the abbot was summoned to come to the exchequer to make answer for such a deed, and to the effect that the cattle which had been taken should in the meanwhile be sent back free. For the bishop of Ely,<sup>157</sup> a man eloquent and cunning, had in person made complaint on this matter to the justiciar and to the magnates of England, saying that an unheard-of act of daring had been done in the land of St. Etheldreda in time of peace, whence also many were moved against the abbot.

*How the abbot disputed  
with the bishop of Ely.*

Interim est et  
alia causa di-

Meanwhile also other causes of dispute arose between the bishop of Ely and

<sup>†</sup>Ps. viii. 8.

<sup>173</sup>Eustace, dean of Salisbury, succeeded Longchamp as bishop of Ely (1197). Assisted Langton against John. Died 1215.

scordiæ orta  
inter episcopum Eliensem et abbatem.  
Cum quidam juvenis de Glemesford  
calumpniatus esset in curia Sancti  
Ædmundi de pace regis fracta, et quæ-  
situs esset diu, et hie in comitatu, tan-  
dem senescaldus episcopi produxit  
juvenem illum, petens curiam Sanctæ  
Ætheldrethæ, cartas et libertates  
domini sui ostendens. Nostri vero  
baillivi, petentes loquelam et saisinam  
talis libertatis, audiri non potuerunt.  
Comitatus vero posuit loquelam in  
respectum usque coram justiciariis  
errantibus, unde Sanctus Ædmundus  
supersaisitus fuerat.

*How king John summoned  
the abbot to him, and of  
that which was done  
thereupon.*

*A.D. 1203, 21st January.*

Abbas vero  
hoc audiens  
proposuit  
transfretare;  
sed, quia infir-  
mabatur, rem voluit differre usque ad  
Purificationem. Et ecce! die sanctæ  
Agnetis, venit nuncius regis, breve  
domini papæ portans, quo contineba-  
tur, quod dominus Eliensis et abbas  
Sancti Ædmundi scrutinium facerent  
de G. filio Petri, et de W. de Stutevilla,  
et quibusdam aliis magnatibus Anglie  
qui crucem acceperant, pro quibus  
dominus rex absolutionem petierat,  
allegans intirmitatem corporum et

the abbot. For when a youth of Gleme-  
sford was accused in the court of St.  
Edmund for a breach of the king's pea-  
ce, and had long been sought, and in  
this county, at last the bishop's sene-  
schal produced that youth, and sou-  
ght the court of St. Etheldreda for him,  
showing the charters and liberties of  
his lord. But our bailiffs, when they  
claimed the right to try the case and  
the possession of such liberty, could  
not be heard. For the county court pla-  
ced the matter in respite until it mi-  
ght be decided before the itinerant ju-  
stices, so that St. Edmund was driven  
from his jurisdiction.

Now when the abbot heard of this he  
proposed to cross the sea, but as he  
was ill, he wished to put it off until  
the feast of the Purification. And lo!  
on St. Agnes' day, there came a mes-  
senger from the king, bearing a brief  
from the lord pope,<sup>158</sup> in which it was  
laid down that the lord of Ely and the  
abbot of St. Edmund's should make  
inquest concerning Geoffrey FitzPe-  
ter and William de Stuteville and cer-  
tain other magnates of England, who  
had taken the cross, and for whose ab-  
solution the lord king made request,  
alleging the infirmity of their health,  
and the need of their advice for the

<sup>174</sup> This brief is printed in Migne's *Patrologia* (214), among the letters of Innocent III. for 1202 (Arnold, *Mem. I.*, 331 note).



consilium eorum ad conservationem regni sui. Portavit idem nuntius literas domini regis, præciens, ut, visis literis, veniret ad eum de mandato domini papæ locuturus.

Turbatus est abbas, et dixit: "Angustiæ sunt michi undique,<sup>†</sup> vel Deum vel regem offendam; per Deum verum, quicquid postea acciderit, sciens non mentiar." Veniens ergo domum cum omni festinatione, aliquantulum castigatus infirmitate corporis, et humiliatus et magis solito timidus, mediante prior, quæsit a nobis consilium, quod rarissime ante fecerat, quomodo agendum esset de libertatibus ecclesiæ periclitantibus, et unde expensæ provenirent, si ipse hoc iter arriperet, et cui abbatiam committeret custodiendam, et quid faceret de pauperibus servientibus suis qui diu servierant.

Et responsum fuit, ut ipsemet iret, et pecuniam sufficienter appruntaret, solvendam de nostra sacristia et de pittanceis nostris, et de aliis redditibus

preservation of his realm. And the same messenger bore letters of the lord king,<sup>159</sup> ordering that when the letters had been read, the abbot should come to speak with him concerning the message of the lord pope.

Then the abbot was disturbed, and said, "I am straitened on every side. I must offend either God or the king. By the true God, come what may, I will not knowingly lie." And so he came home with all speed, being rather weak with illness of body and mind, and being humbled and timid, contrary to his usual manner, by means of the prior, he sought counsel of us, which he had very rarely done hitherto. And he asked what was to be done about the threatened liberties of the church, and whence the expenses might be provided if he were to undertake this journey, and to whom the custody of the abbey should be given, and what was to be done as to the poor servants who had long time served him.

And it was answered that he should go in person, and that he should borrow enough money, which should be paid from our sacristy and pittances, and

<sup>175</sup>The summons of abbot Samson is noted in Diceto (II., 173). The bishops of Ely, Salisbury, and London, and the abbots of St. Edmund's, Westminster, and Tewkesbury were summoned to Normandy.

<sup>†</sup>Dan. xiii. 22.

nostris ad voluntatem suam; et quod commendaret abbatiam priori custodiendam et alicui clerico, quem divitem fecerat, et qui interim posset vivere de suo, ut ita parceretur expensis abbatis, et cuilibet de servientibus suis denarios daret secundum quod servierat. Illo autem audiente tale consilium gratum habuit: et factum est ita.

from our other revenues according to his will. And it was answered that he should commit the abbey to the care of the prior and of another clerk, whom he had enriched, and who could meanwhile live of his own, that thus the abbot might save expense, and that he should give money to his servants according to the time which they had served him. And when he had heard such counsel, he was pleased, and so it was done.

Veniens ergo abbas in capitulum, proxima die, antequam recessit, fecit portari secum omnes libros suos, et eos ecclesiæ et conventui præsentavit, et commendavit consilium nostrum, quod significaveramus ei per priorem.

So the abbot came into the chapter next day, before his departure, and caused to be borne with him all his books, and he presented them to the church and monastery, and commended our counsel, which we had shown to him through the prior.

*How the abbot left the  
monastery in peace with all  
men.*

quod abbas diligens est et sollicitus de libertatibus baroniæ suæ, sed de libertatibus conventus, quas perdidimus tempore suo, scilicet de curia et libertatibus celerarii amissis, et de libertatibus sacristiæ super præfatis villæ instituendis per conventum, nichil loquitur. Suscitavit itaque Dominus spiritum in tribus fratribus mediocris intelligentiæ, qui, accitis

Interim murmurantes quosdam audivimus, dicentes,

Meanwhile we heard some murmuring and saying that the abbot was careful and thoughtful for his barony, but as to the liberties of the monastery, which we had lost in his time, that is, for the loss of the court and liberties of the cellarer, and for the liberties of the sacristan in the matter of the appointment of the bailiffs of the town by the monastery, he said nothing. Therefore the Lord stirred up the spirit of three brothers of moderate intelligence, and they, having roused many others, came to consult the prior on this matter,

pluribus aliis, convenerunt inde priorem consulentes, ut inde loqueretur cum abbate, et rogaret eum ex nostra parte, ut in recessu suo provideret indemnitati ecclesiæ suæ de libertatibus illis.

Abbas hoc audiens, plura non dicenda respondit, jurans se fore dominum quamdiu viveret. Vespere autem adveniente, mitius inde locutus est cum priore. In crastino vero, recessurus et licentiam petiturus, in capitulo sedens, dixit se pacasse omnes servientes suos, et testamentum suum fecisse, sicut tunc temporis deberet mori, et incipiens loqui de libertatibus illis, excusavit se, dicens, se mutasse antiquas consuetudines ne esset defectus regalis justitiæ: et retorsit culpam in sacristam, et dixit, quod, si Durandus præfectus, tunc infirmus, moriretur, sacrista teneret præfecturam in manu sua, et poneret præfectum coram capitulo, sicut consuetudo antiquitus fuerat sic tamen ut hoc fieret per consilium abbatis; sed dona et xenia annuatim a præfecto facienda nullo modo remitteret.

that on his departure the abbot might provide for the indemnity of his church in respect of her liberties.

When the abbot heard this, he answered many things which must not be spoken, swearing that he would be lord while he lived. But when vespers came, he spoke gently on the matter with the prior. And on the morrow, as he was about to depart and came to seek leave, as he sat in the chapter, he said that he had satisfied all his servants, and had made his will, as if he were then about to die. Then beginning to speak concerning the liberties of the church, he excused himself, saying that he had changed the ancient customs lest there might be a defect in the king's justice. And he cast the blame on the sacristan, and said that if Durand the bailiff, who was then ill, should die, the sacristan should hold the bailiwick in his own hand, and should appoint a bailiff in the presence of the chapter, as had been the ancient custom, provided that this were done by the counsel of the abbot. But he would in nowise return the gifts and presents annually made by the bailiff.

Cum vero quæreremus quid fieret de curia celerarii amissa, et præcipue de obolis quos celerarius solebat accipere ad plegios renovandos, commotus inde quæsivit, qua auctoritate exigeremus jus regale, et ea quæ ad regales consuetudines pertinent: et responsum est, quod id a fundamentis ecclesiæ semper habuimus, et etiam iij. annis postquam suscepit abbatiam, et hanc libertatem habemus in omnibus maneriis nostris ad renovationem plegiorum. Et diximus, quod pro c. solidis, quos private accipiebat de præfecto singulis annis, non deberemus amittere jus nostrum; et audacter petivimus saisinam qualem habuimus suo etiam tempore.

Abbas vero, quasi in arcto positus quid responderet, volens nos in pace relinquere et pacifice recedere, iussit ut oboli illi, et cætera quæ celerarius exigebat, ponerentur in sequestro usque ad reditum suum; et promisit quod in reditu suo cum consilio nostro operaretur in singulis, juste dispositurus, et unicuique redditurus quod suum esse debet. His dictis, facta est tranquillitas, sed non magna, quia—

Pollicitis dives quilibet

And when we asked what was to be done in the matter of the court of the cellarer which had been lost, and especially as to the pence which the cellarer had been wont to receive for the renewal of pledges, he grew angry at this, and asked by what authority we exacted the right of royal justice, and those things which pertain to the royal powers. And the answer was that we had always had this from the foundation of the church, and even for three years after he received the abbacy, and that we had this liberty still in all our manors for the renewal of pledges. And we said that we ought not to lose our right for the hundred shillings which he privately received each year from the bailiff, and we boldly demanded that we should have such seisin as we had in his day.

But the abbot, as he was in a strait how to answer, wishing to leave us in peace and to go away quietly, ordered that those pence, and the other things which the cellarer demanded, should be sequestered until he should return. And he promised that on his return he would in all things act with our advice, and would dispose things justly, and render to every man that which was his due. With these words tranquillity was restored, but not for long, since, "Any man may be rich in promises."

esse potest.<sup>†</sup>

Robertus de Kokefelda recognovit domino abbati Samsoni, multis præsentibus, scilicet, magistro W. de Banham, fratre W. de Dice, capellanis, Willelmo de Breitona, et multis aliis, se nullum jus hæreditarium habere debere in villis de Grotona et Semere, quia tempore regis Stephani, pace turbata, monachi Sancti Ædmundi, cum consensu abbatis, concesserunt prædictas ij. villas Adæ Cokefeldo patri suo, tenendas omnibus diebus vitæ suæ; scilicet, Semere reddendo annuatim c. solidos, et Grotone faciendo annuatim unam firmam pro ea. Quod Adam potuit defendere prædictas villas contra castellanos vicinos, contra W. de Mildinges, contra W. de Ambli, utpote habens castrum suum vicinum prædictis maneriis, scilicet, castellum de Leleseia. Post mortem prædicti Adæ, concesserunt prædicta maneria Roberto de Kokefelda, filio ipsius Adæ, duplicata censa de Semere, reddendo scilicet annuatim pro ea x. libras, quamdiu dominus abbas et conventus vellent; sed nunquam cartam inde habuit, nec etiam ad terminum vitæ suæ. Cartas bonas habuit de omnibus tenementis quæ jure hæreditario tenuit de Sancto Ædmundo, quas ego Willelmus, dictus de Dicia, tunc temporis capellanus, legi, multis audientibus, in præsentia abbatis prædicti; scilicet, de terris Leleseia, quas Ulfricus de Leleseia tenuit in eadem villa de Sancto Ædmundo; cartam abbatis et conventus de socagiis de Rutham, quas domina Rohais de Kokefeldo, uxor quondam Adæ junioris, habet in dotem; de terris etiam quas Lenmerus progenitor suus habuit in villa de Kokefeldo jure hæreditario, quæ, tempore regis Stephani, per consensum Anselmi abbatis Sancti Ædmundi, attornatæ fuerunt in feodum dimidii militis, cum primo essent socagia Sancti Ædmundi. Cartas etiam habuit abbas et conventus sancti Ædmundi de terris, quæ sunt in villa Sancti Ædmundi; de terra, scilicet, Hemfridi Criketot, ubi domus dominæ Adelitiæ sitæ quondam fuerunt. Habent cartam et hæreditariam, per servitium xij. denariorum, magni mesuagii, ubi aula Adæ de Kokefelda primi quondam sita fuit cum berefrido ligneo, septies<sup>†</sup> xx. pedum in altitudine: eis confirmatum fuit hæreditarie per cartam abbatis et conventus, in qua carta distinguitur longitudo et latitudo ipsius platæ et

---

<sup>†</sup>Ov. Art. Amat. i. 444.

<sup>†</sup>The word in the MS. is *sēties*, which means here, I think, *septies*. Mr. Rokewode's suggestion, *centies*, would involve a height of 2,000 feet for the tower of the Kokefelds.

mesuagii, tenendum per servitium ij. solidorum. Cartam etiam habent hæreditariam de terris, quas Robertus de Kokefelda, filius Odonis de Kokefelda, modo tenet in Bertona; sed cartam nullam habent de villa de Kokefelda, illa scilicet portione quæ ad victum pertinet monachorum Sancti Ædmundi. Inde breve unum Regis Henrici primi, per quod mandat abbati Anselmo ut permittat Adæ de Kokefelda primo, tenere in pace firmam de Kokefeld et alias, quamdiu plene firmas reddidit; breve autem illud sigillatum est tantum ex una parte, formam regiam repræsentans, contra formam omnium brevium regalium. Robertus tamen de Kokefelda recognovit, in præsentia domini abbatis et prædictorum, se credere Kokefelde esse jus suum hæreditarium propter longam tenuram; quia avus suus Lemmerus tenuit illud manerium diu ante mortem suam, et Adam primus, filius ipsius, tempore vitæ suæ, et ipse Robertas tota vita sua, fere lx. annis; sed nunquam cartam abbatis seu conventus Sancti Ædmundi de prædicta terra habuerunt.

ABBONIS FLORIACENSIS  
PASSIO SANCTI  
EADMUNDI





*Incipit epistola passionis sancti Eadmundi regis et martyris.*

*Here begins the Dedicatory Epistle accompanying the Passion of Saint Eadmund, King and Martyr.*

Domino sanctæ metropolitanæ Do-  
robernensis ecclesiæ, archiepiscopo  
Dunstano, vere moribus et ætate ma-  
turo, Abbo Floriacensis monachus  
levita, etsi indignus, a Christo Do-  
mino irriguum superius et irriguum  
inferius. Postquam a te, venerabilis  
pater, digressus sum cum multa alacri-  
tate cordis, et ad monasterium quod  
nosti festinus redii, cœperunt me ob-  
nix hi cum quibus fraterna caritate  
detentus hospitando hactenus degui,  
pulsare manu sancti desiderii, ut mi-  
rabiliū patratoris Eadmundi regis et  
martyris passionem litteris digererem,  
asserentes id posteris profuturum,  
tibi gratum, ac meæ parvitatē apud  
Anglorum ecclesias non inutile moni-  
mentum. Audierant enim, quod eam  
pluribus ignotam, a nemine scriptam,  
tua sanctitas ex antiquitatis memoria  
collectam historialiter me præsente  
retulisset domino Rofensis episcopo<sup>†</sup>  
ecclesiæ, et abbati monasterii quod  
dicitur Malmesberi,<sup>‡</sup> ac aliis circum-  
assistentibus, sicut tuus mos est, fratri-

For Dunstan, Lord Archbishop of the  
holy metropolitan Church of Canter-  
bury, ripe, sooth to say, in character  
as in age, Abbo of Fleury, a monk in  
deacon's orders, though unworthy,  
bespeaks the dews of the blessing  
of Christ the Lord above and below.  
After I had departed from you, véné-  
rable father, with much cheerfulness  
of heart, and had returned with haste  
to the monastery that you wot of, the  
brethren, with whom, being detained  
by their fraternal kindness, I have  
hitherto been staying as a guest, be-  
gan to press me urgently to comply  
with their saintly desire, that I would  
reduce to writing the Passion of the  
miracle-worker, Eadmund, king and  
martyr. This, they declared, would be  
edifying to future generations, and ac-  
ceptable to you, as well as a serviceable  
memento of my humble self among  
the English churches. They had heard,  
indeed, that the story of this Passion,  
which is unknown to most people,  
and has been committed to writing

<sup>†</sup> Ælfstan was bishop of Rochester at this time; see Stubbs' *Reg. Sac. Angl.*

<sup>‡</sup> William of Malmesbury (*Gest. Pont. lib. v.*) says that this was Ælfric, who was afterwards bishop of Crediton. But there is a difficulty; for in the prologue to the Saxon homily on St. Edmund in Bod. 343, it is said that Abbo paid this visit to St. Dunstan "þreom gearæ ærþam þe he forðferde," three years before he died, that is, in 985; but Ælfric was made bishop of Crediton in 979.

bus, quos pabulo divini verbi Latina et patria lingua pascere non desinis. Quibus fatebaris, oculos suffusus lacrimis, quod eam junior didicisses a quodam sene decrepito, qui eam simpliciter et plena fide referebat gloriosissimo regi Anglorum Adelstano, jure-jurando asserens quod eadem die fuisset armiger beati viri qua pro Christo martyr occubuit. Cujus assertioni quia in tantum fidem accommodasti, ut promptuario memoriæ verba ex integro reconderes, quæ postmodum junioribus mellito ore eructares, cœperunt fratres instantius meæ pusillanimitati incumbere, ut eorum ferventi desiderio satisfacerem, ac pro virium facultate tantorum operum seriem perire non sinerem. Quorum petitioni cum pro sui reverentia nollem contradicere, posthabitis aliquantulum sæcularium litterarum studiis, quasi ad interiorem philosophiam animæ me contuli, dum ejus qui vere philosophatus est in throno regni virtutes scribere proposui, maxime tamen eas, quæ post ejus obitum, sæculis inauditæ, factæ sunt; quibus nemo crederet nisi eas tuæ assertionis irrefragabilis auctoritas roborasset. Siquidem tu, cui nix capitis credi compellit, quando referebas de ea quæ nunc est incorruptione regis, quidam diligentius inquisivit utrum hæc ita esse possent. Cujus quæstionis ambiguum volens purgare, tu, magnæ

by none, had been related by your Holiness, as collected from ancient tradition, in my presence, to the Lord Bishop of Rochester, and to the Abbot of the monastery which is called Malmesbury, and to other brethren then assembled in accordance with your practice, whom you cease not to nourish with the food of God's word, alike in the Latin and in the mother tongue. To them you averred, while the tears ran from your eyes, that you had in your youth learned the history from a broken-down veteran, who in relating it, simply and in good faith, to the most glorious English king, Athelstan, declared on his oath that, on the very day on which the martyr laid down his life for Christ's sake, he had been armour-bearer to the saintly hero. In view of the great reliance which you placed on the old man's assertions, and which led you to store up his words in their entirety in the receptacle of your memory, to be uttered at a later date with honeyed accents to a younger generation, the brethren insisted strongly, notwithstanding my diffidence, that I would satisfy their earnest desire, and to the best of my ability preserve from utter oblivion so important a series of events. I felt that I could not with due self-respect refuse their request, and therefore, postponing for the moment the study

peritiæ sacrarium, pro exemplo adjecisti, quod multo magis audientium attonita corda concussit, quia sanctus Domini Cuthbertus, incomparabilis confessor et episcopus, non solum adhuc expectat diem primæ resurrectionis incorrupto corpore, sed etiam perfusus quodam blando tempore. Quod ego admirans pro argumento habui, quo tandem ad sancti regis gesta elucubrandam certior accessi, fidens de ejus et tuis meritis incomparabilibus. Cui primitias mei laboris consecrans suppliciter obsecro, ut vel una die veritas mihi tuum otium in honestum negotium, resecando hinc superflua, supplendo hiantia, quoniam ex ore tuo, præter seriem ultimi miraculi, per omnia veracem secutus verax digessi, exhortans omnes ad amorem tanti martyris. Vale pater in Christo.

*Explicit epistola.*

Lord, and incomparable Confessor and Bishop, who not only to this day awaits with body incorrupt the day of the first resurrection, but continues to be suffused with a gentle warmth. In this I found an admirable proof, which led me with more assurance to the careful relation of the holy king's actions, inspired as I was with full trust in his and your incomparable merits. And so, in dedicating to you the first fruits of my labour, I humbly beseech you to be so good as to bestow upon me, if it be but one day of your leisure in so worthy a cause, retrenching what is in excess, and supplying what is in defect, since, with the exception of the last miracle of the series, I have in every particular composed the narrative, as you delivered it, faithfully following a faithful informant, and exhorting all to the love of so eminent a martyr. Farewell, my Father in Christ.

*Here ends the Epistle Dedicatory.*

of secular literature, I betook myself as it were to the esoteric wisdom of the spirit, and undertook to describe the good deeds of the king, who addicted himself on the throne of his kingdom to the truest philosophy, but especially those which, unparalleled in the world's history, were wrought after his death; to which none would give credence were they not vouched for by the irrefragable authority of your assertion. In truth, when you, the snows of whose head compel belief, made mention of the still continuing incorruption of the king's body, one of those present anxiously raised the question whether such things were possible? In order to clear up the doubt involved in that question, you alleged, from the ample stores of your experience, the instance (which still more powerfully struck the astonished minds of your auditors) of Cuthbert, the Saint of the



INCIPIT PASSIO SANCTI EAD-  
MUNDI REGIS ET MARTYRIS.

HERE BEGINS THE PASSION  
OF SAINT EADMUND, KING  
AND MARTYR.

**A**SCITI aliquando in Britan-  
niam munere precario in  
perniciosum auxilium tres  
Germaniæ populi, hoc  
est, Saxones, Juti, et Angli, primum  
Britonibus interdiu fuere præsidii.  
Qui cum sæpius bellis lacessiti se et  
suos defensarent fortiter, illi vero igna-  
viæ operam dantes quasi proletarii ad  
solam voluptatem domi residerent,  
fisi de invicta fortitudine stipendiario-  
rum militum quos sibi conduxerant,  
ipsos miseros indigenas domo patria-  
que pellere deliberant. Factumque est,  
et exclusis Britonibus statuunt inter  
se dividere victores alienigenæ insu-  
lam, bonis omnibus fecundissimam,  
indignum judicantes tam ignavorum  
dominio detineri, quæ ad defensionem  
suam idoneis posset præbere  
sufficientem alimoniam et optimis  
viris. Qua occasione inducti, orienta-  
lem ipsius insulæ partem, quæ usque  
hodie lingua Anglorum Eastengle vo-  
catur, sortito nomine Saxones sunt  
adepti, Jutis et Anglis ad alia tenden-  
tibus, in quibus suæ sortis funiculo  
potirentur, ne esset cum sodalibus  
ullum de possessione litigium, quibus  
suppeteret amplitudo terræ ad regnan-  
di emolumentum. Unde contigit ut

**S**UMMONED in times past to  
Britain to give, for a dubious  
reward, a fatal assistance,  
three tribes of Germany, na-  
mely, the Saxons, the Jutes, and the  
Angles, were at first and for a while  
protectors to the Britons. Involved in  
frequent wars, they defended them-  
selves and their clients with courage;  
but as the latter were given over to  
sloth, and stayed at home, as might  
be expected of a proletariat, absor-  
bed in pleasure alone, trusting to the  
unconquered bravery of the hireling  
soldiery whom they had retained,  
the protectors took counsel for the  
expulsion from home and country of  
the wretched natives. And so it was  
done; the Britons were turned out,  
and the alien conquerors set to work  
to parcel out among themselves the  
island, replete, as it was, with wealth  
of every kind, on the ground that it  
was a shame that it should be retain-  
ed under the rule of a lazy populace,  
when it might afford a competent live-  
lihood to men of mettle who were fit  
to defend themselves. The occasion  
having thus arisen, the eastern part of  
the island, which, even to this day, is  
called "Eastengle," in the speech of the

per regiones et provincias divisa plurimum primum ducibus deinde regibus sufficeret una eademque Britannia.

Angles, fell to the lot of the Saxons, while the Jutes and Angles parted in other directions, in which they could follow the clues of their own fortunes,

so that there should be no controversy with their comrades as to their possessions, the country being spacious enough to satisfy the needs of their several dominions. Hence it came about that the single island of Britain was broken up into districts and provinces, and sufficed for a number, at first of leaders, and afterwards of kings.

- II. At prædicta orientalis pars cum aliis turn eo nobilis habetur, quod aquis pæne undique alluitur, quoniam a subsolano et euro cingitur oceano, ab aquilone vero immensarum paludum uligine, quæ exorientes propter æqualitatem terræ a mediterraneo ferme totius Britann[i]æ, per centum et eo amplius millia cum maximis fluminibus descendunt in mare. Ab ea autem parte qua sol vergitur in occasum, ipsa provincia reliquæ insulæ est contigua, et ob id pervia; sed ne crebra irruptione hostium incursetur, aggere adinstar altioris muri fossa humo præmunitur. Interius ubere gleba satis admodum læta, hortorum nemorumque amœnitate gratissima, ferarum venatione insignis, pascuis pecorum et jumentorum non mediocriter fertilis. De piscosis fluminibus reticemus, cum hinc eam, ut dictum est, lingua maris allambit, inde, paludibus dilatatis, stagnorum ad duo vel tria millia spatiosorum innumerabilis multitudo præterfluit. Quæ

But the above-mentioned eastern part attracts consideration for the following among other reasons, viz. that it is washed by waters on almost every side, girdled as it is on the south and east by the ocean, and on the north by an immense tract of marsh and fen, which starting, owing to the level character of the ground, from practically the midmost point of Britain, slopes for a distance of more than a hundred miles, intersected by rivers of great size, to the sea. But on the side where the sun sets, the province is in contact with the rest of the island, and on that account accessible; but as a bar to constant invasion by an enemy, a foss sunk in the earth is fortified by a mound equivalent to a wall of considerable height. In the interior the soil is rich and extremely productive, and delightfully pleasant with its gardens and woods, while it is noted for its excellent sport, and for its abundant grazing for flocks and herds. I pass

paludes præbent pluribus monachorum gregibus optatos solitariae conversationis sinus, quibus inclusi non indigeant solitudine eremi, ex quibus sunt sancti monachorum patris Benedicti cælibes cœnobitæ, in loco<sup>†</sup> celebri hac tempestate.

gations of monks desirable havens of lonely life, in the seclusion of which solitude cannot fail the hermits, amongst whom may be mentioned the celibate and cœnobite monks of the order of the holy father Benedict, in a spot that has now gained celebrity.

Sed, ut ad propositum revertamur, huic provinciæ tam feraci præfuit sanctissimus Deoque acceptus Eadmundus, ex Antiquorum Saxonum nobili prosapia oriundus, a primævo suæ ætatis tempore cultor veracissimus fidei Christianæ. Qui atavis regibus editus, cum bonis polleret moribus, omnium comprovincialium unanimi favore non tantum eligitur ex generis successione, quantum rapitur, ut eis præesset sceptrigera potestate. Nam erat ei species digna imperio, quam serenissimi cordis jugiter venustabat tranquilla devotio. Erat omnibus blando eloquio affabilis, humilitatis gratia præclarus, et inter suos cœevos mirabili mansuetudine residebat dominus, absque ullo fastu superbiæ. Jamque vir sanctus præferebat in vultu, quod

over its rivers, which abound in fish, as on one side, as has been mentioned, the country is lapped by the sea, and on the other, where the marshes are spread out, stretch after stretch of the fen waters, as much as two or three miles in breadth, trickles past. These marshes afford to not a few congregations of monks desirable havens of lonely life, in the seclusion of which solitude cannot fail the hermits, amongst whom may be mentioned the celibate and cœnobite monks of the order of the holy father Benedict, in a spot that has now gained celebrity.

But, to revert to our subject, over this III.  
fertile province reigned the most holy, and, in God's sight, acceptable Prince Eadmund. He was sprung from the noble stock of the Old Saxons, and from his earliest childhood cherished most sincerely the Christian faith. Descended from a line of kings, and endued with a high character, he was, by the unanimous choice of all his fellow-provincials, not so much elected in due course of succession, as forced to rule over them with the authority of the sceptre. He was in truth of a comely aspect, apt for sovereignty; and his countenance continually developed fresh beauty through the tranquil devotion of his most serene spirit. To all he was affable and winning in speech, and distinguished by

---

<sup>†</sup>Ramsey, Hunts.

postea manifestatum est divino nutu; quoniam puer toto conamine virtutis arripuit gradum quem divina pietas præsciebat martyrio finiendum.

a captivating modesty; and he dwelt among his contemporaries with admirable kindness, though he was their lord, and without any touch of haughtiness or pride. The holy Eadmund

did indeed already carry in his countenance what afterwards was made manifest by God's will; since even as a boy he grasped with whole-hearted endeavour the ladder of virtue, the summit of which he was destined by God's mercy to reach by martyrdom.

III. Nactus vero culmen regiminis, quantæ fuerit in subjectos benignitatis, quantæ in perversos distractionis, non est nostræ facultatis evolvere, qui ejus minima, quo conveniret sermone, non possumus expedire. Siquidem ita columbinæ simplicitatis mansuetudine temperavit serpentines calliditatis astutiam, ut nec antiqui hostis deciperetur simulatione fraudulenta, nec malignorum hominum reciperet contra justitiam sententias, rem quam nesciebat diligentissime investigans; gradiensque via regia, nec declinabat ad dexteram, extollendo se de meritis, nec ad sinistram, succumbendo vitiis humanæ fragilitatis. Erat quoque egentibus dapsilis liberaliter, pupillis et viduis clementissimus pater, semper habens præ oculis dictum illud Sapientis:<sup>1</sup> "Principem te constituent? noli extolli, sed esto in illis quasi unus ex illis." Cumque tarn conspi-

How beneficent he was in relation to his subjects, when he had been raised to the throne, and how strict in dealing with wrong-doers, it is beyond my abilities to describe; indeed I could not in suitable language set forth even the least of his merits. It may be said that he so combined the gentleness and simplicity of the dove with the wariness and sagacity of the serpent, that he was neither deceived by the fraudulent pretences of the old enemy of mankind, nor sanctioned the iniquitous sophisms of evilly-minded men. Any matter of which he was ignorant he would investigate with the utmost industry; and proceeding along the royal road, he deviated neither to the right through too exalted a notion of his own merits, nor to the left by falling a victim to the faults of human frailty. In addition, he was liberal in his bounty to those in want, and like

---

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiasticus xxxiii. 1.



cuus in Christo et Ecclesia emereret bonorum actuum ornamentis, ejus patientiam, sicut et sancti Job, aggressus est experiri inimicus humani generis: qui eo bonis plus invidet, quo appetitu bonæ voluntatis caret.

through the adornment of good deeds, that, as in the case of Saint Job, to test his patience became the aim of the enemy of the human race, who cherishes a grudge against the good, which is all the deeper, because he lacks every impulse towards good-will.

Quocirca unum ex suis membris ei adversarium immisit, qui, omnibus quæ habuerat undique sublatis, ad impatientiam, si posset, erumpere cogeret, ut desperans Deo in faciem benediceret.<sup>†</sup> Fuit autem idem adversarius Inguar vocabulo dictus; qui cum altero, Hubba nomine, ejusdem perversitatis homine, nisi divina impediretur miseratione, conatus est in exterminium adducere totius fines Britanniæ. Nec mirum, cum venerint indurati frigore suæ malitiæ ab illo terræ vertice, quo sedem suam posuit qui per elationem Altissimo similis esse concupivit. Denique constat, juxta prophetæ vaticinium, quod ab aquilone venit omne malum, sicut plus æquo didicere perperam passi adversos jactus cadentis tesseræ, qui aquilonalium gentium experti sunt sævitiam. Quas

a benignant father to the orphan and the widow. He ever kept in view the dictum of the wise man: "Have they made you a prince? be not exalted, but be among them as one of them." And so eminently conspicuous was he in the face of Christ and of the Church,

With this object he despatched one of V. his own satellites as an adversary to Eadmund, in the hope that, stripped of all his possessions, the king might be goaded into an outburst of impatience, and in despair curse God to His face. This adversary was known by the name of Inguar; and he, with another called Hubba, a man of equal depravity, attempted (and nothing but the divine compassion could have prevented them) to reduce to destruction the whole confines of Britain. And no wonder! seeing that they came hardened with the stiff frost of their own wickedness from that roof of the world where he had fixed his abode who in his mad ambition sought to make himself equal to the Most High. In fine it is proverbial, according to the prediction of the prophet, that from

<sup>†</sup> *Benedicere* is used in the sense of *maledicere* four times in the first two chapters of the Book of Job. See, in Ducange, *Benedictio contraria appellatione*.

certum est adeo crudeles esse naturali ferocitate, ut nesciant malis hominum mitescere; quandoquidem quidam ex eis populi vescuntur humanis carnibus, quo ex facto Græca appellatione antropofagi vocantur. Talesque nationes abundant plurimæ infra Scythiam, prope Hyperboreos montes, quæ antichristum, ut legimus, secuturæ sunt ante omnes gentes, ut absque ulla miseratione pascantur hominum cruciatibus, qui characterem bestię noluerint circumferre in frontibus. Unde jam inquietando christicolas pacem cum eis habere nequeunt, maxime Dani, occidentis regionibus nimium vicini, qui circa eas piraticam exercent frequentibus latrociniiis. Ex eorum ergo genere prædicti duces Inguar et Hubba, Northanimbrorum primitus aggressi expugnare provinciam, gravi depopulatione totam pervagantur ex ordine. Quorum pessimis conatibus nullus resistere potuit ex provincialibus quin multarentur merita supernæ indignationis ira, agente ministro iniquitatis Hubba. Quem, præda facta, Inguar reliquit ibi crudelitatis socium, et a boreali parte orientali subito astans cum magna classe ad ejus quamdam civitatem<sup>†</sup> latenter appulit, quam ignaris civibus ingressus ignibus cremandam dedit. Pueros, senes cum junioribus,

the north comes all that is evil, as those have had too good cause to know, who through the spite of fortune and the fall of the die have experienced the barbarity of the races of the north. These, it is certain, are so cruel by the ferocity of their nature, as to be incapable of feeling for the ills of mankind; as is shown by the fact that some of their tribes use human flesh for food, and from the circumstance are known by the Greek name Anthropophagists. Nations of this kind abound in great numbers in Scythia, near the Hyperborean Mountains, and are destined, as we read, more than all other races, to follow Antichrist, and to batten without compunction on the agonies of men who refuse to bear on their foreheads the mark of the beast. Hence it results that they can observe no truce in harrying the worshippers of Christ, and this is true especially of the Danes, who, dwelling fatally near to the western regions, indulge continually in piratical raids upon them. Of this nation were the generals Inguar and Hubba, whom I have mentioned above. They set out in the first instance to attack the province of Northumbria, and overran the whole district from one end to the other, inflicting upon it the heaviest devastation. None of the

---

<sup>†</sup> Lynn seems to be meant.

in plateis civitatis obviam factos jugulavit, et matronalem seu virginalem pudicitiam ludibrio tradendam mandat. Maritus cum conjugē aut mortuus aut moribundus jacebat in limine; infans raptus a matris uberibus, ut major esset ejulatus, trucidabatur coram matris obtutibus. Furebat impius miles lustrata urbe ardendo ad flagitium, quo posset placere tyranno qui solo crudelitatis studio jusserat perire innoxios.

men old and young, whom he encountered in the streets of the city were killed; and he paid no respect to the chastity of wife or maid. Husband and wife lay dead or dying together on their thresholds; the babe snatched from its mother's breast was, in order to multiply the cries of grief, slaughtered before her eyes. An impious soldiery scoured the town in fury, athirst for every crime by which pleasure could be given to the tyrant who from sheer love of cruelty had given orders for the massacre of the innocent.

Cumque jam multitudine interfectorum Achimeniam rabiem impiissimus Inguar non tantum exsaturasset, quantum fatigatus in posterum distulisset, evocat quosdam plebeios quos suo gladio credidit esse indignos, ac ubi rex eorum tunc temporis vitam degeret, sollicitus perscrutator investigare studet. Nam ad eum fama pervenerat, quod idem rex gloriosus, videlicet Eadmundus, florenti ætate et robustis viribus bello per omnia esset strenuus; et idcirco festinabat passim tradere neci quos circumquaque poterat reperire, ne stipatus militum

inhabitants could resist these abominable onslaughts, but suffered the too well merited chastisement of the divine wrath through the instrumentality of Hubba the agent of iniquity. Having raked together their booty, Inguar left on the spot Hubba, his associate in cruelty, and approaching (East Anglia) suddenly with a great fleet, landed by stealth at a city in that region, entered it before the citizens were aware of his approach, and set it on fire. Boys, and

At length when the impious Inguar VI. had slain such numbers that he had, I will not say satisfied his Achimeneian madness, but from weariness deferred for a while its complete gratification, he summoned a few poor wretches whom he judged to be not worth killing, and by searching cross-examination of them endeavoured to ascertain whereabouts their king was at that time residing. It seems that a report had reached him that the glorious King Eadmund, who was in the prime of life, and in the fulness of vigour, was a keen soldier. On this account Inguar

agmine ad defensionem suorum posset rex sibi resistere. Qui morabatur eo tempore ab urbe<sup>†</sup> longius, in villa quæ lingua eorum Hægelisdun dicitur, a qua et silva vicina eodem nomine vocatur, existimans impiissimus, ut se rei veritas habebat, quia quantos suos satelles funestus præocuparet ad interitum perducere, tantos, si dimicandum esset, regius occursus in exercitum contraheret minus. Classem quoque absque valida manu deserere non audebat, quoniam, velut lupis vespertinis mos est clanculo ad plana descendere, repetitis quantocius noctis silvarum latibulis, sic consuevit eadem Danorum et Alanorum natio; cum semper studeat rapto vivere, numquam tamen indicta pugna palam contendit cum hoste, nisi præventa insidiis, ablata spe ad portus navium remeandi.

his lair in the woods, so it was the practice of the Danish and Alanic people, always intent upon a career of theft, never to risk an open and fair fight with their enemies, unless through being entangled in an ambush they had lost all hope of regaining their ships in harbour.

made it his business to cut off all the men whom he could find round about, so that the king, deprived of the support of a compact force for the defence of his kingdom, should be unable to offer effective resistance. Eadmund, it happened, was at that time staying at some distance from the city, in a township which in the native language is called Hægelisdun, from which also the neighbouring forest is called by the same name. The monster of impiety calculated, as was indeed the truth, that whatever number of the natives his murderous minions could succeed in destroying, so many the less would there be, if it came to a pitched battle, for the king to lead against his foes. Moreover, Inguar did not venture to leave his fleet without a strong guard; for, just as the wolf is accustomed to steal in the evening down to the plains, and to return with haste by night to

VII. Quapropter circumspectus plurimum, accito uno ex commilitonibus, eum ad regem huiusmodi curarum tumultibus expeditum dirigit, qui exploret quæ sit ei summa rei familiaris, impro-

Accordingly, with excessive caution he summoned one of his array, and despatched him to the king, who was devoid of any such harassing anxiety, with orders to ascertain the amount

<sup>†</sup> That is, from Bures (the "Burua" of Asser), the royal residence, which is close to the border of Essex.

visum, ut contigit, quærens subjugare tormentis, si ejus nollet obtemperare feralibus edictis. Ipse cum grandi comitatu succenturiatus lento pede subsequitur, et iniquæ legationis bajulo imperat, ut timoris periculo nudus ita incautum adoriatur. "Terra marique metuendus dominus noster Inguar, rex invictissimus, diversas sibi terras subjiciendo armis ad hujus provinciæ optatum litus cum multis navibus hyematurus appulit, atque idcirco mandat ut cum eo antiques thesauros et paternas divitias sub eo regnaturus divides. Cujus si aspernaris potentiam innumeris legionibus fultam, tuo præjudicio et vita indignus judicaberis et regno. Et quis tu, ut tantæ potentiæ insolenter audeas contradicere? Marinæ tempestatis procella nostris servit remigiis, nec removel a proposito directæ intentionis quibus nec ingens mugitus cœli nec crebri jactus fulminum unquam nocuerunt, favente gratia elementorum. Esto itaque cum tuis omnibus sub hoc imperatore maximo cui famulantur elementa, quoniam novit piissimus in omni negotio pa[r]cere subjectis et debellare superbos."<sup>†</sup>

of his possessions, hoping to take him unawares, as in fact happened, and to daunt him by tortures if he should refuse to comply with the murderous demands of the Dane. Inguar, accompanied by a great throng, followed in support with leisurely steps. He had given orders to the agent of this wicked mission, thus relieved of all apprehension of danger, to accost the unsuspecting king as follows:—"My august master, and unconquerable sovereign Inguar, a terror by land and sea, having by force of arms brought divers countries into subjection to himself, has landed with a great fleet on the desirable shores of this territory with the intention of firing his winter-quarters here, and in pursuance thereof commands you to share with him your ancient treasures, and your hereditary wealth, and to reign in future under him. But if you hold in contempt his power, which is fortified by innumerable battalions, it will be to your own prejudice, as you will be accounted unworthy to live or to reign. And who are you that you should presume to oppose so great a power? The storms and tempests of the deep subserve the purpose of

our fleets; and cannot turn from the accomplishment of their settled intentions men who, by grace and favour of the elements, have never suffered injury from

---

<sup>†</sup>Virg. Æn. vi.

the awful thunders of heaven, or from the oft-repeated lightning flash. Submit therefore with all your people to this greatest of monarchs whom the elements obey, since he is prepared in his great clemency in all that he undertakes

‘To spare the meek, while he o’erwhelms the proud.’”

VIII. Quo audito, rex sanctissimus alto cordis dolore ingemuit, et accito uno ex suis episcopis qui erat ei a secretis, quid super his respondere deberet consulit. Cumque ille, timidus pro vita regis, ad consentiendum plurimis hortaretur exemplis, rex obstupuit, et capitis defixo lumine in terras paululum conticuit, et sic demum ora resolvit. “O episcopo, vivi ad id pervenimus quod numquam veritissimus.<sup>†</sup> Ecce barbarus advena districto ense veteribus regni nostri colonis imminet, et quondam felix indigena suspirando gemens tacet. Et utinam impræsentiarum vivendo quique gement ne cruenta cæde perirent, quatenus patriæ dulcibus arvis etiam me occumbente superstites fierent, et ad pristinae felicitatis gloriam postmodum redirent.” Cui episcopus, “Quos,” inquit, “optas esse superstites patriæ, cum hostilis jam gladius vix aliquem reliquerit in plana urbe? Hebetatis securibus tuorum cadaveribus, te destitutum milite veniunt loris constringere. Quapropter,

On hearing this, the most saintly king groaned in profound grief of mind, and hailing one of his bishops, who was his confidential adviser, consulted with him as to the answer which was proper to be returned to the demands preferred. The bishop, alarmed for the safety of the king, used a number of arguments in favour of compliance; but the king, staggered by such advice, and fixing his eyes on the ground, was silent for a little while. Then finally he spoke his mind as follows: “Bishop, I have reached a point in my life of which I never had any apprehension. See! a barbarous stranger with drawn sword menaces the old occupants of my realm, and the once prosperous natives are reduced to sighs and groans and silence. Would that those who now live in dread of perishing by a bloody death might be spared to survive amid the beloved fields of their country, even though I should fall, and that they might in course of time be restored to the brightness of their former prosperity.” Here the bi-

---

<sup>†</sup>Virg. Ecl. ix.

rex, dimidium animæ meæ, nisi fugæ præsidio aut deditiois infausto patrocinio præcaveas, hie statim aderunt tortores, quorum nefando obsequio pœnam lues." "Hoc est," ait, "quod desidero, quod omnibus votis antepono, ne supersim meis fidelibus karissimis, quos cum liberis et uxoribus in lecto eorum animas furando perdidit pirata truculentus. Et quid suggeris? ut in extremis vitæ, desolatus meo satellite, fugiendo inferam crimen nostræ gloriæ. Semper delatoriæ accusationis calumpniam evitavi; numquam relicta militiæ probra sustinui, eo quod honestum mihi esset pro patria mori; et nunc ero mei voluntarius proditor, cui pro amissione carorum ipsa lux est fastidio? Omnipotens rerum arbiter testis assistit, quod me seu vivum seu mortuum nichil separabit a caritate Christi, cujus in confessione baptismatis suscepi annulum fidei abrenunciato Sathana et omnibus pompis ejus. Qua abrenuntiatione contigit, ut ad laudem et gloriam æternæ Trinitatis tertio mererer consecrari, delibutus ob compendium perennis vitæ sanctificati crismatis perunctione. Primo quidem accepta stola lavacri salutaris, secundo per confirmationem exhibitam majusculo pontificali signaculo, tertio ubi vestra et totius populi communi acclamatione usus sum hac regni perfunctoria potestate. Sic-

shop interposed: "How can you speak of survivors in the land, seeing that the enemy's sword has left scarcely one alive in the whole city? Their axes are blunted with the slaughter of your subjects; you are left without a guard, and they will bind you fast with thongs. And therefore, my sovereign, dear to me as my soul, unless you seek safety in flight, or have recourse to the ill-omened alternative of surrender, I fear the tormentors will soon arrive, and you will forfeit your life through the unholy execution of their orders." "That," answered the king, "is what I desire; that is my dearest wish, not to survive my loyal and dear subjects, who have been bereft of their lives and massacred with their children and their wives as they lay in bed, by a bloodthirsty brigand. And what do you advise? that in life's extremity, bereft of my comrades, I should besmirch my fair fame by taking to flight? I have always avoided the calumnious accusations of the informer; never have I endured the opprobrium of fleeing from the battlefield, realising how glorious it would be for me to die for my country; and now I will of my own free will surrender myself, for the loss of those dear to me has made light itself hateful. The Almighty disposer of events is present as my witness that, whether I live or die, nothing shall se-

que unguento mysticæ consecrationis tripliciter irroratus, Anglorum reipublicæ decrevi plus prodesse quam præesse, aspersione subdere colla jugo nisi divino servitio. Nunc simulata benivolentia prætendit callidus suæ machinationis muscipulam, qua servum Christi irretiri deliberat, maxime cum promittit quod nobis largitas divina concessit. Vitam indulget, qua necdum careo; regnum promittit quod habeo; opes conferre cupit, quibus non egeo. Pro his ergo nunc incipiam servire duobus dominis, qui me sub Christo solo vivere, sub Christo solo regnare, præsentibus palatinis devoverim?"

with the ointment of mystic consecration, I have determined to be the benefactor rather than the ruler of the English Commonwealth, in scorning to bow my neck to any yoke but that of the service of God. It is with a mere pretence of good-will that my cunning foe now spreads the meshes of his machinations, by which he calculates on ensnaring the servant of Christ, above all when he promises that which the divine bounty has already conferred upon me. He allows me life, for which I no longer care; he promises me a kingdom, that I already possess; he would bestow on me riches, of which I have no need. Is it for these things that I am now to begin serving two masters—I who have dedicated myself before my whole court to live and to rule under Christ alone?"

VIII. Tunc conversus ad eum qui de conditione regni locuturus ab impiissimo Inguar fuerat missus, "Madefactus," inquit, "cruore meorum mortis supplicio dignus extiteras; sed plane Christi mei exemplum secutus nolo puras

parate me from the love of Christ, the ring of whose faith I took on me in the sacrament of baptism, when I renounced Satan and all his vanities. And by that renunciation it ensued that I gained a triple title to be devoted to the praise and glory of the Eternal Trinity, having been cleansed with a view to the reward of endless life by the anointing of the consecrated chrism. Firstly, to wit, I put on the robes proper for the font of healing; in the second place, I received confirmation with the larger episcopal signet; and thirdly, by general acclaim of yourself and the people at large, I acquired the sovereign power of this realm. And thus bedewed in threefold manner

Then, turning to the messenger whom the impious Inguar had sent to announce the terms on which his kingdom might be retained, Eadmund exclaimed: "Reeking as you are with the blood of my countrymen, you



commaculare manus, qui pro ejus nomine, si ita contigerit, libenter paratus sum vestris telis occumbere. Ideo pernici gradu rediens festinus domino tuo hæc responsa perfer quantocius. Bene, fili diaboli, patrem tuum imitaris, qui superbiendo intumescens cœlo corrui, et mendacio suo humanum genus involvere gestiens, plurimos pœnæ suæ obnoxios fecit. Cujus sectator præcipuus, me nec minis terrere præuales, nec blandæ perditionis lenociniis illectum decipies, quem Christi institutis non inermem repperies. Thesaurus et divitias quas nobis hactenus contulit propitia divinitas, sumat consumatque tua insatiabilis aviditas, quoniam etsi hoc corpus caducum fragile confringas velut vas fictile, vera libertas animi numquam tibi vel ad momentum suberit. Honestius enim est perpetuam defendere libertatem, si non armis saltem jugulis, quam reposcere amissam lacrimosis querimoniis, quoniam pro altero gloriosum est mori, pro altero vero opponitur contumacia servilis. Quippe servus, quasumque domini conditiones accepit, acceptas servare convenit; si eas quamlibet iniquas respuit, reus majestatis adjudicatur servilibus suppliciis. Sed esto; gravis est hujus servitutis usus; at gravior exulceratio quæ solet nasci ex hujusmodi infortunio; siquidem, ut noverunt qui

might justly be doomed to death; but to speak plainly, I would follow the example of Christ my Lord, and refrain from staining my pure hands; and for his name's sake, if the need arise, I am willing and glad to perish by your weapons. Therefore return as fast as you can at once to your lord, and take forthwith this message to him: 'Son of the devil, well do you imitate your father, who through his swelling pride fell from heaven, and striving to involve mankind in his falseness, rendered multitudes liable to his punishment. You, his chief follower, are powerless to terrify me by threats, nor shall you deceive me with the snares and sophistries that inveigle to destruction, for you will not find me lacking the armour of Christian principles. As for the treasures and the wealth, which till now God's favour has bestowed on me, take and squander them as your insatiable greed may prompt, since, even though you should break in pieces this frail and perishable body, like a potter's vessel, my soul, which is truly free, will never for a moment submit to you. For it is more honourable to champion the cause of perpetual freedom, if not with arms, at any rate with life, than to spend tearful complaints in redemanding it when lost, since in the one case death is glorious, but in the other the opposition is but

frequentius ratiocinando forensibus causis intersunt, ex repugnantibus facta complexionis consequentia, certum est quia, si libertas petitur, proculdubio dominus suo contemptu læditur. Idcirco, seu sponte seu invitus, de carcere suo meus ad cœlum evolet liber spiritus, nulla emancipationis aut abalienationis specie contaminatus, quia regem diminutum capite nunquam, Danus, videbis ad triumphum supervivere. Sollicitas me spe regni, interfectis omnibus meis, ac si mihi tam dira sit cupido regnandi, ut velim præesse domibus vacuis habitatore nobili et pretiosa suppellectili. Ut cœpit tua sæva feritas, post famulos regem solio diripiat, trahat, exspuat, colaphis cædat, ad ultimum jugulet. Rex regum ista miserans videt, et secum ut credo regnaturum ad æternam vitam transferet. Unde noveris quod pro amore vitæ temporalis Christianus rex Eadmundus non se subjiciet pagano duci, nisi prius effectus fueris compos nostræ religionis, malens esse signifer in castris æterni regis.”

slaughter of all my people, as if I were possessed by so mad a lust of rule, that I could have the heart to reign over houses emptied of their noble inhabitants: their precious garniture. Let your savage ferocity go on as it has begun: after the subjects let the king be snatched from his throne, dragged away, spat upon, struck and buffeted, and finally butchered. The King of kings sees all that with compassion, and will, I am confident, translate the victim to reign with him in life eternal. Know, therefore, that for the love of this earthly life Eadmund, the

the rebellion of slaves. That is to say, a slave, whatever terms he may have accepted at the hands of his master, is bound to observe them as he accepted them; if he repudiates them, iniquitous though they may be, he is guilty of treason, and is liable to the punishment of a slave. But enough; grievous as may be the burden of such a servitude, still more grievous is the rankling sore which misfortune of this kind usually begets, seeing that, as is within the knowledge of those who, as advocates, are practised in the discussion of cases in the law-courts, when a conclusion is deduced from repugnant circumstances, it is certain that, if freedom be aimed at, the tyrant is undoubtedly prejudiced by contempt of himself. Consequently, willingly or unwillingly, let my free spirit wing its way from its prison to heaven, untainted by any appearance of sale or surrender; for be assured, Dane, you shall never see me, a king, survive the loss of freedom to adorn your triumph. You ply me with expectations of a continued reign, after the

Christian king, will not submit to a heathen chief, unless you first become a convert to our religion; he would rather be a standard-bearer in the camp of the Eternal King.’”

Vix sanctus vir verba compleverat, et renuntiaturus miles pedem domo extulerat, cui ecce Inguar obvius jubet breviloquio ut utatur, illi pandens per omnia arcana regis ultima. Quæ ille dum exequitur, imperat tyrannus circumfundi omnem turbam suorum exterius, solumque regem teneant, quem suis legibus rebellem jam cognoverat. Tunc sanctus rex Eadmundus in palatio, ut membrum Christi, projectis armis capitur, et vinculis arctioribus arctatus constringitur, atque innocens sistitur ante impium ducem quasi Christus ante Pilatum præsidem, cupiens ejus sequi vestigia, qui pro nobis immolatus est hostia. Vinctus itaque multis modis illuditur, et tandem, fustigatus acri instantia, perducitur ad quamdam arborem vicinam, ad quam religatus flagris dirissimis diutissime vexatur, nec vincitur, semper Christum invocando flebilibus vocibus. Quare adversarii in furorem versi, quasi ludendo ad signum eum toto corpore sagittarum telis confodiunt, multiplicantes acerbiter cruciatus crebris telorum jactibus, quoniam vulnera vulneribus imprimebant, dum jacula jaculis locum dabant. Sicque factum est ut spiculorum terebratis

The saintly man had but just ended X.  
his speech, and the soldier taken his departure from the palace to carry back the answer, when, behold! Inguar met him, and bade him waste no words in declaring the final purport of the king's reply. As the messenger obeyed this behest, the tyrant ordered the crowd of his attendants to form a ring round the place, and to take the king alone prisoner, as showing palpable defiance of the conditions laid down. Then the holy King Eadmund was taken in his palace, as a member of Christ, his weapons thrown aside, and was pinioned and tightly bound with chains, and in his innocence was made to stand before the impious general, like Christ before the governor Pilate, and eager to follow in the footsteps of Him who was sacrificed as a victim for us. And so in chains he was mocked in many ways, and at length, being savagely beaten, he was brought to a tree in the neighbourhood, tied to it, and for a long while tortured with terrible lashes. But his constancy was unbroken, while without ceasing he called on Christ with broken voice. This roused the fury of his enemies, who, as if practising at a target, pierced

aculeis circumfossus palpitans hor-  
reret, velut asper hericius, aut spinis  
hirtus carduus, in passione similis Se-  
bastiano egregio martyri. Cumque nec  
sic Inguar furcifer eum lanistis assen-  
sum præbere conspiceret, Christum  
inclamantem jugiter, lictori mandat  
protinus ut amputet caput ejus. Ille  
seminecem, cui adhuc vitalis calor  
palpitabat in tepido pectore, ut vix  
posset subsistere, avellit cruento sti-  
piti festinus, avulsumque, reiectis  
costarum latebris præ punctionibus  
crebris, ac si raptum eculo aut sævis  
tortum ungulis, jubet caput extendere  
quod semper fuerat insigne regali dia-  
demate. Cumque staret, mitissimus,  
ut aries de toto grege electus, volens  
felici commercio mutare vitam sæ-  
culo, divinis intentus beneficiis, jam  
recreabatur visione internæ lucis, qua  
in agone positus satiari cupiebat atten-  
tius. Unde inter verba orationis eum  
arrepto pugione spiculator uno ictu  
decapitando hac luce privavit. Atque  
ita, duodecimo kalendas Decembris,  
Deo gratissimum holocaustum Ead-  
mundus, igne passionis examinatus,  
cum palma victoriæ et corona justitiæ,  
rex et martyr intravit senatum curiæ  
coelestis.

his whole body with arrow-spikes,  
augmenting the severity of his tor-  
ment by frequent discharges of their  
weapons, and inflicting wound upon  
wound, while one javelin made room  
for another. And thus, all haggled over  
by the sharp points of their darts, and  
scarce able to draw breath, he actually  
bristled with them, like a prickly hed-  
gehog or a thistle fretted with spines,  
resembling in his agony the illustrious  
martyr Sebastian. But when it was ma-  
de apparent to the villainous Inguar  
that not even by these means could  
the king be made to yield to the agents  
of his cruelty, but that he continued to  
call upon the name of Christ, the Dane  
commanded the executioner to cut  
off his head forthwith. The king was  
by this time almost lifeless, though  
the warm lifestream still throbbed in  
his breast, and he was scarcely able to  
stand erect. In this plight he was hasti-  
ly wrenched from the blood-stained  
stem, his ribs laid bare by numberless  
gashes, as if he had been put to the  
torture of the rack, or had been torn  
by savage claws, and was bidden to  
stretch forth the head which had ever  
been adorned by the royal diadem.  
Then, as he stood in all his meekness,  
like a ram chosen out of the whole  
flock, and desirous of hastening by a  
happy exchange this life for eternity,  
absorbed as he was in the mercies of

God, he was refreshed by the vision of the light within, for the satisfaction of which he earnestly yearned in his hour of agony. Thus, while the words of prayer were still on his lips, the executioner, sword in hand, deprived the king of life, striking off his head with a single blow. And so, on the 20th November, as an offering to God of sweetest savour, Eadmund, after he had been tried in the fire of suffering, rose with the palm of victory and the crown of righteousness, to enter as king and martyr the assembly of the court of heaven.

Talique exitu crucis mortificationem, quam jugiter in suo corpore rex pertulit, Christi Domini sui secutus vestigia consummavit. Ille quidem, purus sceleris, in columna ad quam vinctus fuit sanguinem, non pro se sed pro nobis, flagellorum suorum signa reliquit; iste pro adipiscenda gloria immarcessibili cruento stipite similes poenas dedit. Ille integer vitæ ob detergendam rubiginem nostrorum facinorum sustinuit benignissimus immanium clavorum acerbiter in palmis et pedibus; iste propter amorem nominis Domini toto corpore gravibus sagittis horridus, et medullitus asperitate tormentorum dilaniatus, in confessione patienter perstitit, quam ad ultimum accepta capitali sententia finivit. Cujus corpus

Thus in his departure from life, the king, following the footsteps of Christ his master, consummated that sacrifice of the Cross which he had endured continually in the flesh. Just as Christ, free from all taint of sin, left on the column to which he was bound, not for himself, but for us, the blood which was the mark of his scourging, so Eadmund incurred a like penalty bound to the blood-stained tree, for the sake of gaining a glory that fades not away. Christ, whose life was without stain, suffered in his great benignity the bitter pain of unmerciful nails in his hands and feet in order to cleanse away the foulness of our sins; Eadmund, for the love of the holy Name, with his whole body bristling wi-

ita truncum et aculeis hirsutum relinquentes, cum suo auctore Dani, ministri diaboli, illud caput sanctum, quod non impinguaverat peccatoris oleum, sed certi mysterii sacramentum, in silvam cui vocabulum est Haglesdun recedentes asportaverunt, ac inter densa veprium fruticeta longius projectum occuluerunt, id omni sagacitate elaborantes, ne a Christianis, quos vix paucos reliquerant, sacratissimum corpus martyris cum capite pro tumultantium modulo honestæ traderetur sepulturæ.

Huic autem spectaculo tam horribili quidam nostræ religionis delitescendo interfuit, quem subtractum, ut credimus, paganorum gladiis divina providentia ad manifestandum hujus rei indaginem reservavit, licet omnino ignoraverit quid de capite factum esset, nisi quod cum eo carnifices Danos interiorem silvam petere conspexisset. Quamobrem, quantulumcumque

th grievous arrows, and lacerated to the very marrow by the acutest tortures, steadfastly persisted in the avowal of his faith which in the end he crowned by undergoing the doom of death. The Danes, with their instigator, instruments of the devil, left his body mutilated, as has been described, and transfixed with javelins, while the sacred head, which had been anointed not with the oil of sinners, but with the sacramental chrism of mystery, was carried by them as they retired into a wood, the name of which is Haglesdun, and was thrown as far as possible among the dense thickets of brambles, and so hidden; the Danes contriving this with the greatest cunning, so that the Christians, but few of whom were left alive, should not be able to commit to such decent burial their limited means of interment would allow, the sanctified body of the martyr conjoined with the head.

Of this appalling scene there was present as a spectator, though in hiding, one of our religion, who was rescued, as I believe, by God's providence from the swords of the heathen, and so preserved to bring to light the traces of these events, although he was entirely ignorant what had been done with the head, beyond the fact that he had seen the Danes betaking themselves

reddita ecclesiis pace, cœperunt Christiani de latibulis consurgere, diligenti inquisitione satagentes ut caput sui regis et martyris inventum reliquo corpore unirent, et juxta suam facultatem condigno honore recondere. Siquidem, paganis abeuntibus et depopulationi quoquo locorum operam dantibus, illud corpus sanctissimum adhuc sub divo positum facillime est repertum in eodem campo ubi rex occubuit, completo cursu sui certaminis. Quo, propter antiquam beneficiorum memoriam et ingenitam regis clementiam, populi undique confluentes, cœperunt mœsto animo graviter ferre quod caruissent tanta corporis portione. Quorum animis superna inspiravit benignitas, postquam audierunt illius verba utilia, qui tantæ visionis, ut dictum est, particeps extiterat, ut collecta plurima multitudo quaquaversum per invia silvarum experirentur, si ad id loci devenire contingeret, quo viri sancti caput jaceret. Pro certo etenim omnibus vere sapientibus inerat, quod alienæ sectæ cultores invidendo nostræ fidei sustulissent caput martyris, quod non longius infra densitatem saltus abscondissent, aut vili cespite obrutum avibus aut feris devorandum reliquissent. Cumque inito consilio omnes pari affectu ad id concurrerent, decreverunt ut cornibus vel tubis ductilibus singuli contenti

with it into the depths of the wood. Accordingly, when peace of some sort had been restored to the churches, the Christians began to emerge from their hiding-places, and to make diligent and busy search with the intention of joining the head of their king and martyr, when found, to the rest of the body, and laying them to rest with due honour according to their means. And so, on the departure of the heathen, who engaged in the work of devastation elsewhere, the sacred body, still lying above ground, was with no difficulty found in the very field where the king died, when he finished the course of his trial. Thither, spurred by the recollection of former benefits, and of the gentle nature of their king, the populace, coming together from all directions, began with rueful hearts to lament the loss of so important a part of the body. Inspiration came by benign suggestion from above; and, after listening to the helpful narrative of the witness who had, as I have said, been a witness of the dreadful scene, they united in great numbers to institute a search in every part of the wood's recesses, in the hope of reaching by hazard the spot where the head of their holy hero was lying. All who were possessed of true insight were confident that the Danes, as worshippers of strange gods, had out of

essent, quatenus circumcirca pervagantes vocibus aut tubarum strepitu sibi mutuo innuerent, ne aut lustrata repeterent aut non lustrata desererent.

spite to our faith abstracted the head of the martyr, which they had probably hidden not very far away in the dense thicket, and had left concealed by the coarse undergrowth a prey to birds and beasts. A council was held, and all unanimously agreed upon a plan; it was decided that each individual should be accoutred with horn or pipe, so that the searchers, in their explorations hither and thither, could by calling or by the noise of their instruments signal one to another, and so avoid going twice over the same ground, or missing some localities altogether.

Quod ut factum est, res dictu mirabilis et sæculis inaudita contigit. Quippe caput sancti regis, longius remotum a suo corpore, prorupit in vocem absque fibrarum opitulatione, aut arteriarum præcordiali munere. Vispillonum sane more pluribus pedetentim invia perlustrantibus, cum jam posset audiri loquens, ad voces se invicem cohortantium, et utpote socii ad socium alternatim clamantium, Ubi es? illud respondebat, designando locum, patria lingua dicens, *Her, her, her*. Quod interpretatum Latinus sermo exprimit, *Hic, hic, hic*. Nec umquam eadem repetendo clamare destitit, quoad omnes ad se perduxit. Palpitabat mortuæ linguæ plectrum infra mœnia fau-

When they carried out this plan, a thing happened marvellous to relate, and unheard of in the course of ages. The head of the holy king, far removed from the body to which it belonged, broke into utterance without assistance from the vocal chords, or aid from the arteries proceeding from the heart. A number of the party, like corpse-searchers, were gradually examining the out-of-the-way parts of the wood, and when the moment had arrived at which the sound of the voice could be heard, the head, in response to the calls of the search-party mutually encouraging one another, and as comrade to comrade crying alternately "Where are you?" indicated



cium, manifestans in se Verbigenæ magnalia, qui rudenti asellæ humana compegit verba, ut increparet prophetæ insipientiam. Cui miraculo rerum conditor illud annexuit, dum cœlesti thesauro insolitum custodem dedit. Quippe immanis lupus eo loco divina miseratione est repertus, qui illud sacrum caput inter brachia complexus procumbebat humi, excubias impendens martyri. Nec sibi depositum permisit lædere quampiam bestiarum, quod inviolabile solo tenus prostratus oblita voracitate servabat attentius. Quod stupefacti videntes qui confluxerant, beatissimum regem et martyrem Eadmundum illi viro desideriorum<sup>1</sup> judicaverunt meritis similem, qui inter esurientium rictus leonum illæsus sprexit minas insidiantium.

the place where it lay by exclaiming in their native tongue, Here! Here! Here! In Latin the same meaning would be rendered by Hic! Hic! Hic! And the head never ceased to repeat this exclamation, till all were drawn to it. The chords of the dead man's tongue vibrated within the passages of the jaws, thus displaying the miraculous power of Him who was born of the Word, and endowed the braying ass with human speech, so that it rebuked the madness of the prophet. And to this miracle the Creator of the world added another by attaching an unwonted guardian to the heavenly treasure. In fact, a monstrous wolf was by God's mercy found in that place, embracing the holy head between its paws, as it lay at full length on the ground, and thus acting as sentinel to the martyr. Nor did it suffer any animal whatever to injure its charge, but, forgetful of its natural voracity, preserved the head from all harm with the utmost vigilance, lying outstretched on the earth. This was witnessed with astonishment by the crowd which had assembled, and they recognised in the most blessed king and martyr Eadmund a worthy parallel to that enviable man who, unharmed among the gaping jaws of hungry lions, laugh-

---

<sup>1</sup>Daniel vi.

hed to scorn the threats of those who had plotted his destruction.

Assumentes ergo unanimi devotione quam invenerant inestimabilis pretii margaritam, cum profusis præ gaudio lacrimarum imbribus retulerunt ad suum corpus, benedicentes Deum in hymnis et laudibus, prosequente usque ad locum sepulcri lupo, earundem reliquiarum custode et bajulo. Qui eis a tergo imminens, et quasi pro perditio pignore lugens, cum neminem etiam irritatus læderet, nemini importunus existeret, nota dilectæ solitudinis secreta illæsus repetiit, nec ulterius in illis locis lupo specie tam terribilis apparuit. Quo tandem recedente, cum summa diligentia et omni sagacitatis studio aptantes quibus creditum est caput corpori sancto pro tempore, tradiderunt utrumque pariter junctum competenti mausoleo. Qua etiam, ædificata vili opere desuper basilica, multis annis requievit humatus, donec sedatis omnimodo bellorum incendiis et valida tempestate persecutionis, cœpit respirare religiosa pietas fidelium, erepta de pressuris tribulationum. Quæ, ubi tempus opportunum invenit, devotionem quam circa beatissimum regem et martyrem Eadmundum habuit, operum exhibitione multipliciter propalavit. Idem namque sanctus, sub

Lifting up, therefore, with concordant devotion the pearl of inestimable price which they had discovered, and shedding floods of tears for joy, they brought back the head to its body, blessing God with hymns and lauds, while the wolf, which was the guardian and bearer of the relic, followed them to the place of entombment, and keeping close behind them, though seemingly grieved for the loss of the pledge it had had in keeping, neither did harm to any one though provoked, nor gave trouble to any one, but again betook itself unharmed to the familiar seclusion of its congenial solitude; and never afterwards was there seen in that neighbourhood any wolf so terrible in appearance. When the wolf had retired, those who were intrusted with the duty, with the utmost care and with all possible zeal and skill provisionally fitted the head to the sacred body, and committed the two joined together to a becoming sepulchre. And there they built over the grave a chapel of rude construction, in which the body rested for many years, until the conflagration of war and the mighty storms of persecution were over, and the religious piety of the faithful began to revive, upon relief from

vili tugurio sanctificatæ domus, cuius esset apud Deum meriti crebris manifestabat miraculorum signis. Quibus rebus permota ejusdem provinciæ multitudo, non solum vulgi sed etiam nobilium, in villa regia quæ lingua Anglorum Bedrices-gueord dicitur, Latina vero Bedrici-curtis vocatur, construxit permixtam miro ligneo tabulatu ecclesiam, ad quam eum, ut decebat, transtulit cum magna gloria.

Sed, mirum dictu! cum illud pretiosum corpus martyris putrefactum putaretur ob diuturnum spatium transacti temporis, ita sanum et incolume repertum est, ut non dicam redintegratum et compactum corpori, sed omnino in eo nichil vulneris, nichil cicatricis apparuerit. Sicque cum reverentia nominatus sanctus rex et martyr Eadmundus, integer et viventi similimus, ad prædictum locum est translatus, ubi adhuc in eadem forma expectat beatæ resurrectionis gaudia re-

the pressure of tribulation. And so, when a seasonable opportunity was found, they displayed in many ways the devotion which they cherished in regard to the blessed king and martyr Eadmund. They were stirred by the occurrence of marvellous works. For the Saint, from beneath the lowly roof of his consecrated abode, made manifest by frequent miraculous signs the magnitude of his merits in the sight of God. These events aroused great numbers of the inhabitants of that province, high and low alike; and in the royal town which, in the English tongue, is named Bedrices-gueord, but in Latin is called Bedrici-curtis, they erected a church of immense size, with storeys admirably constructed of wood, and to this they translated him with great magnificence, as was due.

But, marvellous to tell, whereas it was supposed that the precious body of the martyr would have mouldered to dust in the long interval of time which had elapsed, it was found to be so sound and whole that it would be out of place to speak of the head having been restored to and united with the body, for there was absolutely no trace apparent of wound or scar. And so the king and martyr Eadmund was with reverence pronounced to be a Saint, and was translated whole and entire,

promissa. Tantum in ejus collo ob signum martyrii rubet una tenuissima ruga in modum fili coccinei, sicut testari erat solita quædam beatæ recordationis fœmina, Oswen vocabulo dicta, quæ paulo ante hæc nostra moderna tempora, apud ejus sacrosanctum tumulum jejuniis et orationibus vacans, multa transegit annorum cur[r]icula. Cui venerabili fæminæ aut divina revelatione aut nimia devotione mos inolevit, ut patefacto beati martyris sepulcro, quotannis in Dominica cœna, ejus attendendo præcideret capillos et ungues. Quæ omnia diligenter colligens et in capsella recondens non neglexit, quamdiu vixit, excolere mira affectione, posita super altare ejusdem ecclesiæ, ubi adhuc reservantur debita veneratione.

and wearing every semblance of life, to the place above mentioned, where to this day without change of form he awaits the covenanted felicity of a blessed resurrection. One thing only is to be noticed: round his neck, as an ensign of his martyrdom, there was seen an extremely thin red crease, like a scarlet thread, as was frequently attested by a certain woman of blessed memory called Oswen, who shortly before these recent times of ours passed many years in succession near his consecrated tomb, absorbed in fastings and prayers. This venerable woman, either from some divine intuition, or from excess of devotion, made it her constant practice to open the sepulchre of the blessed martyr year by year, at the anniversary of the Lord's Supper, and to trim and pare his hair and nails. These relics, one and all, she studiously collected, and stored in a casket; nor did she ever omit, as long as she lived, to cherish them with an affection that was wonderful, having placed them on the altar of the church to which I have referred. And there they are still preserved with due veneration.

Sed et beatæ memoriæ Theodredus, ejusdem provinciæ religiosus episcopus, qui propter meritorum prærogativam bonus appellabatur, quod de

There is, moreover, the evidence of Theodred of blessed memory, the pious bishop of the province, whose good deserts challenged for him the

in corruptione sancti regis diximus tali ordine est expertus. Cum, ut narrare adorsi sumus, præfato loco martyris tumulationi congruo a quibusque religiosius multa conferrentur donaria et ornamenta, in auro et argento pretiosissimo, quidam malignæ mentis homines, omnis boni immemores, aggressi sunt sub nocturno silentio eandem infringere basilicam latrocinandi studio. Fuerunt autem octo qui absque ulla reverentia sancti decreverant satisfacere suæ vesanæ voluntati, capiendo furtim omnia quæcumque invenissent sibi utilia infra ejusdem monasterii septa. Unde sumptis machinis et quibuslibet utensilibus quibus ad id perficiendum habebant opus, quadam nocte aggrediuntur præmeditatum facinus, et stantes in atrio ecclesiæ diverse conatu unusquisque conceptæ instat nequitia. Quorum alius postibus scalam applicat, ut per insertam fenestram se ingerat; alius cum lima aut fabrili malleo instat seræ aut pessulo; alii cum vangis et lignibus suffossionem parietis machinantur. Sicque disposito opere, cum singuli certatim insudant pro virium facultate, sanctus martyr eos ligat in ipso conamine, ut nec pedem loco possent movere, nec arreptum officium deserere, sed alius cum sua scala penderet sublimis in aere, alius palam incurvus fossor fieret, qui ad

designation of "the good." He verified, as is set out below, the fact which I have stated of the incorruption of the sainted king. Divers persons in their piety had contributed, as I had begun to relate, a number of offerings and ornaments in gold and silver of great value, to the place above mentioned as having been selected for the entombment of the martyr, when some men of depraved minds, and utterly forgetful of what was right, attempted under cover and in the silence of night to break into the temple of the king for the purpose of robbery. There were eight of these marauders who, totally wanting in reverence for the Saint, had determined to gratify their crazy cupidity by the theft of everything which they might find of use to themselves within the precincts of the monastery. They furnished themselves accordingly with whatever implements and tools they had that would be serviceable for the execution of this work, and one night attempted to carry out their premeditated crime. Posted in the fore-court of the church, each member of the gang applied himself in his several capacity to his share of the concerted outrage. Thus one laid a ladder to the door-posts, in order to climb through the window; another was engaged with a file, or a smith's hammer, on the bars and bolts; others

id opus furtivus venisset. Interea quidam matriculariorum qui infra basilicam jacebat, somno excitus, lecto procumbebat invitus, quem martyris potentia suo conatu vinxerat, ne suis obviis factis mirabilibus sonus fragoris creber custodis pulsaret aures interius. Sed quid dicam, non posse surgere, quando nec in vocem poterat erumpere? Tandem mane adhuc persistentes fures incepto operi comprehensi a pluribus traduntur vinculis arctioribus, et tandem prædicti sancti episcopi Theodredi iudicio subduntur. Qui impremeditatus sententiam dedit, quam se dedisse postea omni tempore vitæ suæ pœnituit. Nam omnes simul iussit affigi patibulis, eo quod ausi fuissent atrium sancti Eadmundi martyris furtive ingredi; non reducens ad memoriam quod Dominus per prophetam admonet,<sup>296</sup> “Eos qui ducuntur ad mortem eruere ne cesses;” factum quoque Helisei<sup>297</sup> prophetæ, qui latrunculos de Samaria pastos pane et aqua remisit ad propria, dicens regi volenti percutere ilico, quod non eos cepisset in gladio et arcu suo; Apostoli<sup>298</sup> etiam præceptum, quo dicit, Sæcularia negotia si habueritis, contemptibiles qui sunt in ecclesia, id est, viros sæculares, consti-

with shovels and mattocks endeavoured to undermine the walls. The work being thus distributed, whilst they vied one with another in the most strenuous exertions, the holy martyr bound them fast in the midst of their efforts, so that they could neither stir from the spot nor abandon the task upon which they had entered; one on his ladder hung aloft in mid-air, another was displayed to view with his back bent in digging, who had stolen unobserved to the guilty deed. Meanwhile, one of the staff of attendants who was sleeping within the temple, though aroused from his slumbers, was kept a prisoner in his bed, restrained in his endeavour to rise by the martyr’s power, so that no sound or noisy echo should reach the ears of the custodian within, and so impede the manifestation of the Saint’s miraculous power. But I understate the facts when I say that the man could not rise, seeing that he could not so much as utter a word. At length morning came, and then the thieves, still persevering with the work which they had begun, were arrested by a number of people, and, after being firmly secured by chains, were finally committed to the above-mentioned holy bishop Theo-

<sup>296</sup> Proverbs xxiv. 11.

<sup>297</sup> 2 Kings vi. 22.

<sup>298</sup> 1 Cor. vi. 4.

tuite ad judicandum. Unde canonica auctoritas prohibet ne quis episcopus aut quilibet de clero delatoris fungatur officio, quoniam satis dedecet ministros vitæ cœlestis assensum præbere in mortem cujuslibet hominis. Quamobrem prædictus episcopus in se reversus graviter indoluit, et sibi pœnitentiam indicens diutius se in gravibus lamentis dedit. Qua peracta pœnitentia, populos suæ dioceseos mandat, mandando convocat, convocando suppliciter persuadet, ut triduo jejunio a se divinæ indignationis iracundiam removeant, removendo avertant, quatenus sacrificio spiritus contribulati placatus Dominus illi suam gratiam concederet, qua corpus beati martyris tangere et lavare auderet; qui, licet tantis virtutibus floreret in mundo, vili tamen et sibi incongruo continebatur mausoleo. Factumque est, et illud sanctissimi regis corpus ante dilaceratum et truncum, ita ut jam retulimus, unitum et incorruptum repperit, tetigit, lavit, et rursum novis et optimis vestibus indutum ligneo locello reposuit, benedicens Deum qui mirabilis est in sanctis suis et gloriosus in omnibus operibus suis.

dred for trial. The bishop, through inadvertence, pronounced upon them a sentence of which he afterwards regretted the infliction for the whole of his life-time. In fact, he ordered the whole gang to be hanged together, because, for the purpose of theft, they had dared to invade the precincts of St. Eadmund the Martyr. But he failed to keep in mind the monition of God through his prophet, "Cease not to deliver those who are appointed to die," and the action of Elisha the Prophet, who fed the robbers of Samaria with bread and water, and sent them to their own homes, saying to the king who was minded to slay them on the spot, that he had not taken them by means of his sword and his bow; and again, the injunction of the Apostle, in which he says, "If then ye have judgments of things pertaining to this life, set them to judge who are least esteemed in the Church," meaning thereby laymen. This is the origin of the canonical precept which forbids a bishop or any one in holy orders to discharge the function of an informer, as it is highly unbecoming that the ministers of the heavenly life should yield assent to the death of any man whatever. Consequently the bishop aforesaid, when he reflected on what he had done, was struck with profound remorse, and awarded penance

against himself, remaining for a long while engrossed in deep contrition. At the end of his penance he issued a proclamation to the inhabitants of his diocese, and by the proclamation he convened them, and in convening, he begged and entreated them, by means of a three days' fast, to remove and avert from him the divine indignation and wrath, to the end that the Lord, being appeased by the sacrifice of a troubled spirit, should accord him grace, by which he might venture to touch and wash the body of the blessed martyr, who, though he blossomed with so many virtues when in the world, was nevertheless enshrined in a poor sepulchre, inadequate to his deserts. And so it was done; and the bishop found the body of the most holy king, which before had been lacerated and mutilated, as I have already related, whole and incorrupt; he handled it, he washed it, he clothed it afresh with new robes of the best, and replaced it in a wooden coffin, blessing God, who is wonderful in His saints and glorious in all His works.

Nec piget referre de quodam magnæ  
potentiæ viro, Leofstano vocabulo, qui  
juvenilis ætatis impetum non refræ-  
nans ad id flagitii lasciviendo proru-  
pit, ut sibi quadam singularis potentiæ  
auctoritate præciperet ostendi corpus

I shall not, I hope, tire my readers if  
I mention the fate of a man of great  
position named Leofstan, who, una-  
ble to curb the impetuosity of youth,  
was carried to such a pitch of wanton  
wickedness that he demanded, in the



tanti martyris. Cumque inhiberetur a pluribus, maxime tamen a suis fidelibus, prævaluit ejus imperium, quoniam propter arrogantiam suæ nobilitatis omnibus erat terrori. Reseratoque locello astitit, aspexit, et in eodem momento in amentiam versum tradidit illum Dominus in reprobum sensum, ac pœna sua didicit quia præsumpsisset quod non licuit. Quod audiens pater ejus, vir religiosus admodum, cui erat Ælfgar vocabulum, horruit facinus flagitiosissimum, et martyri gratias retulit, filiumque a se removit. Qui tandem ad summam inopiam perductus judicio Dei vitam finivit, vermibus consumptus.

exercise of his supreme authority, the exhibition to himself of the martyr's body. Although he was dissuaded by many persons, and chiefly by his own retainers, his command prevailed, as he was regarded with general dread on account of the pre-eminence of his rank. The coffin was opened; he stood by, he looked in, and at that very moment the Lord smote him with madness and gave him over to a reprobate mind. Thus he was taught by his punishment that his presumption had carried him beyond lawful bounds. This came to the ears of his father, a man of deep piety, whose name was Ælfgar. He was appalled by the infamous crime of his son; and rendered thanks to the martyr, and turned his son out of doors. The latter was reduced at length to the depths of poverty, and by God's judgment was devoured by worms, and so brought his life to an end.

Sicque sanctus rex et martyr Eadmundus omnibus innotuit, non se esse inferiorem meritis Laurentii beati levitæ et martyris, cujus corpus, ut refert beatus pater Gregorius, cum quidam, seu digni seu indigni, levare volentes conspicerent, contigit ut octo ex eis ibidem subita morte perirent. O quanta reverentia locus ille dignus extitit, qui sub specie dormientis tantum Christi te-

In such wise the holy king and martyr, Eadmund, demonstrated to the world that he was not inferior in merit to Lawrence, the blessed deacon and martyr. As has been related by the blessed Pope Gregory, certain persons, worthy or unworthy, inspected his body with the intention of exhuming it, and out of their number it befell that no less than eight perished on the

stem continet, et in quo tantæ virtutes fiunt et factæ esse referuntur, quantas hac tempestate apud Anglos nusquam alibi audivimus; quas ego brevitatis studio prætereo, ne alicujus fastidiosi offensam incurrerem, justo prolixior, credens ista sufficere quæ dicta sunt ardenti desiderio eorum qui, præter Deum, hujus martyris patrocinio nil præferunt. De quo constat, sicut et de aliis sanctis omnibus jam cum Christo regnantibus, quod licet ejus anima sit in cœlesti gloria, non tamen per visitationem die noctuque longe est a corporis præsentia, cum quo promeruit ea quibus jam perfruitur beatæ immortalitatis gaudia. Nam dum in æterna patria ei jungitur qui ubique totus est, de eo habet posse quicquid habuerit et velle, præter id solum quod infatigabili desiderio concupiscit, ut per resurrectionem circumdetur stola mutata carnis; quoniam tunc erit perfecta beatitudo sanctorum, cum ad id fuerit Christo largiente perventum.

spot by sudden death. Oh! what deep reverence was due to that place, which contains in the guise of one asleep so august a witness to Christ, and in which such wondrous works are said to have occurred, and do occur, as in these times we have heard of in no other part of England! For brevity's sake I pass over these, not being desirous of incurring by undue prolixity the resentment of any fastidious person, and in the belief that what has been related will satisfy the ardent wishes of those who deem nothing preferable to the patronage of this martyr, except God himself. It is fully proved in his case (as in that of all the other saints who already reign with Christ) that though his spirit be in the enjoyment of heavenly glory, yet it has power to revisit the body and is not by day or night far separated from the place where that body lies, in union with which it has earned the joys of a blessed immortality, of which even now it has the fruition. Doubtless, in its eternal home, where it is united to Him, who is integrally present everywhere, the spirit has from Him power proportioned to its capacity of will, besides the boon of boons which it covets with unwearying desire, that by the resurrection it should be enveloped with the garment of the flesh transformed; since then will the

beatitude of the saints be perfected, when that consummation shall have been attained through the bounty of Christ.

Sed de hoc sancto martyre æstimari licet, cujus sit sanctitatis in hac vita, cujus caro mortua præfert quoddam resurrectionis decus sine sui labe aliqua; quandoquidem eos, qui hujusmodi munere donati sunt, extollant Catholici patres, suæ religionis indiculo, de singulari virginitatis adepto privilegio; dicentes quod justa remuneratione etiam hic gaudent præter mortem de carnis incorruptione, qui eam usque ad mortem servaverunt, non sine jugis martyrii valida persecutione. Quid enim majus, sub caritate Christianæ fidei, quam adipisci hominem cum gratia quod habet angelus ex natura? Unde divinum<sup>299</sup> oraculum quasi singulari quodam dono repromittit, quod virgines sequentur Agnum quocumque ierit. Considerandum igitur quis iste fuerit, qui in regni culmine inter tot divitias et luxus sæculi semet ipsum calcata carnis petulantia vincere studuit, quod ejus ostendit caro incorruptibilis. Cui humano obsequio famulantes satagant illi ea placere munditia, quam ei perpetuo placuisse manifestant membra incorrupta, et si non

And how great was the holiness in this life of the holy martyr may be conjectured from the fact that his body even in death displays something of the glory of the resurrection without trace of decay; for it must be borne in mind that they who are endued with this kind of distinction are extolled by the Catholic Fathers in the rolls of their religion as having attained the peculiar privilege of virginity, for they teach that such as have preserved their chastity till death, and have endured the stress of persecution even to the goal of martyrdom, by a just recompense are endued even here on earth, when death is past, with incorruption of the flesh. What, indeed, can be thought a higher privilege in the dispensation of love and Christian faith than this, that mortal man should acquire by grace the attribute which angels have by nature? So it is that the divine oracle promises as by a peculiar concession that the Virgins shall follow the Lamb whithersoever He goeth. Let us then consider what manner of man he was, who, stationed on the royal th-

---

<sup>299</sup> Apoc. xiv. 4.

possunt virgineo flore pudicitiae, saltem expertae voluptatis jugi mortificatione. Quoniam si illa sanctae animae invisibilis et illocalis praesentia alicujus famulantium spurcitia offendatur, timendum est, quod propheta<sup>300</sup> terribiliter comminatur, “In terra sanctorum iniqua gessit, et ideo gloriam Domini non videbit.” Cujus terrore sententiae permoti, hujus sancti Eadmundi regis et martyris imploremus patrocinium, ut nos cum sibi digne famulantibus expiet a peccatis quibus meremur supplicium, per eum qui vivit et regnat in saecula saeculorum, Amen.

*Explicit passio sancti Eadmundi regis et martyris.*

rone in the midst of worldly wealth and luxury, strove to conquer self, by treading under foot all carnal desires, as is shown by the incorruptibility of his flesh. And let those who render to him the ministry of human reverence strive to the utmost to please him by that purity of life, which his uncorrupted body proves to have been his continual happiness; and, if they cannot do so with the flower of virgin modesty, let them at least steadfastly mortify their desire for pleasure, of which they have had past experience. For should the Presence of that sacred spirit, which no eye can detect, and which is not confined by limits of space, be offended by the foul life of any of his ministers, it is to be feared that, according to the dreadful threat of the prophet, “He hath done iniquity in the land of the saints, and therefore shall not see the glory of the Lord.” Feeling the terror of such a doom, let us implore the protection of Saint Eadmund, king and martyr, that he may deliver us, and all those who worthily minister to him, from those sins for which we deserve to be punished, through Him who lives and reigns, world without end, Amen.

*Here ends the Passion of Saint Eadmund, King and Martyr.*

---

<sup>300</sup> Isaiah xxvi. 10.

PASSIO SANCTI  
EADMUNDI

XII. KAL. DECEMBRES.  
PASSIO SANCTI EADMUNDI REGIS ET MARTYRIS.

Sum spyðe gelæred munuc com suþan ofer sæ fram sancte benedictes stópe on æþelredes cynincges dæge to dunstane ærce-biscope þrim gearum ær he forðferde · 1 se munuc hatte abbo · þa purdon hi æt spræce oþþæt dunstan rehte be sancte eadmunde · spa spa eadmundes spurd-bora hit rehte æþelstane cynincge þa þa dunstan iung man pæs · 1 se spurd-bora pæs forealdod man · Ða gesette se munuc ealle þa gereccednysse on anre béc · 1 eft ða þa seo bóc com to ús binnan feapum gearum þa apende pe hit on englisc · spa spa hit her-æfter stent · Se munuc þa abbo binnan tþam gearum · gepende ham to his mynstre 1 pearð sona to abbode geset on þam ylcan mynstre ·

**E**ADMUND SE EADIGA EASTENGLA CYNINC  
pæs snotor 1 purðfull · 1 porðode symble  
mid æþelum þeapum þone ælmihtigan god ·  
He pæs ead-mod · 1 geþungen · 1 spá an-ræde þurh-punode  
þæt he nolde abugan to bysmorfullum leahtrum ·  
ne on naþre healfe he ne ahyldde his þeapas ·  
ac pæs symble gemyndig þære soþan lare ·  
gif þu eart to heafod-men ge-set · ne ahefe þu ðe ·  
ac beo betpux mannum spa spa an man of him ·  
He pæs cystig pædlum 1 pydepum spa spa fæder ·  
1 mid pel-pillendnysse gepissode his folc  
symle to riht-pisnysse · 1 þam reþum styrde ·  
1 gesæliglice leofode on soþan geleafan ·  
Hit ge-lamp ða æt nextan þæt þa deniscan leode  
ferdon mid scip-here hergiende 1 sleande  
pide geond land spa spa heora gepuna is ·  
On þam flotan pæron þa fyrmestan heafod-men  
hinguar 1 hubba · geanlæhte þurh deofol ·  
1 hí on norð-hymbra-lande gelendon mid æscum ·  
1 apeston þæt land · 1 þa leoda ofslogon ·

NOV. 20.  
PASSION OF SAINT EDMUND, KING AND MARTYR.

A certain very learned monk came from the South, over the sea, from Saint Benedict's Stow, in the days of king Æthelred, to archbishop Dunstan, three years before he died; and the monk was called Abbo. Then they were in conversation till Dunstan told him about saint Edmund, even as Edmund's sword-bearer told it to king Æthelstan, when Dunstan was a young man and the sword-bearer a very old man. Then the monk put all this story in a book, and afterwards, when the book had come to us, within a few years, we turned it into English just as it stands hereafter. This monk Abbo within two years went home to his minster, and was almost immediately appointed abbot in that same minster.

**E**DMUND THE BLESSED, KING OF THE EAST ANGLES,  
was wise and honourable, and ever glorified,  
by his excellent conduct, Almighty God.  
He was humble and devout, and continued so steadfast  
that he would not yield to shameful sins,  
nor in any direction did he bend aside his practices,  
but was always mindful of the true doctrine.  
If thou art made a chief man, exalt not thyself,  
but be amongst men as one of them.  
He was bountiful to the poor and to widows even like a father,  
and with benignity guided his people  
ever to righteousness, and controlled the violent,  
and lived happily in the true faith.  
Then at last it befell that the Danish people  
came with a fleet, harrying and slaying  
widely over the land, as their custom is.  
In that fleet were their chief men,  
Hingwar and Hubba, associated by the devil,  
and they landed in Northumbria with their ships,  
and wasted the land and slew the people.

Ða ge-pende hinguar east mid his scipum ·  
 ⁊ hubba belaf on norð-hymbra-lande ·  
 gepunnenum sige · mid þælhreopnyse ·  
 Hinguar þa becom to east-englum ropende ·  
 on þam geare þe ælfred æðelincg<sup>†</sup> · an ⁊ tpentig geare pæs ·  
 se þe pest-sexena cynincg sibban pearð mære ·  
 ⁊ se fore-sæda hinguar færlice spa spa pulf  
 on lande bestalcode · ⁊ þa leode sloh  
 peras ⁊ píf · ⁊ þa ungepittigan cild ·  
 ⁊ to bysmore tucode þa bilepitan cristenan ·  
 He sende ða sona syððan to þam cyninge  
 beotlic æreude · þæt he abugan sceolde  
 to his man-rædene gif he rohte his feores ·  
 Se ærendraca com þa to eadmund cynincge  
 ⁊ hinguares ærende him ardlice ahead ·  
 Hinguar ure cyning cene ⁊ sigefæst ·  
 on sæ ⁊ on lande · hæfð fela þeoda gepyld ·  
 ⁊ com nu mid fyrde færlice her to lande  
 þæt he her winter-setl mid his perode hæbbe ·  
 Nu het he þe dælan þine digelan gold-hordas ·  
 ⁊ þinra yldrena gestreon ardlice pið hine ·  
 ⁊ þu beo his under-kyning · gif ðu cucu beon pylt ·  
 for-ðan-þe ðu næfst þa mihte þæt þu mage him pið-standan ·  
 Hpæt þa eadmund clypode ænne bisceop ·  
 þe him þa gehendost pæs ⁊ pið hine smeade  
 hu he þam repam hingulare and-pyrdan sceolde ·  
 Ða forhtode se bisceop for þam færlican gelimpe ·  
 ⁊ for þæs cynincges life · ⁊ cpæp þæt him ræd þuhte  
 þæt he to þam gebuge þe him bead hinguar ·  
 Ða supode se cynincg ⁊ beseah to þære eorþan ·  
 ⁊ cpæp þa æt nextan cynelice him to ·  
 Eala þu bisceop to bysmore synd getapode

<sup>301†</sup> This reference to Ælfred was inserted by Ælfric. The date of St. Eadmund's death is 870. Ælfred was born in 849, and Eadmund in 841.



Then Hingwar turned eastward with his ships,  
and Hubba was left in Northumbria,  
having won the victory by means of cruelty.  
Then Hingwar came rowing to East Anglia  
in the year when Ælfred the ætheling was one and twenty years old,  
he who afterward became the renowned king of the West-Saxons.  
And the aforesaid Hingwar suddenly, like a wolf,  
stalked over the land and slew the people,  
men and women, and witless children,  
and shamefully tormented the innocent Christians.  
Then soon afterward he sent to the king  
a threatening message, that he must bow down  
to do him homage, if he recked of his life.  
So the messenger came to king Edmund,  
and speedily announced to him Hingwar's message.  
“Hingwar our king, keen and victorious  
by sea and by land, hath rule over many peoples,  
and has landed here suddenly even now with an army,  
that he may take up his winter-quarter's here with his host.  
Now he commandeth thee to divide thy secret treasures  
and thine ancestors' wealth quickly with him,  
and thou shalt be his under-king, if thou desire to live,  
because thou hast not the power that thou mayst withstand him.”  
So then king Edmund called a bishop  
who was handiest to him, and consulted with him  
how he should answer the savage Hingwar.  
Then the bishop feared for this terrible misfortune,  
and for the king's life, and said that it seemed best to him  
that he should submit to that which Hingwar bade him.  
Then the king kept silence and looked on the ground,  
and said to him at last even like a king;  
“Behold, thou bishop, the poor people of this land

þas earman land-leoda · 1 me nu leofre pære  
 þæt ic on feohte feolle · pið þam þe min folc  
 moste heora eardes brucan · 1 se bisceop cpæþ ·  
 Eala þu leofa cyning þin folc lið ofslagen ·  
 1 þu næfst þone fultum þæt þu feohtan mæge ·  
 1 þas flot-men cumað · 1 þe cucenne gebindað  
 butan þu mid fleame þinum feore gebeorge ·  
 oððe þu þe spa gebeorge þæt þu buge to him ·  
 Þa cpæþ eadmund cyning spa spa he ful cene pæs ·  
 Pæs ic gepilnige 1 gepisce mid mode ·  
 þæt ic ana ne belife æfter minum leofum þegnum  
 þe on heora bedde purdon mid bearnum · 1 pifum ·  
 færlice ofslægene fram þysum flot-mannum ·  
 Næs me næfre gepunelic þæt ic porhte fleames ·  
 ac ic polde spiðor speltan gif ic þorfte  
 for minum agenum earde · 1 se ælmihtiga god wát  
 þæt ic nelle abugan fram his biggengum æfre ·  
 ne fram his soþan lufe · spelte ic · lybbe ic ·  
 Æfter þysum pordum he gepende to þam ærendracan  
 þe hinguar him to sende · 1 sæde him unforht ·  
 Pitodlice þu pære pyrðe sleges nu ·  
 ac ic nelle afylan on þinum fulum blode  
 mine clænan handa · forðan-þe ic criste folgie  
 þe us spa ge-bysnode · 1 ic bliðelice pille beon  
 ofslagen þurh eop gif hit spa god fore-sceapað ·  
 Far nu spiþe hraðe · 1 sege þinum reþan hlaforde ·  
 ne abihð næfre eadmund hingpare on life  
 hæpenum here-togan · buton he to hælende criste  
 ærest mid ge-leafan on þysum lande gebuge ·  
 Þa gepende se ærend-raca ardlice apeg ·  
 1 gemette be pæge þone pælhreopan hingpar  
 mid eallre his fyrde fuse to eadmunde ·  
 1 sæde þam arleasan hu him geandpyrd pæs ·  
 Hingpar þa bebead mid bylde þam scip-here  
 þæt hi þaes cynincges anes ealle cepan sceoldon ·

are brought to shame, and it were now dearer to me  
that I should fall in fight against him who would possess  
my people's inheritance." And the bishop said,  
"Alas, thou dear king thy people lie slain,  
and thou hast not sufficient forces with which thou mayest fight,  
and these seamen will come and will bind thee alive,  
unless thou save thy life by means of flight,  
or thus save thyself by yielding to him."  
Then said Edmund the king, full brave as he was;  
"This I desire and wish in my mind,  
that I should not be left alone after my dear thanes,  
who even in their beds, with their bairns and their wives,  
have by these seamen been suddenly slain.  
It was never my custom to take to flight,  
but I would rather die, if I must,  
for my own land; and almighty God knoweth  
that I will never turn aside from His worship,  
nor from His true love, whether I die or live."  
After these words he turned to the messenger  
whom Hingwar had sent to him, and said to him undismayed:  
"Verily thou wouldest now be worthy of death,  
but I will not defile my clean hands  
with thy foul blood, because I follow Christ,  
who hath so given us an example, and I will blithely  
be slain by you, if God hath so ordained.  
Depart now very quickly, and say to thy cruel lord;  
Edmund the king will never bow in life to Hingwar  
the heathen leader, unless he will first bow,  
in this land, to Jesus Christ with faith."  
Then went the messenger quickly away,  
and met on the way the bloodthirsty Hingwar  
with all his army hurrying to Edmund,  
and told that wicked man how he was answered.  
Hingwar then arrogantly commanded his troops  
that they should, all of them, take the king alone,

þe his hæse forseah · 1 hine sona bindan ·  
 Hpæt þa eadmund cynincg mid þam þe hingpar com ·  
 stod innan his healle þæs hælendes gemyndig ·  
 1 apearp his pæpna polde gæfen-læcan  
 cristes gebysnungum · þe for-bead petre  
 mid pæpnum to pinnenne pið þa pælhreopan iudeiscan ·  
 Hpæt þa arleasan þa eadmund gebundon  
 1 gebysmrodon huxlice · 1 beotan mid saglum ·  
 1 spa syððan læddon þone geleaf-fullan cyning  
 to anum eorð-fæstum treowe · and tigdon hine þær-to ·  
 mid heardum bendum · 1 hine eft spuncgon  
 langlice mid spipum · 1 he symble clypode  
 betpux þam spinglum mid soðan geleafan  
 to hælende criste · 1 þa hæþenan þa  
 for his geleafan purdon podlice yrrre  
 for-þan-þe he clypode crist him to fultume ·  
 Hi scuton þa mid gafelucum spilce him to gamenes to · (sic)  
 oð þæt he eall pæs besæt mid heora scotungum  
 spilce igles byrsta · spa spa sebastianus pæs ·  
 Þa geseah hingpar se arlease flot-man ·  
 þæt se æpela cyning nolde criste pið-sacan ·  
 ac mid anrædum geleafan hine æfre clypode ·  
 het hine þa beheafdian 1 þa hæðenan spa dydon ·  
 Betpux þam þe he clypode to criste þagit  
 þa tugon þa · hæþenan þone halgan to slæge ·  
 1 mid anum spencge slogon him of þæt heafod ·  
 1 his sapl sibode gesælig to criste ·  
 Pær pæs sum man gehende gehealden þurh god ·  
 behyd þam hæpenum · þe þis gehyrde eall ·  
 1 hit eft sæde spa spa þe hit secgað her ·  
 Hpæt ða se flot-here ferde eft to scipe ·  
 1 behyddon þæt heafod pæs halgan eadmundes ·  
 on þam þiccum bremelum þæt hit bebyrged ne purde ·  
 Þa æfter fyrste syððan hi afarene pæron  
 com þæt land-folc to þe þær to lafe pæs þa ·

who had despised his command, and instantly bind him.  
Then Edmund the king, when Hingwar came,  
stood within his hall mindful of the Saviour,  
and threw away his weapons, desiring to imitate  
Christ's example, who forbade Peter  
to fight with weapons against the bloodthirsty Jews.<sup>†</sup>  
Then those wicked men bound Edmund,  
and shamefully insulted him, and beat him with clubs,  
and afterward they led the faithful king  
to an earth-fast tree, and tied him thereto  
with hard bonds, and afterwards scourged him  
a long while with whips, and ever he called,  
between the blows, with true faith,  
on Jesus Christ; and then the heathen  
because of his faith were madly angry,  
because he called upon Christ to help him.  
They shot at him with javelins as if for their amusement,  
until he was all beset with their shots,  
as with a porcupine's bristles, even as Sebastian was.  
When Hingwar, the wicked seaman,  
saw that the noble king would not deny Christ,  
but with steadfast faith ever called upon Him,  
then he commanded men to behead him, and the heathen did so.  
For while he was yet calling upon Christ,  
the heathen drew away the saint, to slay him,  
and with one blow struck off his head;  
and his soul departed joyfully to Christ.  
There was a certain man at hand, kept by God  
hidden from the heathen, who heard all this,  
and told it afterward even as we tell it here.  
So then the seamen went again to ship,  
and hid the head of the holy Edmund  
in the thick brambles, that it might not be buried.  
Then after a space, after they were gone away,  
came the country-folk, who were still left there,

þær heora hlafordes lic læg butan heafde ·  
 1 purdon spiðe sarige for his slege on mode ·  
 1 huru þæt hi næfdon þæt heafod to þam bodige ·  
 Þa sæde se sceapere þe hit ær geseah  
 þæt þa flot-men hæfdon þæt heafod mid him ·  
 1 pæs him geðuht spa spa hit pæs ful soð  
 þæt hi behyddon þæt heafod on þam holte forhpega ·  
 Hi eodon þa secende ealle endemes to þam puda ·  
 secende gehpær geond þyfelas and bremelas  
 gif hi a-hpær mihton gemeton (*sic*) þæt heafod ·  
 pæs eac micel pundor þæt an pulf pearð asend  
 þurh godes pissunge to beperigenne þæt heafod  
 pið þa oþre deor · ofer dæg · 1 niht ·  
 Hi eodon þa secende · 1 symle clypigende ·  
 spa spa hit gepunelic is þam ðe on puda gað oft ·  
 Hpær eart þu nu gefera? 1 him andpyrde þæt heafod ·  
 Hér · hér · hér · 1 spa gelome clypode  
 andsparigende him eallum · spa oft spa heora ænig clypode ·  
 oþþæt hi ealle becomen þurh ða clypunga him to ·  
 Þa læg se græga pulf þe bepiste þæt heafod ·  
 1 mid his tþam fotum hæfde þæt heafod beclypped ·  
 grædig · 1 hungrig · 1 for gode ne dorste  
 pæs heafdes abyrian · [ac] heold hit pið deor ·  
 Þa purdon hi ofpundrode pæs pulfes hyrd-rædenne ·  
 1 þæt halige heafod ham feredon mid him ·  
 þancigende þam ælmihtigan ealra his puntra ·  
 ac se pulf folgode forð mid þam heafde ·  
 oþþæt hí to tune comon · spylce he tan pære ·  
 1 gepende eft sibban to puda ongean ·  
 Þa land-leoda þa sibban ledon þæt heafod  
 to þam halgan bodige · 1 bebyrigdon hine  
 spa spa hí selost mihton on spylcere hrædinge  
 1 cyrcan arærdan sona him onuppon ·  
 Eft þa on fyrste æfter fela gearum ·  
 þa seo hergung gespác 1 sibb pearð forgifen

to where their lord's body lay without the head,  
and were very sore at heart because of his murder,  
and chiefly because they had not the head with the body.  
Then said the spectator who previously beheld it  
that the seamen had taken the head with them,  
and it seemed to him, even as it was quite true,  
that they had hidden the head in the wood somewhere about.  
Then they all went seeking at last in the wood,  
seeking everywhere among the thorns and brambles  
if they might anywhere find the head.  
There was eke a great wonder, that a wolf was sent,  
by God's direction, to guard the head  
against the other animals by day and night.  
They went on seeking and always crying out,  
as is often the wont of those who go through woods;  
"Where art thou now, comrade?" And the head answered them,  
"Here, here, here." And so it cried out continually,  
answering them all, as oft as any of them cried,  
until they all came to it by means of those cries.  
There lay the gray wolf who guarded the head,  
and with his two feet had embraced the head,  
greedy and hungry, and for God's care durst no  
taste the head, but kept it against (other) animals.  
Then they were astonished at the wolf's guardianship,  
and carried the holy head home with them,  
thanking the Almighty for all His wonders;  
but the wolf followed forth with the head  
until they came to the town, as if he were tame,  
and then turned back again unto the wood.  
Then the country-people afterward laid the head  
by the holy body, and buried him  
as they best might in such haste,  
and full soon built a church over him.  
Then again, after a space, after many years,  
when the harrying had ceased, and peace was restored

þam gespenctan folce · þa fengon hí togædere  
 1 porhton ane cyrcan purðice þam halgan ·  
 for-þan-ðe gelome pundra purdon æt his byrgene  
 æt þam gebæd-huse þær he bebyrged pæs ·  
 Hi poldon þa ferian mid folclicum purðmynte  
 þone halgan lichaman · 1 læcgan innan þære cyrcan ·  
 þa pæs micel pundor þæt he pæs eall spa gehal  
 spylce he cucu þære mid clænum lichaman ·  
 1 his spura pæs gehalod þe ær pæs forslagen ·  
 1 pæs spylce an seolcen þræd embe his spuran ræd  
 mannum to speotelunge hu he ofslagen pæs ·  
 Eac spilce þa punda þe þa pælhreopan hæþenan  
 mid gelomum scotungum on his lice macodon ·  
 pæron gehælede þurh þone heofonlican god ·  
 1 he liþ spa ansund oþ þisne and-perdan dæg ·  
 and-bidigende æristes · 1 pæs ecan puldres ·  
 His lichama us cyð þe lið un-formolsnod  
 þæt he butan forligre her on porulde leofode ·  
 1 mid clænum life to criste siþode ·  
 Sum pudepe punode ospyn gehaten  
 æt pæs halgan byrgene on gebedum  
 1 fæstenum manega gear syððan ·  
 seo polde efsian ælce geare þone sanct ·  
 1 his næglas ceorfan syferlice · mid lufe ·  
 1 on scryne healdan to halig-dome on peofode ·  
 Þa purðode þæt land-folc mid geleafan þone sanct ·  
 1 þeodréð bisceop þearle mid gifum  
 on golde 1 on seolfre · þam sancte to purðmynte ·  
 Þa comon on sumne sæl unge-sælige þeofas  
 eahta on anre nihte to þam arpurðan halgan  
 poldon stelan þa maðmas þe men þyder brohton ·  
 1 cunnodon mid cræfte hu hi in cumon (*sic*) mihton ·  
 Sum sloh mid slecge spiðe þa hæpsan ·  
 sum heora mid feolan feolode abutan ·  
 sum eac underdealf þa duru mid spade ·



to the oppressed people, then they came together,  
and built a church worthily to the saint,  
because that frequently miracles were done at his burial-place,  
even at the bede-house where he was buried.  
Then desired they to carry the holy body  
with popular honour, and to lay it within the church.  
Then there was a great wonder, that he was all as whole  
as if he were alive, with clean body,  
and his neck was healed which before was cut through,  
and there was as it were a silken thread about his neck, all red,  
as if to show men how he was slain.  
Also the wounds, which the bloodthirsty heathen  
had made in his body by their repeated shots,  
were healed by the heavenly God;  
and so he lieth uncorrupt until this present day,  
awaiting the resurrection and the eternal glory.  
His body showeth us, which lieth undecayed,  
that he lived without fornication here in this world,  
and by a pure life passed to Christ.  
A certain widow who was called Oswyn  
dwelt near the saint's burial-place in prayers  
and fastings for many years after.  
She would every year cut the hair of the saint,  
and cut his nails soberly and lovingly,  
and keep them in a shrine as relics on the altar.  
So the people of the land faithfully venerated the saint;  
and bishop Theodred exceedingly [enriched the church]  
with gifts in gold and silver, in the saint's honour.  
Then once upon a time came some unblessed thieves,  
eight in one night, to the venerable saint,  
desiring to steal the treasures which people had brought thither,  
and tried how they might get in by craft.  
One struck at the hasp violently with a hammer;  
one of them filed about it with a file;  
one dug under the door with a spade;

sum heora mid hlæddre polde unlucan þæt ægðyrl ·  
 Ac hi spuncon on idel · ⁊ earmlice ferdon ·  
 spa þæt se halga per hí pundorlice geband ·  
 ælcne spa he stod strutigende mid tole ·  
 þæt heora nan ne mihte þæt morð gefremman ·  
 ne hi þanon astyrian · ac stodon spa oð mergen ·  
 Men þa þæs pundrodon hu þa peargas hangodon ·  
 sum on hlæddre · sum leat to gedelfe ·  
 ⁊ ælc on his peorce pæs fæste gebunden ·  
 Hi purdon þa ge-brohte to þam bisceope ealle ·  
 ⁊ he het hí hón on heagum gealgum ealle ·  
 Ac he næs na gemyndig hu se mild-heorta god  
 clypode þurh his pitegan þas pord þe hér standað ·  
 Eos qui ducuntur ad mortem eruere ne cesses ·  
 Þa þe man læt to deaðe alys hí ut symble ·  
 ⁊ eac þa halgan canones gehadodum forbeodað  
 ge bisceopum ge preostum · to beonne embe þeofas ·  
 for-þan-þe hit ne gebyraþ þam þe beoð gecorene  
 gode to þegnigenne þæt hi geþpærlæcan sceolon ·  
 on æniges mannes deaðe · gif hi beoð drihtnes þenas ·  
 Eft þa ðeodred bisceop sceapode his bec syððan  
 behreopsode mid geomerunge · þæt he spa reðne dóm sette  
 þam ungesæligum þeofum · ⁊ hit besargode æfre  
 oð his lifes ende · ⁊ þa leode bæd georne ·  
 þæt hi him mid fæstan fullice þry dagas ·  
 biddende þone ælmihtigan · þæt he him arian scolde ·  
 On þam lande pæs sum man · leofstan gehaten ·  
 rice for porulde · ⁊ unpittig for gode ·  
 se rād to þam halgan mid riccetere swiðe ·  
 ⁊ het him æt-eowian orhlice swiðe ·  
 þone halgan sanct hpæper he gesund pære ·  
 ac spa hraðe spa he geseah þæs sanctes lichaman ·  
 þa apedde he sona · ⁊ pæl-hreoplice grymetede ·  
 ⁊ earmlice geendode yfelum deaðe ·  
 Þis is ðam gelic þe se geleaffulla papa

one of them by a ladder wished to unlock the window:  
 but they toiled in vain, and fared miserably,  
 because the holy man wondrously bound them,  
 each as he stood, toiling with his implement,  
 so that none of them could do that evil deed,  
 nor stir thence; but they stood there till morning.  
 Then men wondered to see how the wretches hung there,  
 one on a ladder, one bent down to his digging,  
 and each was fast bound in his own work.  
 Then they were all brought to the bishop,  
 and he commanded men to hang them all on a high gallows;  
 but he was not mindful how the merciful God  
 spake through His prophet the words which here stand;  
*"Eos qui ducuntur ad mortem eruere ne cesses"*:  
 those who are led to death deliver thou alway.  
 And also the holy canons forbid clerics,  
 both bishops and priests, to be concerned about thieves,  
 because it becometh not them that are chosen  
 to serve God, that they should consent  
 to any man's death, if they be the Lord's servants.  
 Then Theodred the bishop, after he had searched his books,  
 rued with lamentation that he had awarded such a cruel doom  
 to these unhappy thieves, and ever deplored it  
 to his life's end; and earnestly prayed the people  
 to fast with him fully three days,  
 praying the Almighty that He would have pity upon him.  
 In that land was a certain man called Leofstan,  
 rich in worldly things, and ignorant towards God,  
 who rode with great insolence to the saint's shrine,  
 and very arrogantly commanded them to show him  
 the holy saint, (to see) whether he were incorrupt;  
 but as soon as he saw the saint's body,  
 then he straightway raved and roared horribly,  
 and miserably ended by an evil death.  
 This is like that which the orthodox pope,

gregorius sæde on his gesetnysse  
 be ðam halgan laurentiē ðe lið on rome-byrig ·  
 þæt menn poldon sceapian symle hu he lage ·  
 ge gode ge yfele · ac god hi ge-stilde ·  
 spa þæt þær spulton on þære sceapunge ane  
 seofon menn ætgædere · þa gespicon þa oþre  
 to sceapigenne þone martyr mid menniscum gedpylde ·  
 Fela pundra þe gehyrdon on folclicre spræce ·  
 be þam halgan eadmunde þe we hér nellap  
 on geprite settan · ac hi pāt gehpā ·  
 On þyssum halgan is sputel · ⁊ on spilcum oþrum ·  
 þæt god ælmihtig mæg þone man aræran  
 eft on domes dæg andsundne of eorþan  
 se þe hylt eadmunde halne his lichaman ·  
 oð þone micclan dæg þeah ðe he of moldan come ·  
 Wyrðe is seo stow for þam purðfullan halgan  
 þæt hi man purþige ⁊ pel gelogige  
 mid clænum godes þeowum · to cristes þeow-dome ·  
 for-þan-þe se halga is mærra þonne men magon asmeagan ·  
 Nis angel-cynn bedæled drihtnes halgena ·  
 þonne on engla-landa licgaþ spilce halgan  
 spylce þæs halga cyning is ⁊ cupberht se eadiga ·  
 ⁊ sancte æpeldryð on elig · ⁊ eac hire spustor  
 ansunde on lichaman geleafan to trymminge ·  
 Synd eac fela oðre on angel-cynne halgan  
 þe fela pundra pyrcað · spa spa hit pide is cuð  
 þam ælmihtigan to lofe · þe h'i on gelyfdon ·  
 Crist geputelaþ mannum þurh his mæran halgan  
 þæt he is ælmihtig god þe macað spilce pundra  
 þeah þe þa earman iudei hine eallunge wið-socen ·  
 for-þan-þe hī synd apyrgeðe spa spa hī piscton him sylfum ·  
 Ne beoð nane pundra geporhte æt heora byrgenum ·  
 for-ðan-þe hī ne gelyfað on þone lifigendan crist ·  
 ac crist gesputelað mannum hwær se soða geleafa is ·  
 þonne he spylce pundra pyrcð þurh his halgan

Gregory by name, said in his writing  
 concerning the holy Lawrence who lieth in the city of Rome,  
 that men were always wishing to see how he lay,  
 both good and evil, but God checked them,  
 so that there died in the looking all at once  
 seven men together; so the others desisted  
 from looking at the martyr with human error.  
 We have heard of many wonders in the popular talk  
 about the holy Edmund which we will not here  
 set down in writing; but every one knoweth them.  
 By this saint is it manifest and by others like him,  
 that Almighty God can raise man  
 again, in the day of judgement, incorruptible from the earth,  
 He who preserveth Edmund whole in his body  
 until the great day, though he was made of earth.  
 Worthy is the place for the sake of the venerable saint  
 that men should venerate it, and well provide it  
 with God's pure servants, to Christ's service,  
 because the saint is greater than men may imagine.  
 The English nation is not deprived of the Lord's saints,  
 since in English land lie such saints  
 as this holy king, and the blessed Cuthbert,  
 and saint Æthelthryth in Ely, and also her sister,  
 incorrupt in body, for the confirmation of the faith.  
 There are also many other saints among the English,  
 who work many miracles, as is widely known,  
 to the praise of the Almighty in whom they believed.  
 Christ showeth to men, through His illustrious saints,  
 that He is Almighty God who causeth such wonders,  
 though the miserable Jews altogether denied Him,  
 because they are accursed, as they desired for themselves.  
 There are no wonders wrought at their sepulchres,  
 because they believe not in the living Christ;  
 but Christ manifesteth to men where the true faith is,  
 since He worketh such miracles by His saints

pide geond þas eorðan · Þæs him sy puldor  
á mid his heofonlican fæder · ⁊ þam halgan gaste (a buton ende).  
AMEN.

widely throughout the earth; wherefore to Him be Glory  
ever with His Heavenly Father, and with the Holy Ghost, for ever and ever.  
AMEN.





# ST EDMUND



**S**EINT EDMUND þE HOLI KING: OF WHAM WE MAKIEÞ GRET FESTE

Of þat on ende of Engeland: kyng he was her bi este

For of souþfolc he was kyng: ⁊ of þe contray wide

For þer were in Engeland: kynges in eche side

Swiþe fair knyzt he was ⁊ strong: ⁊ hardie in eche poynte

Meok mylþe<sup>a</sup> ⁊ ful of milce:<sup>b</sup> ⁊ swiþe curteys ⁊ quoynte

Tuei princes of anoþer lond: þat were of liþer<sup>c</sup> þozt

Faste here red to-gadere nome:<sup>†</sup> to bringe Engeland to nozt

Hubba was þoþer ihote:<sup>d</sup> ⁊ þoþer het<sup>e</sup> Hyngar

Wiþ grete furde hi come to Engelande: er enie man were iwar

In norþhumberland hi bigonne: ⁊ þer hi sloze to grounde

Robbede also ⁊ brende<sup>f</sup> to nozt: ⁊ destruyde al þat hi founde

¶ Þo hi hadde norþhumberland: clenliche to nozt ibrozt

Also hi þozte al Engeland: hi ne þozte raþer bileue nozt

Hyngar þat o maister was: his felawe bileuede þere

⁊ her bi este wende him silf: to sle þat þer were

Of þe godnisse of seint Edmund: he hurde moche telle

In to his lond he wende anon: to fondie him to quelle

¶ In to his hexte<sup>g</sup> toun he com: er enie man were iwar

⁊ robbede al þat he fond: ⁊ madeke þane toun bar

Þat folc he sloz al to grounde: al þat he mi3te ofgon<sup>h</sup>

3ung ⁊ old wyf ne maide: he ne sparede non

Children fram here moder breost: he drouz<sup>i</sup> ⁊ let hem quelle

⁊ alto-drawe tofore here moder: þat reuþe hit is to telle

þe modres he let siþþe<sup>j</sup> quelle: þat reuþe hit was ynou3

þe toun he brende al to douste: ⁊ þat folc aslou3

He of-eschte<sup>k</sup> of þat folc: where here kyng were

⁊ hi him teizte<sup>l</sup> wher he was: hi ne þerste non oþer for fere

¶ For in þe toun of Eglesdone: a god wei þannes<sup>m</sup> hit was

þo þe liþere prince þis ihurde: he ne madeke nozt softe pas

Ac<sup>n</sup> wende þider hasteliche: wiþ his men echone

Hi come ⁊ mette wiþ seint Edmund: wiþoute þe toun alone

<sup>a</sup>mild    <sup>b</sup>i.e., mercy

<sup>c</sup>i.e., wicked

<sup>d</sup>i.e., named    <sup>e</sup>id.

<sup>f</sup>burned

<sup>g</sup>highest

<sup>h</sup>i.e., overtake

<sup>i</sup>drew, i.e., disemboweled

<sup>j</sup>i.e., then

<sup>k</sup>asked

<sup>l</sup>taught

<sup>m</sup>thence

<sup>n</sup>i.e., but

<sup>†</sup> *Faste here red to-gadere nome:* Firm [faste] their [here] decision made [red ... nome] together [to-gadere]

<sup>a</sup>i.e., captured ¶ Po Hyngarwiste þat he hit was: he nom<sup>a</sup> him anon þere  
 ⁊ bisigede alle þe men: þat wiþinne þe toun were  
<sup>b</sup>*lute stounde*: i.e., little while Seint Edmund was faste ynome: in a lute stounde<sup>b</sup>  
 ⁊ ilad to-fore þe prince naked: his honden faste ibounde  
<sup>c</sup>i.e., receive As me ladde oure louerd tofore Pilatus: forto afonge<sup>c</sup> his dom<sup>d</sup>  
<sup>d</sup>doom, i.e., judgement Po his dom was izyue: faste me him nom  
 ⁊ ladde him to a þicke wode: ⁊ makede him menie wounde  
 ⁊ beote him sore wiþ harde scourgen: ⁊ to a treo him bounde  
 So þat þis liþere tourmentours: þat beote him so sore  
<sup>e</sup>did Pozte þat þe3 hi him schame dude:<sup>e</sup> þat hi him wolde do more  
 Hi stode afur ⁊ bende here bowes: ⁊ here arewes ri3te  
 And as to a merke schote to him: as euene as hi mi3te  
 Þe arewes stode on him þicke: ⁊ al his bodie to-drowe  
 ⁊ euere stod þis holi man: stille as þe3 he lowe  
<sup>f</sup>i.e., hedgehog As ful as an illespyl<sup>f</sup> is: of pikes al aboute  
 As ful he stikede of arewen: wiþ-inne ⁊ wiþoute  
 So ful þat in none stede: ne mi3te an arewe in wende  
 For oþer bote he his bodi corue: ⁊ him dude torende  
 As þe holi man imartred was: þe holi seint Bastian  
 Also hi rende his holi bodie: ⁊ schote þis holi man  
 Pat eche pece ful fram oþer: wonder hit was of his lyue  
<sup>g</sup>recked, i.e., concerned Euere he stod as him ne ro3te:<sup>g</sup> ⁊ cride on god wel blyue<sup>h</sup>  
<sup>h</sup>i.e., eagerly ¶ Po Hyngar ise3 þat he ne mi3te: him ouercome no3t  
 He let smyte of his heued: þat he were of lyue ibro3t  
<sup>i</sup>bid, i.e., prayed ¶ As þis holi man his bedes bad:<sup>i</sup> me smot of his heued  
 Ac his bodi was er alto-rend: þat noþing n'as bileued  
 ⁊ for hit was alto-drawe: hi lete hit ligge þere  
 Ac his heued for me ne scholde hit no3t fynde: forþ mid hem hi bere  
<sup>j</sup>dern, i.e., secluded, secret ¶ In þe wode of Eglesdone: a durne<sup>j</sup> stede<sup>k</sup> hi fonde  
<sup>k</sup>stead, i.e., location Among þicke þornes hi caste hit: ⁊ hudde hit in þe grounde  
 ¶ Po hi hadde of þis holi kyng: al here welle þere  
 Glade ⁊ bliþe hi wende forþ: liþere men as hit were  
 Pat heued hi hudde durneliche: þat noman þerto ne come  
 If enie were bileued alyue: ⁊ þat heued wiþ hem nome  
 A wyld wolf þer com sone: ⁊ to þe heued drou3

ƿ þer vppe sat ƿ wiste<sup>a</sup> hit faste: aȝe<sup>b</sup> cunde ynouȝ  
 For his cunde were betere to swolewe hit: he lickede hit ofte ƿ custe<sup>c</sup>  
 ƿ as he wolde his owe whelp: wiȝ wylde best hit wiste  
 Sibbe þo come cristene men: ƿ in som poer were ibroȝt  
 Þe holi bodi hi fonde sone: for hit nas ihud noȝt  
 Ac for hi ne fonde noȝt þat heued: aboute hi wende wide  
 ƿ longe hi soȝte in eche stede: euerech in his side  
 ¶ Hi ne miȝte hit finde for noȝing: so þat hi come a day  
 Biside þulke<sup>d</sup> þicke stede: þer as þe heued lay  
 Hi nuste noȝt þat hit was þer: þat heued bigan to grede  
 As hit among þe þornes lai: ƿ þuse wordes sede  
 Al an englisch. her: her: her: as þeȝ hit were alyue  
 Þo þat folc ihurde þis: þider hi vrne blyue  
 Þat heued hi fonde in þulke stede: þer as hit him silue sede  
 Louerd ihered beo þi miȝte: þat þer was a fair dede  
 Þat heued hi bere to þe bodie: ƿ sette hit euene þerto  
 ƿ bere forþ boþe wiȝ gret honour: as riȝt was to do  
 ƿ þe wolf makede þo deol ynouȝ: þo hi þat heued forþbere  
 He ȝal ƿ furde pitousliche: as þeȝ he witles were  
 He suede hem euere while he miȝte: ȝullinge wel sore  
 Atte laste he wende al aweie: þer me ne seȝ him no more  
 Hi ladde him to seint Edmundesbury: as me clepeþ þane toun  
 Þis holi man al isound: ƿ leide him þeradoun  
 In noble schryne hi him brouȝte: as riȝt was to do  
 Þer he lyþ al hol ƿ sound: as hi seoþ þat comeþ him to  
 For his bodi þat was so to-drawe: bicom al hol anon  
 As þe while he was alyue: boþe in flesch ƿ bon  
 His heued as faste to þe bodie: as hit was euer er  
 In al his bodi þer nas wem: as menie man iseȝ þer  
 Bote as his heued was of ismyte: as oure louerd hit wolde  
 A smal red lyne al aboute: schyninge of golde  
 Wele whiche fair pelrynage: is þider forto fare  
 To honoury þat holi bodie: þat haþ ibeo þer so ȝare  
 Nou god for þe loue of seint Edmund: þat was so noble kyng  
 Grante ous þe ioye þat he is inne: after oure ending: AMEN:

<sup>a</sup>i.e., guarded

<sup>b</sup>against

<sup>c</sup>kissed

<sup>d</sup>i.e., that